

**Misrepresentation and Construction of Meaning in
Translation of News Texts in the Context of Conflict and
Intervention: the Application of Systemic-Functional
Linguistics**

Olena Skorokhod

Thesis submitted for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

in Language and Translation

University of East Anglia

School of Politics, Philosophy, Language and Communication Studies

September 2015

This copy of the thesis has been supplied on condition that anyone who consults it is understood to recognise that its copyright rests with the author and that use of any information derived there from must be in accordance with current UK Copyright Law. In addition, any quotation or extract must include full attribution.

Abstract

This study presents an analysis of misrepresentation and construction of meaning in the translation of news texts in the English and Russian news media. The texts analysed are published online by the U.S. and Russian media. They discuss events in contexts of socio-political instability, military conflict and intervention, including: military intervention in Georgia (2008), humanitarian intervention and socio-political instability in Somalia (2011 and 2012) and military conflict as well as socio-political instability in Afghanistan (2010 and 2012).

This research has three main aims. The first is to examine the ways in which ideological representation is (re-)constructed in the shift between source/s and translated news texts. This is conducted through the analysis of individual linguistic choices. The second and overlapping aim is to investigate the relationship between translated target news texts and their potential source texts in the context of the issue of source-target relationship in the area of news translation. The final aim is to assess the applicability of Systemic-Functional Linguistics (SFL) to translated Russian news texts in contrast to their potential sources. This is in order to analyse the ideology of representation constructed in translated Russian news texts and examine cases of misrepresentation of sources.

This thesis discusses the production of global media in the context of conflict as well as strategies of news media production. Key categories and components of the theory of SFL are discussed in order to suggest an adaptation of the SFL model of analysis which can be applied to the corpus of the news texts and their translations in the online media. These key categories include: thematic and transitivity structure, modality and context. The SFL model is applied to the textual analysis of news texts in the form of case studies in order to examine individual linguistic choices – choices of lexicogrammar in the immediate linguistic as well as a wider socio-political context. Choices of lexicogrammar are interpreted with regard to the particular socio-political context of each political or military event discussed. Six stages of analysis are identified: structure analysis, context analysis, thematic structure analysis, transitivity structure analysis, modality and interpretation/evaluation of results. The analysis is applied to a corpus of twenty news texts drawn from the online media.

The results of the analysis indicate that SFL can be applied effectively to the analysis of translated news texts and their potential sources, in English as well as in Russian. The results also show that potential sources are often misrepresented. The suggestion arising from this is that both the question of source-target relationship and the issue of equivalence in news translation, although problematic, may be successfully investigated, in contrast to what has previously been suggested in the area of news translation analysis. The study indicates that there are differences in the constructed ideologies of both representation and meanings in the analysed news texts. The general conclusion of the analysis with regard to constructed ideologies of representation is that national interests, existing stereotypes, policies and practices are reinforced through translation.

In the context of news translation the study addresses and illustrates a range of relevant and problematic issues. It also adds to the research related to contexts of political discourse by analysing three contexts of conflict and intervention. The current situation of instability in the region and Russia's military intervention in Ukraine (similar to the one in Georgia in 2008) contribute to the topicality and importance of the questions of representation and construction of meaning through translation in the media presented in this research. The results of the analysis indicate the need for further research based on a larger corpus of news texts. It is also suggested that further analysis may incorporate the readers' response as a criterion for evaluation of constructed ideology of representation in the respective contexts of news production.

List of Contents

Abstract.....	2
List of Contents.....	4
List of Tables.....	7
Acknowledgements.....	10
Chapter 1: Introduction. Contextual background of the research.....	11
1.1 Introduction. Context and composition.....	11
1.2 Role of media in shaping information in the context of globalisation.....	12
1.3 Approaches to the study of language and translation in the news: limitations and possibilities.....	18
1.4 Research questions and aims of the thesis.....	28
1.5 Methodology: data selection and approach to its analysis.....	29
1.6 Organisation of the study.....	30
Chapter 2: Political news texts in press translation: definitions, practices and strategies.....	32
2.1 Introduction. Translation in the production of journalistic discourse.....	32
2.2 News text in a political context.....	33
2.3 Features of a translated news text: its characteristics and challenges.....	36
2.4 News translation as a journalistic practice.....	41
2.5 News translation as adaptation: distortions and the question of equivalence in news production.....	45
2.6 Conclusions and further discussion.....	52
Chapter 3: The theory of Systemic-Functional linguistics in translation analysis.....	54
3.1 Introduction. Systemic-Functional Linguistics as a theory of language as a social semiotic: application in the area of translation studies.....	54
3.2 Language as a social semiotic system: critical linguistics as an approach to language as a social medium.....	55
3.3 Critical linguistics approach in the analysis of newspaper discourse.....	60
3.4 “Linguistic choice”: paradigmatic relations and meaning as a “system network”.....	62
3.5 Systemic-Functional Linguistics: key ideas, features and components.....	65

3.6 Application of SFL in translation analysis: theoretical considerations.....	73
3.7 Conclusions.....	87
 Chapter 4: Methodological aspects of the application of the SFL-based model in the analysis of news text translation.....	
4.1 Introduction. Application of SFL categories in translation analysis and qualification of the addressed research questions.....	89
4.2 Methodological aspects: data selection, analytical categories and illustrations.....	90
4.2.1 Translated texts and criteria of data selection.....	90
4.2.2 Qualification of a selected language pair.....	91
4.2.3 Case study analysis and unreliability of the approach of “clause matching”.....	92
4.2.4 Central analytical categories and stages of the adopted analytical approach.....	95
Thematic structure.....	97
Transitivity structure.....	100
Modality.....	105
Stages of the analytical approach.....	107
4.3 Conclusions.....	109
 Chapter 5: Data analysis and discussion.....	
5.1 Introduction.....	110
5.2 Analysis.....	111
5.2.1 Context 1. The South-Ossetian conflict (2008-2009).....	112
5.2.2 Context 2. Instability in Somalia: drought and conflict (2011-2012).....	159
5.2.3 Context 3. The Afghanistan War (2010 and 2012).....	196
5.3 Discussion and Conclusions.....	233
 Chapter 6: Findings and discussion.....	
6.1 Introduction.....	235
6.2 Theoretical contributions.....	238
6.3 Methodological contributions.....	241
6.4 Empirical contributions.....	243

6.5 Limitations of the study.....	246
6.6 Recommendations and suggestions for further research.....	248
Appendix 1.....	250
Appendix 2.....	253
Appendix 2A.....	253
Appendix 2B.....	258
Appendix 3A.....	263
Appendix 3B.....	270
Appendix 4A.....	277
Appendix 4B.....	284
Appendix 5A.....	291
Appendix 5B.....	297
Appendix 6A.....	303
Appendix 6B.....	313
Appendix 7A.....	323
Appendix 7B.....	327
Appendix 8A.....	331
Appendix 8B.....	344
Appendix 9A.....	357
Appendix 9B.....	365
Appendix 10A.....	373
Appendix 10B.....	380
References.....	387

List of Tables

Table 1. SFL-based model of ranks and levels analysis and analytical categories (following Halliday, 2004).....	69
Table 2. Case study 1.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 2A).....	99
Table 3. News texts of case study 1.1 (Appendix 2 A and B) in the context of the South- Ossetian conflict.....	112
Table 4. Case study 1.1 TT significant themes (Appendix 2).....	113
Table 5. Case study 1.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 2A).....	115
Table 6. Case study 1.1 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 2B).....	117
Table 7. Case study 1.1 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 2B).....	122
Table 8. News texts of Case study 1.2 (Appendix 3 A and B) in the context of the South- Ossetian conflict.....	127
Table 9. Case study 1.2 TT significant themes (Appendix 3A).....	129
Table 10. Case study 1.2 ST1, Abstract 1 significant themes (Appendix 3A).....	131
Table 11. Case study 1.2 ST1 Abstract 2 significant themes (Appendix 3A).....	133
Table 12. Case study 1.2 ST2 significant themes (Appendix 3A).....	134
Table 13. Case study 1.2 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 3B).....	138
Table 14. Case study 1.2 ST1 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 3B).....	141
Table 15. Case study 1.2 ST2 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 3B).....	145
Table 16. News texts of Case study 1.3 (Appendix 4 A and B) in the context of the South- Ossetian conflict.....	150
Table 17. Case study 1.3 TT significant themes (Appendix 4A).....	152
Table 18. Case study 1.3 ST significant themes (Appendix 4A).....	152
Table 19. Case study 1.3 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 4B).....	154
Table 20. Case study 1.3 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 4B).....	155
Table 21. News texts of Case study 2.1 (Appendix 5 A and B) in the context of instability in Somalia.....	160

Table 22. Case study 2.1 TT significant themes (Appendix 5A).....	161
Table 23. Case study 2.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 5A).....	164
Table 24. Case study 2.1 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 5B).....	166
Table 25. Case study 2.1 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 5B).....	168
Table 26. News texts of Case study 2.2 (Appendix 6 A and B) in the context of instability in Somalia.....	172
Table 27. Case study 2.2 TT significant themes (Appendix 6A).....	174
Table 28. Case study 2.2 ST significant themes (Appendix 6A).....	176
Table 29. Case study 2.2 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 6B).....	178
Table 30. Case study 2.2 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 6B).....	181
Table 31. News texts of Case study 2.3 (Appendix 7 A and B) in the context of instability in Somalia.....	185
Table 32. Case study 2.3 TT significant themes (Appendix 7A).....	187
Table 33. Case study 2.3 ST significant themes (Appendix 7A).....	188
Table 34. Case study 2.3 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 7B).....	190
Table 35. Case study 2.3 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 7B).....	192
Table 36. News texts of Case study 3.1 (Appendix 8 A and B) in the context of Afghanistan.....	197
Table 37. Case study 3.1 TT significant themes (Appendix 8A).....	199
Table 38. Case study 3.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 8A).....	200
Table 39. Case study 3.1 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 8B).....	203
Table 40. Case study 3.1 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 8B).....	205
Table 41. News texts of Case study 3.2 (Appendix 9 A and B) in the context of Afghanistan.....	211
Table 42. Case study 3.2 TT significant themes (Appendix 9A).....	213
Table 43. Case study 3.2 ST1 significant themes (Appendix 9A).....	215
Table 44. Case study 3.2 ST2 significant themes (Appendix 9A).....	216

Table 45. Case study 3.2 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 9B).....	218
Table 46. Case study 3.2 ST1 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 9B).....	220
Table 47. Case study 3.2 ST2 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 9B).....	222
Table 48. News texts of Case study 3.3 (Appendix 10 A and B) in the context of Afghanistan.....	226
Table 49. Case study 3.3 TT significant themes (Appendix 10A).....	227
Table 50. Case study 3.3 ST significant themes (Appendix 10A).....	228
Table 51. Case study 3.3 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 10B).....	231
Table 52. Case study 3.3 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 10B).....	232

Acknowledgements

My most sincere thanks and appreciation go to my friends and family for their love, support and encouragement at the most challenging times of this research.

I would like to thank the Faculty of Arts and Humanities at the University of East Anglia for providing me with an opportunity to study for an MA which led to this research and for funding of both degrees.

My most sincere appreciation goes to my supervisors, Dr R. W. Baines and Dr G. Pounds for their guidance, support and encouragement in the course of this research.

My thanks go to the research and teaching staff at the Institute of Foreign Philology at Zhytomyr State University after I. Franko in Ukraine for substantial training in linguistics and foreign languages.

My sincere thanks go to all staff at INTO UEA for providing a supportive environment.

This research is a tribute to all those who suffered during the difficult time for Ukraine of military occupation and clashes in 2014 and all those who fell victim to the violence of military conflicts around the globe and to whose courage, strength and faith this research is dedicated.

Chapter 1. Introduction. Contextual background of the research

how can you possibly know that the news is true? Well, you can't. You just trust the news, which means that even if you don't realize it and often claim the opposite in dinner party talk, you trust journalist-translators completely. How else could you believe that you know the first thing about what's going on in the world? (Bellos, 2011: 244).

1.1. Introduction. Context and composition

Translation is an integral part of the global media as it allows the transfer of information, perceptions of the world and interpretation of meaning across languages and cultures. News reports provide access to information as well as suggesting interpretations of that information. The concern of this research is to reflect on the processes involved in the interlingual mediation of political discourse through media and its use of language. This reflection reveals the role of translational processes as mediation between the event and its representation in the news.

This chapter presents the motivation and rationale for the research undertaken in this thesis, with particular reference to the following issues. It examines the role of the media in shaping information in the context of globalisation as well as the part played by translation in this process. It also discusses the ways in which the effects of translation may be identified and problematised. In setting out these problems it also discusses the difficulty of tracing the sources of translated news texts.

In its final part, the chapter sets out the overall programme of investigation and structure of the thesis. Chapter 1 is an introductory chapter aimed at providing a context for the research presented in this thesis, outlining key research questions and aims as well as presenting the overall methodology applied to the analysis of the data selected for purposes of this research.

1.2. Role of the media in shaping information in the context of globalisation

In news reports, where stories are presented by the media as facts, there emerges a possibility of a highly influential socio-political impact capable of shaping reality. The media shapes the ways in which countries, nations or social groups may be perceived, interpreted and approached. The focus of this research is the analysis and interpretation of the ways in which translation intervenes in and has an influence on the production of a news report as the final product. News media represent a powerful and influential force in its ability to construct reality by constructing what we believe and understand about the other. Research presented hereafter is interdisciplinary in its nature and combines the study of language, translation, media and politics. It is aimed at investigating translational practices, examining the (mis)representation of political discourse in news reports, specifically in times of political conflict, war and socio-political instability.

In the analysis of political discourse in the media where public opinion is mediated through journalistic practices, it is crucial to emphasise the impact of translation. As Valdeón points out “the choices made by the writers are certainly powerful tools to portray the story, or news event in our case, in a certain light” (2008: 300). Translation is involved at all stages of the production of a news text, from sourcing and drafting to redrafting of information and its transfer across socio-political contexts and cultures. In addition, the role of a “journalist-translator” in this context of making meaning is crucial (Van Doorslaer, 2010: 11). Conway rightly points out that “interpretation in the broader sense describes much of what journalists do” (2010: 187).

Bielsa and Bassnett (2009), who conduct an in-depth examination of the processes of global news, characterise translation in the news as a mediatory process. They state that “translation intervenes from the start in the process of news gathering, and is often the point of departure for international journalists who write about foreign reality” (2009: 5). Emphasising the power and the potential impact of translation in the news in the context of war and conflict, Baker emphasises that “in this conflict-ridden and globalized world, translation is central to the ability of all parties to legitimize their version of events” (2006: 1). This suggests that translation should be given more consideration and further analysis needs to be carried out in the area of news translation.

Prior to the discussion of the theoretical background for the research and its linguistic context, it is necessary to look at the broader picture of political communication in the news and its translation. The following section will present and discuss globalisation as a context for this research. Discussion of the process of globalisation and its effects will allow for a broader understanding of the relationship between global events and conflicts as well as the analysis of news translation in political discourse. It will also allow for a clearer view of the role played by translation in the transfer of information and the interpretation of meaning across languages and cultures.

The expansion of global processes and the development of communication technology have changed the ways in which nations, states, social groups, governments and leaders interact. Notions of a global market and a global economy reflect the existence of links among nations and states. Demographic changes in the world, including migration, integration, assimilation and adaptation between markets and societies have established and broadened international connections and influences in rather contradictory ways. The contradiction lies in the question of whether globalisation can be perceived as a positive process (which contributes to global integration) or as a framework for the expansion of its strongest participants – economically and politically developed countries.

Globalisation can be viewed as a process that has both positive and negative aspects (Bisley, 2007; Bowe & Martin, 2007; Rodrik, 2011). As a positive process, globalisation has largely contributed to the expansion of links between nations and states across the world. It has resulted in the introduction of communication technologies into the daily life of individuals and societies, increasing the potential for instantaneous communication. To the most developed national economies, globalisation has brought the expansion of markets, resulting in the international spread of goods and services. It has resulted in economic and political collaboration through the establishment of common economic areas, political unions, humanitarian aid and natural disaster relief programmes. The logical conclusion might be that globalisation is, in fact, a positive process which in the long run will stabilise the global economy and allow for the solution of political, economic and environmental crises.

However, some analysts of globalisation and its effects (e.g. Nester, 2010; Ritzer, 2011) view globalisation as an ongoing process and argue that the full picture of its global socio-political and economic impact can be viewed fully only in the future. As for the negative

effects of globalisation, they can already be distinguished in the emergence of a number of negative global trends. Research presented hereafter will be based on an understanding of globalisation as a contradictory force, the effects of which can be identified through the examples of such negative global trends as international and cross-border terror, crime and corruption, economic and environmental crises. The grounds for the emergence of negative global trends have been characterised as compression of the world with removed agency (Bielsa and Bassnett, 2009; Boyd-Barrett, 2010; Ritzer, 2011). In his work on globalisation, its theories and impacts, Ritzer (2011: 248) explains the compression of the world as a reduction in time and space which allows nations and states to engage in global political relationships. Such political relationships become complex once a number of states are engaged in a political or military conflict. Such complex relationships often result in the representation of removed agency where no particular party, state or government is held solely accountable for a conflict. This is characterised by an inability to determine a distinct agent in the context of a conflict such as, for instance, an aggressor in the “war on terror” in Iraq.

In his work on media and its impact, Boyd-Barrett (2010: 139) refers to the notion of removed agency and describes globalisation as “a flawed conceptual tool which presumes to tell us that “agency” no longer matters”. Similarly, Castells (2010) in discussing the newly emerging public sphere on a global scale (which involves global civil society, communication networks as well as governance) reflects on the challenges of globalisation and the structural transformation of global politics. The author presents a range of political crises, such as those of efficiency, legitimacy, identity and equity, as the negative outcomes of globalisation. These crises may emerge from the space created in the process of globalisation where a crisis “arises and is managed at the source” (Castells, 2010: 39). A crisis of efficiency provides an example of the lack of agency and presence of the so-called “global agency” where, for example, major environmental problems and issues cannot be adequately managed as their local character is removed and they become global. Furthermore, local conflicts with a number of involved participants lose distinct agency which disperses among the groups engaged in a conflict. The question then arises regarding the effect of the loss of agency on the identification of responsibility and on the representation of a conflict.

In international politics and the global economy, a compressed world is an organism with tight links between events and processes taking place in one part of the world that affect the local economies and political processes of another. In the example of the military conflict in Iraq the number of countries involved at the level of intervention blurs the notion of the actual aggressor. This is true whether it is the terrorist groups, the U.S. government or any other military intervening group that carries the agency. Another example illustrating the effects of the compression of the world could be seen in the aftermath of the earthquake in Japan in 2011, after which businesses around the world and local economies grew dependent on the efforts of the Japanese government to bring about the recovery of its economy.

In a political conflict, compression of the world becomes a characteristic feature of modern warfare which, according to Ritzer (2011), results from and is aided by globalisation. In the example of the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait. The author discusses the invasion of Kuwait in 1991 as a threat to the states in the region which had relations with that nation. He shows how a war in one region is most likely to involve other indirectly related participants. In a compressed world, such international conflicts resulting from influences of globalisation present a new form of conflict management on a global scale. Also known and discussed as “new wars” (Bielsa, 2010), such international conflicts are no longer bound to a particular territory or an aggressor. They involve both direct participants and nations who may become involved indirectly through their commercial or political interests.

In the age of globalisation such peculiarities of war and conflict have an impact on the way in which they are represented and perceived. In the era of globalised conflicts understanding of a difference between, for example, “terrorism” and “neo-liberalism” depends on the representation of events and on the perspective of the viewer (Ritzer, 2011). The engagement of a global audience through the involvement of the media means that events of a war or a conflict may be communicated almost instantaneously.

Representation of war and conflict is constructed and mediated by the media (Allen & Seaton, 1999; Bertrand & Huges, 2005; Negrine, 2008; Hanusch, 2010; Harding, 2012). It is through certain representations that war is justified, dismissed or supported by public opinion. One effect of globalisation has been the media shaping of public opinion through the mediation of information. Hachten and Scotton (2007) who study media coverage and

the construction of public opinion by means of news reporting emphasise the role of media in such shaping. As a result of global processes, involving the development of both the technology and infrastructure of global news reporting “more than ever before in history, more people almost everywhere now have opinions - whether about globalisation, the United Nations, nuclear proliferation or world leaders” (2007: 8).

Understanding the impact of the media on public opinion and political discourse leads to questions regarding the quality of political discourse in the media, its mediation and its representation through language and translation. The media as an actor of social and political events both on a global and national scale represent an influential socio-political force as they intervene to shape and construct social reality. The communication technology widely employed by the media is often involved in the development of political processes as well as in policymaking regarding international relationships and the resolution of conflicts. Communication technology can be understood as a set of channels and technological means of communication that allows media to present and interpret developments in greater detail at a higher speed and with wider coverage than was once possible. Citing examples from the 2002-2003 Iraq crisis, Brown (2005) describes communication technology as having the potential for “socialising” a conflict, resulting in the engagement of a larger audience. As the author claims, “the more public a conflict becomes the greater the potential for initially uninvolved groups to intervene and by doing so to change the potential outcome” (Brown, 2005: 64).

The ability of the media to direct the way in which a conflict or an international interaction unfolds can be seen as a result of expanding media coverage. Within the media channels, television news is seen as a swift means of presenting and interpreting global events and, as a result, affecting governmental decisions. In her work, Gilboa (2005: 3) describes the influence of media on political actions and policymaking in the U.S. in the context of conflict. The author discusses the notion of the “CNN effect”, examining the relationship between the media, the government and public opinion, exploring the effect that television has on policymaking. Using examples from the crises in Somalia and Bosnia, broadly covered by the global news, the author illustrates how widespread coverage intensifies media intervention and prompts a certain type of response. In both cases, Gilboa (2005) presents the response of the U.S. government policymakers as being prompted by the media’s narration and interference, accelerating the response and therefore potentially altering it.

Similarly, the alteration of events and responses can occur in the process of translation. Media coverage, intervention and its impact on the construction of social reality (and its representation) are the subject of much interdisciplinary research across political, media and language studies. The interdisciplinary conference on “Translating Terror: Globalization and the New Planetary Wars” at the University of Warwick in November 2005, led to a publication political violence and the role of translation by Bielsa and Hughes (2009). In this publication, media influences are viewed in the context of processes of globalisation. In this context, translation is further integrated into the study of media and politics. The authors discuss media, language and politics as a closely merged entity where translation performs a role, often invisible, in the mediation of a conflict.

As Bielsa states in the introduction to the publication, “the media do not just report, but are part of the global battlefields and central players of the information war” (2009: 12). She further develops a hypothesis suggesting the ways in which political conflicts and issues, such as terrorism and drug trafficking are no longer bound to a particular territory. The author suggests that due to the media coverage and a broad engagement of the global audience these have become internationally important and influential. Bielsa (2009) depicts such global engagement as a potentially dangerous influence on global politics and international relations, resulting in the atmosphere of constant war and globalised violence. By intervening, the media globalise conflict and mobilise the interest of global economic and political actors. Referring to the role of language employed by the media and its strategies of representation through translation, Bielsa claims that “the media do not just determine available representations of war, but also shape representations of the other, which in time of violent conflict play a fundamental role” (2009: 12).

Translation is the means by which mediation and representation occur in the news (Van Dijk, 1988b; Orengo, 2009). In news reporting, translation is the primary mediator in the transfer of information and in its transformation across cultures and languages. Examining the effects of globalisation on translation practices, Cronin (2003: 124) argues that, first and foremost, the function of translators in the global age is mediation – “they are the medium by which texts from one culture and language are transmitted to another”. The comparative invisibility of translational processes in news reporting and global information flows has resulted in the assumption that “information can circulate unaltered across different linguistic communities and cultures” (Bielsa, 2009: 14). However, according to Bielsa, “recent events and in particular the war on terror favour a new awareness of

translation in the public domain, and for the first time translators acquire some of the visibility" (2009: 14). Thus, globalisation, recent military and political conflicts, media intervention and linguistic representation have brought about an increasing awareness of the importance of the study of language use and translation in the news.

1.3. Approaches to the study of language and translation in the news: limitations and possibilities

Discussion and analysis of the trends in the research of translation in the news will enable this study to highlight and identify the limitations and gaps within current research as well as determine its further possibilities and directions. The presentation of claims about truth, reality and related facts is organised through language in the form of news reports by means of information gathering and media coverage of news events. It is through language that events are narrated and interpreted. It is also through language that perceptions and understanding of an event, its position, meaning and impact on the development of a conflict is constructed. In his work on the analysis of political discourse, Chilton (2004) discusses the interrelation of the media, public discourse and language use. He presents a direct link between the responses of the public to the discourse constructed in the media through the views and beliefs that it presents. His focus is specifically on political discourse as the practice that has a significant impact on the public interpretation and understanding of reality, both national and foreign.

Construction of reality as provided in news reports reinforces the idea that interpretation of foreign news and events ultimately depends on the language used by the media. Investigating the links between language and media, Conboy (2007) discusses examples of the language use by the media and its potential impacts. In discussing the concept of "social construction of reality", he refers to Berger and Luckman's view of the media (1967) as able to affect and organise public discourse through language. In the following example, Conboy (2007: 99) illustrates how a particular choice of vocabulary suggests interpretation and attitude towards the narrated story:

The Independent (27 January 2006):

Hamas scores stunning win

The Times (27 January 2006):

Islamic bombers triumph at ballot

In these newspaper headlines, the choice of the phrase “Islamic bombers” in *the Times*, with its highly connotative meaning, over the name of the organisation, “Hamas” in *the Independent*, as the author points out (Conboy, 2007: 99), demonstrates how *the Times* prefers to present the Hamas party “by reference to its militant past”. As presented in the example, the choice of vocabulary in the headline sets a framework for understanding and interpreting the story that follows.

Referring to the use of language in the news and its potential to construct reality and influence the audience’s perceptions, Conboy (2007) examines the application of semiology to the study of language in the news. According to the author, the application of semiology to the news analysis does the following:

It assists in understanding, for instance, how our language organizes the world and how this is often what we come to term reality. It can be used to demonstrate how, in terms of the language of the news, this reality is structured differently depending on its socio-cultural and national context. (Conboy, 2007: 100)

Semiology views language as a system of signs that hold and transfer meanings. In his analysis of the application of semiology, Conboy (2007: 103) recognises its inability to account for the full complexity of texts in the news in a range of social contexts and ideological implications. The analysis of meanings in newspaper discourse requires simultaneous analysis of a broader socio-political framework as a context for their interpretation. As an alternative to the analysis of language in the news, Conboy (2007) suggests the application of social semiotics, which, in fact, does account for a broader social and political context. As the author points out, “social semiotics stresses that meanings in language are negotiated between users of the system and its social contexts” (2007: 103). The approach of analysing language in the news through social semiotics focuses on the social construction of meaning. The application of this approach will be

further discussed at a later stage in this chapter in relation to the models of analysis of translational practices in the news examined in this thesis.

Research presented in this thesis is aimed at investigating language in the news through translation. In the language of the news, translation performs a function of mediation between socio-political contexts. In their work on news translation, Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) examine the intertwined nature of language, translation and political discourse in the globalised world. The authors discuss translation in the news in terms of its professional demands, power and constraints. They review factors that influence the process of translation and the drafting of news reports, all of which have an impact on the ways in which we read news reports. Among such factors Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) name the political and economic environment, the geographical location and the historical influences as the context within which translation takes place. Among other factors that contribute to decision-making and the choices of those translating the news, they highlight the practices of drafting and domesticating the information for a particular audience in a particular context.

The authors (Bielsa & Bassnett, 2009) also refer to a range of other issues of news translation. They discuss the question of Anglophone journalism in relation to the dominance of the English language, resulting in the appearance of agencies sourcing news reports of minority languages through translation. The authors also emphasise speed as a constraint and accuracy as a professional demand placed upon journalists. They provide the example of urgent news reports which result in translation often being carried out word for word. Discussing principles concerning the drafting of breaking news reports and their implications, they emphasise the impact of commercial interests and competition on the speed of news transmission.

Examining the questions of Anglophone dominance and hegemony, Tymoczko (2009) develops the topic of political violence within the context of globalisation. She refers to the potential of translation “both to foster and mitigate political violence” (Tymoczko, 2009: 179). The author approaches current translational practices critically, viewing them as “an instrument of domination and hegemony” (Tymoczko, 2009: 173). According to her, these processes of domination and hegemony result from the approaches that are currently employed in the practice of translation, which are in turn reinforced by the idea of Western cultural dominance. The author argues for the creation of “adequate models of

understanding and translating culture such that otherness can be communicated and received throughout the world" (2009: 173). The latter holds true for the investigation of "modes of dissemination of translated materials" such as news broadcasts and governmental press releases (Tymoczko, 2009: 178). Tymoczko (2009) concludes that a shift towards translation as a productive, performative and discursive practice should be made to develop models of translation adequate for the globalised age of information transfer.

In the analysis of news texts and their translation, Baker (2006; 2010) narrows the area of her research of the language in the news to translation specifically within conflict. She refers to the notions of reframing narrative in translation within political conflict. In the area of translation studies, analysis of translated texts is often referred to through the application of the Norm theory. Toury's Norm theory (1995), aims at investigating translation practices through the analysis of socio-cultural norms that exist in societies, influencing what is regarded as adequate and appropriate in translation. Arguing against this approach, in her examination of narrative theory in relation to the analysis of news texts in the context of conflict, Baker (2010) investigates the influence of individual translational choices in reframing a conflict and constructing political discourse. She stresses that:

The narrative theory framework encourages us to avoid these broad abstractions [norms] and to think of individual choices as embedded in and contributing to the elaboration of concrete political reality (Baker, 2010: 120).

In translation, as the author points out, it is individual translational choices that make the difference. These have an impact on the narrative and its relation to the audience, as a result affecting the construction of social reality – "choices do not exist in free variation but have serious implications in the real world" (Baker, 2010: 119). To demonstrate the impact of individual translational choices, Baker (2010) in her work on conflict in translation refers to the analysis of an Arabic documentary of *Jenin Jenin* in 2002. This chronicles the Israeli attack on the Jenin camp in occupied Palestine and was translated into English, Hebrew, French, Spanish and Italian. In the English subtitled translation, as Baker describes (2010: 125), the original reference to the destruction in Jenin was compared to that in Vietnam:

Arabic:

What can I say, by God, by God, our house/home is no longer house/home.

English:

What can I say? Not even Vietnam was as bad as this.

Such reframing of the narrative from destruction of homes to the destruction from the war in Vietnam evokes a broader context of public narrative. Being directed at the U.S. audience, such translational choice, according to Baker (2010), frames America as an aggressor responsible for its support of Palestinian oppression. The notion of “framing” is crucial in news-making. Baker defines “framing” “as an active strategy that implies agency and by means of which we consciously participate in the construction of reality” (2006: 106). Every news text represents a narrative that is framed and reframed in a new context.

As illustrated in the example above, reframing of a conflict and understanding of individual choices made in translation “respond to larger narratives circulating beyond the immediate text and cannot be explained resorting to norm theory or Venuti’s foreignizing versus domesticating dichotomy” (Baker, 2010: 125). Individual translational choices in the news need to be approached from the perspective of context, being analysed both in terms of the immediate textual as well as broader socio-political context and discourse. The aim of this research is to apply a model previously used in both linguistics and translation analysis such that it considers both individual choices and a broader socio-political context. Systemic-Functional Linguistics (SFL), applied to the analysis of translated news texts in this thesis, is in detail discussed in Chapter 4.

Another example that vividly illustrates the issues of translational choices in news texts is discussed by Holland (2006). In his analysis of language and representation in translation within the news discourse, the author analyses the translation of a speech given by the President of Indonesia in September 1999 concerning the deployment of the UN peacekeeping forces in East Timor. This public statement was made both in Indonesian and English as well as being translated from Indonesian into English. Citing the example of a phrase “teman-teman di seluruh dunia” which was translated as “our friends in international community” in the English version, Holland (2006: 244) demonstrates misrepresentation through translational choice. The phrase, as the author points out, literally translates as “friends [≈ all over the] world” (Holland, 2006). For political and

social reasons, the President of Indonesia might have refrained from using the term “international community” as it might have been taken by the Indonesian public as a euphemism for the United States, its allies and multinational organisations “which, from their point of view, interfere in the social and economic systems of less powerful countries” (Holland, 2006: 244).

Examples discussed in the previous paragraphs show that individual translational practices are relevant to the analysis of political discourse in the news. These individual practices provide an insight into what actually happens in the process of translation, how a text is assembled and what features it acquires in one particular context. Advocating that interpretation of individual translational choices can be made not only from their immediate text, but their broader socio-cultural and political context of the event, Baker (2010) claims that:

Narrative theory allows us to explain translational choices in relation to wider social and political contexts, but without losing sight of the individual text and event. (Baker, 2010: 117)

Analysis of individual translational choices is capable of providing translators and linguists with a limited set of lexical and discursive options in translation of news texts. In order to provide adequate analysis, research into translation of the news within the framework of a conflict needs to step away from traditional approaches of interpretation of translation through socio-cultural norms, expectations and values. Tymoczko (2009), advocating for the search of new translational models in translation in the context of conflict, states that:

More than three decades of descriptive translation studies have shown such evaluative questions (whether something is good or bad for the understanding of links between globalisation, translation and political violence) to be virtually useless in illuminating the cultural roles played by translation. (2009: 172)

The limitations of the current approach to the analysis of translation in the news within a conflict (Baker, 2006; 2010; Tymoczko, 2009) demonstrate that concepts of translation must be widened in order for translators to avoid engaging in translation as an instrument of cultural and linguistic dominance, manipulation or misrepresentation of the other. As Tymoczko (2009: 173) states “alternative models remain to be fully articulated in

translation studies”. Prior to examining possible models for further analysis of translational practices in the news within a conflict, it is necessary to discuss the characteristics of news texts and the limitations which such texts present with regard to their analysis. In their research on translation in the news, Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) point to the distinct nature of news texts’ analysis. Discussing the correlation between source and target in translation of news reports, the authors point to the problematic nature of “the original” (Bielsa and Bassnett, 2009). They draw on Schäffner’s (2004) explanation of why news translation is so distinct from other types of translation where the notions of source and target form the basis for discussion of translation qualities and practices:

What material in this field is starting to show is that translation is one element in a complex set of processes whereby information is transposed from one language into another and then edited, rewritten, reshaped and repackaged in a new context, to such a degree that any clear distinction between source and target ceases to be meaningful. (2004: 120)

Another characteristic feature of news texts (resulting from the complex source-target relationship) is intertextuality: where news texts borrow and accommodate news content from a variety of sources. Within the discussion of source and target texts raised by Schäffner (2004) and further developed by Conboy (2007) and Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) examines intertextuality in news translation. His understanding of the final product of a news story is that it is “made up of many texts, interviews, reports and government pronouncements, for instance, which have to be combined into a presentable form for the particular news package” (Conboy, 2007: 211). Intertextuality, as a characteristic feature of news texts is relevant to the discussion of methodological approaches to the analysis of such texts and will be further discussed in the section on methodology.

In the area of news translation, there is no single definition of how news texts should be treated. On the one hand, they are pieces of intertextual drafting to be considered and analysed as such without any interest in the origins. On the other hand, such texts are directly designed and modified from the source, indicating that they should be analysed in comparison to the source. This difference in the approach to news translation analysis may be accounted for by a frequent difficulty in locating a specific source for the final translated text. The news text is not always a translation alone but an intertextual product of a broader journalistic practice. Nevertheless, as demonstrated by Baker’s (2010)

approach to the analysis of translation of political discourse in a news medium in the example of the *Jenin Jenin* documentary, a source-target analysis can be achieved in cases where a clear reference to the source exists and is embedded in the translation. In other cases where no reference to the source is provided in the target text, this research will discuss the ways in which “potential” sources may be identified and analysed. This approach towards identifying “potential” source texts is discussed in Chapter 4 of this thesis.

In examining translational practices and their transformation across texts and contexts it is necessary to adopt a theoretical and methodological approach to the analysis of news texts. Linguistics and linguistic analysis in translation studies is of prominent relevance in the analysis of news texts. As has been already discussed, researchers (Conboy, 2007; Bielsa and Bassnett, 2009; Baker, 2010) aiming at investigating translational processes in the news employ linguistics as a tool for analysis of textual materials, broader socio-cultural discourses and the interpretation of textual evidence.

In the work on the language employed in the news texts and ideological representations, Fowler (1991) expands on purely descriptive practices, using methods from critical linguistics. The method of critical linguistics is based on the understanding that language both influences social practices and creates social reality. Critical linguistics emphasises the analysis of language and the construction of meanings in a broad socio-political and cultural context. Fowler (1991) bases the approach of critical linguistics on the understanding of language as “an integral part of social process”, where “the structure of discourse and of texts reflects and expresses the purpose and roles of its participants, these in turn being products of the prevailing forms of economic and social organization” (Fowler, 1991: 195). Viewing critical linguistics as an analytical tool in the analysis of language in the news, Conboy (2007) claims the following:

It seeks to draw attention to the ways in which language is used across news media to create the conditions in which conventional hierarchies of society are reproduced tacitly and without drawing too much attention to this process of reproduction. (2007: 24)

Analysing language from the perspective of its relationship with a broader social structure, Fowler (1991: 187) discusses the “functionalist” linguistic approach developed by M.A.K. Halliday (1970; 1973; 1985; 2004). As has been already discussed, Conboy (2007: 103) suggests the application of social semiotics as a method of language analysis in a broader socio-cultural context. The model for such analysis is embedded in the Hallidayan approach to the study of language, its structures and functions within a specific context. Similarly, in discussing the models of analysing political discourse in their work, Chilton and Schäffner (2002: 25) emphasise that “views are often expressed by analysts of social and political discourse [...] in favour of functional-systemic models (Halliday)”. Systemic-Functional Linguistics (SFL) as developed by Halliday (1970; 1973; 1985; 2004) accounts for the links between individual linguistic choices and their function in constructing and reflecting social reality. In the analysis of news texts, application of SFL would make it possible to illustrate the differences in representation between news texts and their sources in the different contexts within which they are produced and read.

Notions of political discourse, representation, recontextualisation, conflict and socio-political context will be discussed in Chapter 2 of this thesis. This discussion underlies the methodology applied in this thesis to the analysis of translated news texts. In this thesis I refer to the term “constructed ideology of representation” in order to distinguish between representation as a narrow notion used in SFL/functional terms and a broader understanding of representation which includes construction of reality and ideologies imbedded in the language of news texts. As discussed earlier in this chapter, Baker (2006) refers to the construction of reality in news texts as “framing” where narratives are framed in and through translation. Baker (2006) describes “(re-)framing” as a process of conscious, motivated and active reconstruction of a narrative within a specific contextual frame. In turn, “constructed ideology of representation” as a term, can be understood as a result of such a process where, whether translational choices were intentional, motivated and conscious or not, a particular ideology and particular representations are embedded in a translated news text.

In order to outline key aims of the research presented in this thesis, it is necessary to identify its potential and limitations first. Research in the area of language and translation in the news in the context of conflict presents the following difficulties. First, analysis of linguistic practices in the media is rather broad and revolves around analysis of language in the news, rather than translational practices proper. For instance, Conboy (2007) refers to

the analysis of texts from a linguistic comparative perspective and investigates language in general rather than specific translational processes and practices. In cases, where translation is given more attention (Holland, 2006; Bielsa and Bassnett 2009; Baker 2010), analysis of a range of forms of news discourse is discussed. As an example, Baker (2010) analyses a video documentary, whilst Holland (2006) discusses a broadcast interview. Some linguists discuss representation in the news providing frameworks for its analysis such as that of narrative theory (Baker, 2006; Bielsa 2009). However, there is no unified analysis of specific data within one context that would allow linguists to develop a model for interpreting and evaluating representation in news translation through analysis of individual translational practices. The research presented in this thesis will aim to develop and apply a model for interpreting and evaluating representation in translated news texts and their sources based on the previous developments in linguistics and translation analysis, specifically, SFL.

As discussed previously in this chapter, the notion of “framing” is key to understanding and analysing news translation. However, it might not be of similar importance when analysing translated news texts where the focus is on understanding the difference in constructed ideologies of representation. As seen in Baker’s analysis (2010), narrative theory focuses on the choice of specific lexical items and their impact on framing narratives of war and conflict based on conscious decisions of the journalist-translator. Whilst being useful in understanding how specific lexical items and certain textual modifications may be dictated by socio-political “frames”, narrative theory, in comparison to SFL, does not provide an analytical model for analysing representation constructed in a news text. This point will be further illustrated in Chapters 5 and 6. Similarly, it could be argued that Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) could account for understanding representations in news texts within a specific context of war and conflict. Fairclough (1995) suggests that CDA can provide interpretations of representations and discourses that motivate such representations. However, unlike SFL, CDA appears selective in its analysis of textual categories focusing, primarily, on lexical items and their motivation by broader discourse. As Valdeón rightly points out, following Fairclough’s (2001) model of CDA, it is more concerned with “concrete lexical items” (2009: 68). In addition to what CDA has to offer, SFL provides analytical tools for analysing representation constructed within a range of lexical elements and grammatical structures, seeking to interpret cumulative effect created by such elements and structures. Analytical tools which SFL

provides for the analysis of constructed representations is further examined in Chapters 3 and 4.

1.4. Research questions and aims of the thesis

The aim of this research is to understand why translation in news discourse as a practice of choice and decision-making takes the form it does. If every translation decision is shaped and prompted by a certain socio-political context, what effect can translation potentially have on foreign policy and conflict management to the extent that it reinforces and shapes public opinion through its representation? This thesis aims to examine how translated news texts transform information, constructing representations in the process. It also examines how the transfer of information between socio-political contexts and ideological frameworks influences representation. The overview of the issues presented above has prompted the following research questions:

1. Given the complex relationship between source and target texts in news translation, can potential sources be identified? How can analysis of “potential” sources contribute to the understanding of the analysed target news texts?
2. In the analysis of translated news texts, how can equivalence be assessed at the level of the overall representation rather than at word or sentence level?
3. In the context of the complex relationship between source and target news texts, how does equivalence between the target and its potential sources contribute to the evaluation of the representation constructed in news texts?
4. Can SFL be applied to the analysis of translated news texts and their potential sources to assess equivalence on the level of representation?
5. Can an SFL-based model with a range of components account for differences in the constructed ideology of representation in news texts in political and military context?

In order to address these questions, this thesis suggests and tests a new methodological approach for the analysis of translated news texts, as briefly outlined below. The full

account (including examples illustrating the application of this methodology) are presented in Chapter 4.

1.5. Methodology: data selection and approach to its analysis.

Twenty news texts were selected as data for analysis in this research. The two criteria that have been used in the selection of data are “thematic” and “translation”. The “thematic” criterion governs the selection of news texts which belong to the context of political conflict, instability or intervention. The “translation” criterion regulates the selection of those news texts which either provide a reference to a source or for which a “potential” source can be located. The three contexts within which news texts were selected are those in which the Russian Federation has been directly involved, in which it had intervened, or in which its media had delivered major news reporting. The contexts and texts were chosen in consideration of the researcher’s linguistic knowledge: native knowledge of Russian and near-native command of English. The three contexts within which selected news texts are analysed include the following:

Context 1. The South-Ossetian conflict (2008-2009).

Context 2. Instability in Somalia: drought and conflict (2011-2012).

Context 3. The Afghanistan War (2010 and 2012).

The full contextual background is further discussed in Chapter 5. All news texts are analysed in the format of a case study that allows detailed textual and contextual analysis. Representation of events plays an influential role in understanding and presenting political discourse and international relations. Moreover, representation contributes to the creation of “truth” and “reality”. In news discourse, this can be seen in the creation of such concepts as “international intrigue” or “simulation of war” (Der Derian & Shapiro, 1989: 163).

Analysis of language used in the media informs understanding of language as a social semiotic system – a medium by which reality is constructed and through which such reality is reflected. The analysis of the selected data is conducted using the SFL model presented by Halliday (2004). This model includes a range of analytical categories such as thematic structure, transitivity structure and modality all of which are analysed within a specific

socio-political context and political discourse. Each case study (in which all selected news texts are grouped) is analysed in six stages:

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis.

Stage 2. Context analysis

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis.

Stage 4. Transitivity analysis (dominant participants, processes and circumstances).

Stage 5. Modality.

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation of the constructed ideology of representation.

1.6. Organisation of the study

The research presented in this thesis is organised into six chapters. Chapter 1 is an introduction to the context of and background for the research questions. It examines issues related to globalisation, conflict and media as they provide the context to the analysis of news translation. It also presents an overview of the methodology and the data of the research.

Chapter 2 examines the main characteristics of news translation, discussing the relevant practices and strategies. It also addresses the question of the source-target relationship in news translation and suggests possible ways of identifying and analysing source news texts.

Chapter 3 presents and discusses the theory of Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL) as developed by Halliday (2004), on which the research of this thesis is based. It discusses the language in the media from the perspective of social semiotics, providing an overview of the categories of SFL which have been applied to the analysis of news texts in this thesis.

Chapter 4 addresses methodological questions. It presents an analytical model based on the theory of SFL and includes categories of thematic structure, transitivity structure, modality, as applied to the analysis of news texts. Chapter 4 aims to illustrate application of the methodology to the analysis of the news texts selected in this study. It uses examples from the data and presents six stages of the analysis.

In Chapter 5 the analysis of all the selected texts is presented and the findings evaluated. The analysis of the data is organised into the following contexts: (1) the South-Ossetian conflict, (2) instability in Somalia and (3) Afghanistan. The data and analysis related to these contexts is presented as case studies.

Chapter 6 presents evaluations of the adopted methodological approach and the findings. It discusses theoretical, methodological and empirical contributions of the research presented in this thesis. It also suggests directions for further research as well as discusses limitations of the study.

Chapter 2. Political news text in press translation: definitions, practices and strategies

2.1. Introduction. Translation in the production of journalistic discourse

Textual and contextual analysis of the political discourse in the area of news translation requires examination of the existing translation practices in journalistic writing. Language choices made in the process of writing and rewriting of news texts have the potential to modify meaning. This creates scope for misrepresentation and potential distortions of the translated news content. News production involving translation, therefore, has the potential to affect the ways in which the world, events, nations and states are perceived and understood.

This chapter discusses how a news text produced in the context of political discourse can be viewed as a political news text. It also examines the characteristics of news translation, discussing practices and strategies employed in the translation of the news. Locating sources of target news texts in news translation analysis is often problematic due to the variety of content which is assimilated into a news text. This chapter offers a discussion of the issues surrounding the source-target relationship in news translation, suggesting ways in which the potential source can be identified.

In journalistic discourse, construction of meaning and representation already occurs in the process of monolingual journalistic writing. This phenomenon is, however, even more apparent in the case of linguistic transfer of meaning from one context to another, from one cultural environment into another. This chapter explores the use of translation in the production of journalistic discourse, specifically, news texts translation and examines the role of the translator in this process. It will start by discussing the notion of political discourse, examining how a political news text is different from other journalistic texts (e.g. financial news, sports news and advertising). It will then discuss the challenges of news production as a context, looking at the variety of translation strategies which are used in the process of news texts translation. The analysis of these strategies leads to an examination of the aims of news translation and how these are closely related to adaptation – rather than translation – of news content. Translation is seen as one of the many aspects of the process of news writing and reporting. As Valdeón points out “journalists may be acting as translators, editors or both rather than as reporters of news events” (2008: 303). Emphasising the role of the translator as a news writer, Van Dooslaer (2010) defines it as a

role of the “journalist-translator”. He stresses that “translation forms an integral part of journalistic work: a complex, integrated combination of information gathering, translating, selecting, reinterpreting, contextualizing and editing” (2010: 181). As a result of the complex role of the journalist-translator in news writing, the potential of translation for manipulating the meaning and misrepresenting the source as well as the narrated events is likely to be underestimated. To demonstrate the superficial value ascribed to translation in existing journalistic practices, this chapter will analyse the role translation plays in journalism and writing of news texts, as outlined in the guidelines for journalists produced by *Reuters*, *the Guardian* and *the New York Times*.

2.2. News text in a political context

Our understanding of national and foreign political, economic and social events can potentially be shaped through the use of language in the news. Through language views, stereotypes and beliefs are shaped and reinforced. In this highly technological world where communication is performed at a high speed in the conditions of a “global village”, it would seem natural that translation should assist in the promotion of understanding, tolerance and cooperation within as well as outside nations and states.

However, while the complexity of political and economic relationships in a globalised world is generally recognised, the importance and potential impact of translation in the news is often underestimated. A closer analysis reveals that the activity of translation may contribute to rather than resolve this complexity as it is widely used for the promotion of national and corporate interests. In the context of wars and conflicts, translation often serves to reinforce national interests and ideological frameworks.

Examining translation in the context of conflict, Pérez-González (2012: 169) points out that, in situations of conflict, there is “the possibility of translation being used not only to resolve conflict and tension, but also to promote them”. The news texts and their translations analysed in this thesis demonstrate how language creates the potential for the manipulation of readers’ perceptions of political and military events by constructing meaning to fit in particular ideological frameworks.

This thesis often refers to the notion of discourse. In the news that deals with wars, crises, interventions and other forms of political and military instability, it is possible to suggest

that, thematically speaking, news texts are representations of political discourse. News texts are not only thematically bound to political contexts, but also function as sources of information about political and military events. As such they inform views and beliefs, reinforcing or refuting ideologies in the process. Discussing the link between language and politics manifested in political discourse, Chilton (2004) emphasises that, in political discourse, language is codified and used for persuasive and other political purposes. Similarly, the ways in which language is used in news texts that discuss political and military events may support or refute the political ideas and public perceptions.

When distinguishing between types of discourse, one may take either a broad or a narrow perspective (Van Dijk, 1988a; Wetherell, Taylor & Yates, 2001; Bednarek & Caple, 2012). From a wider perspective, discourse encompasses reality. Political discourse, encompasses the political reality to which news texts contribute. Discourse includes all instances of evidence, data, traditions and practices. Political discourse constitutes both written and spoken texts, legal documents, political figures and institutions, ideologies, views and beliefs. Candlin and Crichton (2011: 5) suggest defining such a broad approach to discourse as a “complex plurality” – as a system of beliefs, values, traditions, social institutions and practices. In other words, discourse or, in this case, political discourse, represents a context for understanding analysed news texts that discuss and contribute to political reality.

Following on from the broad understanding of discourse and the potential of news texts discussing political and military events to contribute to informing political reality, this thesis suggests the following definition of a “political news text”. This is a news text which presents factual information, discusses political or military events, is produced and functions within a particular socio-political context and may have a wide-ranging socio-political impact by constructing representations of socio-political realities. This definition is guided by the idea that a political news text has a potential to influence its readers’ perceptions and understanding of political and military events on the national as well as global scale. Being thematically different from other news texts such as, for example, a sports feature or financial analysis, a political news text presents and discusses issues of national or of global importance where particular social groups as well as nations are concerned.

In order to be able to select suitable political news texts from amongst a range of other available news texts this thesis specifies two criteria for their identification. These are thematic and stylistic criteria. The first criterion – *thematic relevance to political discourse* – specifies that the news text should correlate with a particular political context and report events related to a political conflict and intervention (either political, military or humanitarian). In this context, it is necessary to define “conflict” and “intervention” as these terms are widely used in this thesis. A distinct definition of conflict is suggested by Shaw (2012) who understands conflict as a form of instability:

A deteriorating political situation or crisis can take different forms – such as civil wars, inter-state wars, state collapse, corruption, bad governance, poverty, forced migration, underdevelopment, exploitative policies [...] which in the short or long term lead to violence and instability. (2012: 99)

In the military context, a conflict can be also viewed as a military activity “in which a minimum of two sovereign States are pitted against each other” (Dinstein, 2010: 206).

Similarly, intervention can take various forms. The corpus of data analysed in this thesis draws on the context of humanitarian intervention in Somalia in 2010 (see Chapter 5). This context presents a complex case as it involves political instability and a military conflict between opposing factions and groups. Shaw (2012) suggests the following definition of an intervention in which the author differentiates between humanitarian and military intervention:

Humanitarian intervention itself can take either the form of aid programmes to help victims of war or various humanitarian crises or the form of military intervention for the protection and promotion of human rights – or, in some cases, both. (2012: 89)

Both political and military conflict as well as humanitarian or military intervention can be caused by a number of political, economic, environmental and social instabilities. They can take various forms, affecting a range of social aspects and groups as well as having an economic and political impact on an international scale. Thematically, the political news texts analysed in this thesis belong to the context of conflict and intervention and, as such,

present issues and events related to such instabilities. This is the first and central criterion for identifying news texts as political news texts.

The second criterion – stylistic characteristics of “hard news” – specifies that news texts should be reporting hard news, where information is presented in the form of a narrative and is devoid of explicit evaluations. Following Keeble (2006) who discusses characteristics of news, the distinction between hard and soft news is based on the function that the news is seen to be carrying out. Soft news is aimed at entertaining the reader. These are sports pages, weather forecasts, letters to the editor etc. In contrast to soft news, hard news presents factual narrations of striking issues and events. These include reports in the context of political instability, war and conflict as well as those news texts which discuss natural disasters.

Based on the two criteria discussed above the following news texts are identified in this thesis as being political news texts: those pieces of journalistic writing thematically bound by a particular political conflict, war or crisis which have the potential to affect their readers perceptions through the representation of reported events by means of a narrative with evaluations embedded through use of language rather than being communicated explicitly.

Chapter 4 discusses additional criteria for the selection of news texts as the corpus of the data analysed in this thesis. In addition to identifying news texts as political texts, the criterion of the translation aspect is considered when selecting data for the analysis presented in this thesis.

The following section presents the challenges and constraints of the process of news production, discussing the impact of these on the practice of news translation. The following section leads to the discussion of the importance of the “translated” aspect in target news texts written, rewritten and adopted for a particular audience.

2.3. Features of a translated news text: its characteristics and challenges

The process of news translation often involves the incorporation of stylistically and structurally varied information and content borrowed from other sources. As such there exists a greater scope for manipulation of meaning in comparison to news production

involving the incorporation of information from monolingual sources. Such stylistically and structurally varied information includes, for example, the incorporation of descriptions, presentation of facts, witnesses' accounts and diaries. Content is often taken from other newspapers or news agency copy as well as from other media platforms, including TV and the Web. Such varied content is often re-appropriated – rewritten, revised, changed and adapted in the process of news translation. In addition to the problems presented by textual differences between different sources, problems arising from constraints of time and space in the translation of news sources can be identified. This section will examine intertextuality as a textual characteristic of news texts. It will also discuss the constraints of speed, space, editorial and ideological influences as the extratextual challenges of news texts production that affect translation strategies in journalistic writing.

A news text is often an intertextual product resulting from a complex process of translating, rewriting and editing, which borrows stylistically and structurally varied content from a range of sources and is produced within a particular socio-political and ideological context. Bloomaert (1999) describes this process in detail and offers the following explanation of the intertextuality of news texts:

Every text incorporates, reformulates, reinterprets or re-reads previous texts, every act of communication is grounded in semantic and pragmatic histories which are not simple and linear, but complex, multi-layered and fragmented. (1999: 5)

The intertextuality of translated news texts can be understood as a characteristic defined by the fact that every news report is produced in a particular context and socio-political environment which has its own history, economic, social and political relationships, practices and institutions. In the context of political discourse in the media, Fairclough (1998) views intertextuality as a cultural resource for news production. According to Fairclough (1998), intertextuality shows “how in the production and interpretation [...] of a text people draw upon other texts and text types which are culturally available to them” (1998: 145). The intertextuality of news texts can be viewed as a resource for constructing, embedding and making meaning through the use of language.

An example of a news text as an intertextual product can be seen in Richardson's (2007) analysis of news texts in a monolingual environment. Richardson (2007) illustrates the analysis of the intertextual features of news texts published in *the Guardian* and *the Independent*, each of which is based on the same copy of a newswire by *the Associated Press*. The analysis of the two texts indicates how a single text – a newswire from an agency – is used to produce two very similar, yet not identical, texts. Despite their similarity in content and structure the news text in *the Guardian* differs from the one in *the Independent* in both the angle of presentation and interpretation of the discussed events. Richardson's (2007) analysis illustrates how a news text acquires intertextual features by incorporating, adapting and reconstructing the borrowed content and its meaning. Richardson (2007) explains the differences between the two texts in the following terms – “two different newspapers print with different audiences, identities, political commitment and hence editorial policies” (2007: 107).

This example is drawn within a monolingual environment – within the context of one language and one culture. Based on Richardson's (2007) analysis it is possible to suggest that increasing the distance between the sociolinguistic contexts increases the potential for manipulation of meaning and misrepresentation of reported events by means of borrowing and adaption of the news content.

Intertextuality can, thus, be best defined as an integral part of every political news text. Intertextuality places the text within a context, defines it as a part of the existing discourse within which it acquires meaning and provides a link to the development of the narrative in relation to other texts. An intertextual news text can be characterised by its relationship with other texts as it draws on a range of sources by, for example, incorporating witnesses' comments, opinions and accounts of events. The use of newswires, press agency copy and texts published by other newspapers may serve as sources of news content thereby contributing to the intertextuality of news texts. In the analysis of the corpus of data and the discussion presented in Chapters 4 and 5, the intertextuality of news texts is discussed as a context for evaluating and interpreting analysed news texts.

Analysis of intertextuality plays an important part in understanding how meaning is constructed in a news text. Awareness of the origins of the story, its preceding discourse and the borrowed content plays an important role in recognising the manipulation of meaning and potential misrepresentation of the source. Intertextuality has an impact on the

process of translation and therefore great potential for the analysis of translated news texts. However, it also presents a limitation for identifying sources of translated news texts. As will be discussed at a later stage of this thesis in more detail, the intertextuality of news texts means that news content is borrowed and incorporated from more than one source. Often, such adaption of the borrowed content is not made explicit and, as a result, often difficult to identify. The analysis presented in this thesis suggests that it is necessary to recognise the intertextuality of news texts as an integral characteristic of political news texts. Furthermore it suggests identifying “potential” source news texts instead of actual source texts, as typically in translation studies.

As an integral characteristic of news texts, intertextuality creates scope for potential misrepresentation of meaning of the news sources. This is due to the fact that varied content incorporated from a range of sources is reproduced in a different editorial and socio-political context. In addition to the challenge of intertextuality faced by a linguist in the analysis of translated news, there are also other constraints of news production. These include the constraints of time, space, commercial interests and editorial tradition as well as the wider socio-political context. Such constraints influence both the process of news production and translation, having an impact on the final product. For example, constraints of time and space contribute to the particular translation strategies – domestication being a central one – adopted in the area of news translation.

From the telegraph to online news publishing, developments in news production have increased the pressure to move from source to publication at greater speed. As a constraint on the process of news production, speed demands the instantaneous transfer of information. Particularly in the context of a conflict, the pace of events increases the pressure to transfer the news at a high speed and publish as quickly as possible. The speed at which a news text is produced is not only a mark of efficient reporting but also a determiner of commercial effectiveness. In the highly competitive world of the media, news production is constrained by the need to turn a profit by not only acquiring but keeping a readership, which in turn drives advertising revenue. The speed of the news content production can be characterised by the ambition to publish first. Both commercial constraints as well as constraints of time present a challenge to the quality of the translated news content and affect the choice of translation strategies.

Space is another constraint that challenges the process of news production. Discussing temporal and spatial constraints of the production of news content, Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) explain the constraint of space as an environment of “near-instantaneity” or, in other words, immediacy of news content production that all newspapers strive for. In the context of a conflict or crisis, where the event occurs, the locale and the limited access to it may present a challenge of space. In this case, a news agency copy becomes the solution and the source of the news content. In the circumstances of spatial constraints, the use of a news agency copy becomes a fast and efficient way of reporting. Newswires which are available from news agencies in a range of European and Asian languages from English, French and Spanish to Chinese and Arabic, allow fast access to first-hand information.

A news agency copy is often a short report which provides no indication of author or context for the readership. It is a text which presents facts which have been selected as being relevant and as being of interest to newspapers around the globe. A news agency copy stands as a text that, by its very nature, requires additions, interpretations and contextualisation. This, in turn, creates significant scope for the manipulation of facts and meanings. At this stage, editorial and ideological conditions start to have an influence as they define the positioning and presentation of a news story in the existing political discourse and journalistic practice of a particular media outlet. Such editorial and ideological constraints lead to textual modifications and are realised by means of selecting and summarising news content as well as changing the angles and nuances of the story. News content of the original text is changed and adapted to suit the readership in a new context.

Among the textual modifications which a news text may undergo as a result of such constraints, the following can be distinguished: change of title and lead, cutting, elimination and addition of content, change in the structure and order of paragraphs and presentation of the information in the form of a summary (Bielsa & Bassnett, 2009: 64). Background information and explanations may also be added in order to contextualise the news content for a particular region or readership. Amongst others, Kang (2007) also names re-perspectivisation or “foregrounding of backgrounded information” (2007: 227). The author analyses a case study of news translation about North Korea and examines discursive strategies by which shifts of meaning occur in translation.

Discussing textual changes that news texts undergo, Bani (2006) concludes that such modifications can be recognised as being framed by the domesticating approach. In the context of translation, Bani emphasises that “in the field of translations, readability and speed often end up meaning simply textual and cultural domestication” (2006: 37). Such a domesticating approach is dictated by the importance of the relationship between the content of the target text and the audience rather than the target text and its source. Textually, domestication is realised by means of the seamless incorporation of the borrowed and translated content into a target news text.

In news translation, the application of domesticating translation strategies can be viewed as an attempt to produce texts relevant to the target audience and readership. Schäffner (2005) illustrates this point well in her analysis of the translated news texts published in English in *the Spiegel International*. The author points out that the aim of the news production is to construct news texts which are “fluent, transparent texts that conform to the expectations and reading habits of the English-speaking addressees” (2005: 160).

The above discussion illustrates how press translation is a process that is constrained and challenged in ways that are different from any other type of translation. As discussed in this section, due to a number of textual, spatial and temporal constraints as well as editorial and commercial challenges, translation in the news has its own peculiarities and characteristics. Amongst these the following can be named: the high degree of intertextuality of new texts, uncertainty regarding the source-target relationship and focus on the target audience in the process of news writing. Such characteristics along with the challenges of the process of news production, place translation in a position where it is seen as a means of mediation between the source and target text as well as the context – as a tool used for adapting the content of a source or multiple sources. The following section examines the role of translation in the process of news production, discussing the degree of attention that translation is given within the journalistic practice. This section also discusses the issue of the source-target relationship of news texts.

2.4. News translation as a journalistic practice

As discussed in the introductory section of this chapter, the role of the translator in the production of news is, by and large, that of a journalist (Valdeón 2008; Van Doorslaer 2010). This section discusses how translation is defined within the journalistic practice.

Standards and guidelines produced by such media enterprises as *the New York Times*, *the Guardian* and *Reuters* are examined in order to identify the role they assign to translation in the process of news production.

The first source in the discussion is “The Ethical Journalism: the New York Times Handbook of Values and Practices for the News and Editorial Departments” (2004). It discusses ethical standards as well as providing guidelines for journalists working for *the Times*. It contains no information on the role of translation in the press. Neither does it provide any guidance on how translated material should be incorporated into journalistic writing, or as to whether this should be signalled in any form in the text or its byline.

Another journalistic source of guidelines – “The Guardian Stylebook” (Marsh & Marshall, 2004) – similarly to *the Times* contains no information on how the translation of news content should be dealt with. The closest the discussion approaches the practice of translation is in the section on the identification of sources. The following claim reflects the attitude towards the identification of sources, ambiguously stating that “we should avoid misrepresenting the nature and number of sources” (Marsh & Marshall, 2004: 182).

In the context of sourcing of news texts, “The Reuters Handbook of Journalism” (2008) refers to translation in two cases – first, when discussing quotes and, second, in the translation of complex concepts and terms. Regarding the translation of quotes “The Reuters Handbook” (2008) advises the following:

When translating quotes from one language into another, we should do so in an idiomatic way rather than with pedantic literalness. Care must be taken to ensure that the tone of the translation is equivalent to the tone of the original. (2008: 4)

When discussing terminology and the translation of complex concepts, the journalist is advised to render these precisely as they appear in the original. In both cases the focus is on the degree of equivalence between the source and the target. The superficial degree of attention that translation is given in the reviewed journalistic guidelines demonstrates that translation in this area is viewed as a mediatory tool and as a part of the process of journalistic writing. This suggests that a need for translator training that incorporates

journalistic practices is needed. It also shows that an awareness of the complexity of news translation needs to be raised with those involved in the process.

Discussing the role of translation in journalism in *the New York Times Reading Room* blog, Keller (2007) having worked as a reporter with interpreters and translators explains his understanding of translation in journalism. The author suggests that the prerogative is to get the facts and the voice “right”. In his view, the role of the translator is to transfer information preserving the accuracy of the expression as well as its meaning. According to Keller (2007), the “voice” refers “not just to accuracy of detail or intent, not just to felicity of language, but to clarity, nuance and credibility”. The author claims that it is the voice and the meaning as intended by the source that is to be conveyed.

Following on from Keller’s suggestion of the role of translation in journalism, translation would be defined as a practice characterised by authenticity and equivalence in the presentation of facts, preserving the voice and the character of the original. Taking into consideration the superficial amount of attention that is paid to translation in journalistic practice, this is not necessarily how translation is approached in the news context. What actually happens in the process of news translation can be characterised as representation in context. Kang (2007) describes this process in the following way:

As the translating agent links the two situations by engaging in an act of re-situating the first context, parts of the prior discourse as manifested in the source text may be lifted from their original setting, re-perspectivised, differently foregrounded, blended with other voices and relocated in a news setting. (2007: 221)

According to Baker (2010), such changes in news content are seen as a result of the process of “reframing” or rewriting within a specific socio-cultural and socio-political frame and ideological context. Baker defines “framing” as “an active strategy that implies agency and by means of which we consciously participate in the construction of reality” (2010: 106). Such framing of narratives in news translation is key to understanding existence of difference of creation and representation of a narrative, particularly in an ideological context.

A practice of rewriting by means of which content of the source text is transformed is also observed by Schäffner (2005) in the analysis of *the Spiegel International* news articles published online. The author points out that in cases where foreign quotes are used in the target text, “these quotes are usually incorporated in the text in a coherent way without stating that they were originally made in another language” (Schäffner, 2005: 156).

Bani (2006) suggests criteria which could help a reader identify whether a news text is a translation. First, the reader would probably look for signs of the translator’s name. Yet the source is very often unsigned, especially in the case of agency reports, and according to Bani (2006), translation also comes unsigned. Moreover, the presence of a translator’s name is not an installed tradition or rule across journalistic cultures (2006: 36).

Another method that could help a reader identify whether a translation has been incorporated into the news content is through the reader’s own perception. This method is equally unreliable as it is impossible to tell whether a news text is a translation due to the various stages of rewriting and editing that it undergoes, none of which are “signalled graphically” (Bani, 2006: 36). Finally, the only reliable method of identifying a press text as that which incorporates translation is by referring to “the indication of the source text that newspapers have to signal due to legal and economic copyright issues” (2006: 36).

The idealised perception of the news translation, as presented by Keller (2007) is where authenticity is preserved and the voice, meaning and intent are conveyed. In contrast, the reality is that the translation of a news text often presents a rewriting of content which is recontextualised, adopted and modified according to the journalistic needs and conventions within which it has been created. This allows significant room for misrepresentation, which can only be perceived and identified by means of thorough linguistic analysis.

Translation in the news can be viewed as a practice of adaptation. As Bastin suggests, “adaptation may be understood as a set of translative interventions which result in a text that is not generally accepted as a translation but is nevertheless recognized as representing a source text” (2011: 3). In the news content of a source or multiple sources is adapted to the needs or interests of the target readership, conforming to the editorial requirements as well as a wider socio-political discourse. The following section discusses news translation as a practice of adaptation, examining the question of equivalence and the issues of source-target relationship in this context.

2.5. News translation as adaptation: distortions and the question of equivalence in news production

In the area of news translation, adaptation can be understood both as a process of interlingual transfer as well as a transfer between various media and sign systems. As an approach to the translation of news content, adaptation can be viewed as a practice of interlingual transfer that allows media to fit content to the needs and interests of the target readership as well as to the existing socio-political context. Adaptation of the news content for a particular context and a particular locale is linked to localisation. Discussing localisation in great detail, Pym (2010) defines it as “a set of linguistic and cultural parameters defining the context of end-use” (2010: 121).

Examining translation in the news as a part of a wider journalistic practice, Orengo (2005) views news texts as “global products which are distributed through a localisation process involving not only reception by locales of a given text, but also the simultaneous production of more versions of a same news report and the production of a new targeted text of which translation is only a part” (2005: 168). The “commercial nature” of the news is how the author explains such localisation of the news content and its adaption to a specific readership.

Emphasising the need of the newspapers to localise their content and tailor it to the needs of their readership, Bani (2006) writes that, in order for a newspaper to sell, its “reading activity must be almost effortless”, thus the need for translation strategies that “bring the text towards its reader” (2006: 44). In this context, Gutiérrez (2006) suggests that adaptation of the news content enhances its understanding. It is by means of journalistic translation, in other words, adaptation, that “new perspectives and insights can be contributed to the discourse, opening more space for understanding” (2006: 31). Journalist translators, according to Gutiérrez (2006) achieve such “opening” of the space for understanding by means of localising content of a news text, namely by adding “context to the stories for different audiences in order to balance what is local and what is global” (2006: 31).

In the context of news production Pym (2010) views adaptation as an integral part of news translation and describes it as a process of localisation in the following terms:

Consider the way international news is put together and translated. An event occurs, producing source reports; those texts are then gathered and put into the format of an international news service like Reuters; those “internationalized versions” are then localized by newspapers, radios, television networks, and websites, some with interlingual translation, all with adaptation. (Pym, 2010: 126)

Taking into consideration the complexity of content transfer from the source to the target and from one context into another, the possibility of misrepresentation is clear. The greater the distance between the source and the target news texts, the greater the potential for the manipulation of meaning and content. Throughout this thesis, it is argued that the media is an important facilitator of the public perception and understanding of the socio-political reality. As a result, where translation is performed as adaptation of the news content, the media constructs representations rather than reflecting realities. Analysing journalistic practices across cultures, Obijofor and Hanusch (2011) emphasise that the reporting of foreign news is an aid in the building of comprehension of and interaction with other states and nations. The authors point out that “the way foreign news is reported affects not only how media audiences understand the world but also how they communicate and interact with people from different parts of the world” (2011: 109). In the context of conflict, as Carruthers (2011) points out, “media obviously *matter* as critical agents of opinion-formation. How they report conflicts – how they frame what disputes are about, why they have arisen, and how they might be addressed – influences popular perceptions” (Carruthers, 2011: 43).

In a news report on events narrated within a foreign reality, translation acquires power in shaping this reality and determining the ways in which other societies and nations are perceived. Through translation meaning and function are constructed. If journalistic practice is about rewriting, editing and modifying news content, this is not made obvious within translated utterances or paragraphs. The resulting content may, therefore, be perceived as fact by the reader, rather than adapted and interpreted content. An example from the analysis of the data presented in Chapter 5 of this thesis illustrates this point. A target text, a Russian translation of a news text published in the *Business World Journal* on 15 September 2011, cites a news text which appeared in the *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest* under the title “Food Access Key as Horn of Africa Crises Worsens, Say Agencies”. When analysed in comparison to its source, the Russian news text presents the famine in Somalia as having little to do with the current political situation or the actions of

the government in the region. It depicts the famine as a natural disaster complicated by a certain degree of political instability, as the final paragraphs of the article discuss the fate of Africa.

Unlike the Russian news text, the English source text focuses on the actions of the government in the region and the relationship between the groups in the government and the rebel groups. It suggests that if the government takes control, such disasters as the famine in Somalia can be prevented. The Russian translation gives an impression that nothing can be done about the situation, since such is the result of the natural environment of the region and, as such, its fate. Most importantly, this translation gives the impression there is no legitimate political force which could take control. Such an impression is very different from the focus and the angle of the discussion in the source.

This example from the analysed data illustrates how by means of content adaptation the target text constructs a particular representation of the events which took place in Somalia. It creates an image which is different from that of the source. The fact that a reference to the source is provided in the target text creates the illusion of correspondence between the source and the target, somewhat increasing its misrepresentation of the source as a result. The potential to construct meanings and representations through the adaptation of news content raises questions regarding the importance of equivalence in news translation. This is particularly relevant to the translation of news reports where misrepresentation of the target news content can potentially contribute to the situation of political, national and ethnic misunderstanding. The following paragraphs will briefly discuss the notion of equivalence in the area of news translation suggesting what this might represent. The issue of equivalence is controversial in the area of news translation where translation is viewed as a practice subject to journalistic requirements (Bassnett 2005, Bielsa & Bassnett 2009, Conway 2010, Pym 2010).

The systemic theoretical discussion of the notion of equivalence in the area of translation studies can be traced back to the work of Nida (1964). In this he presents the concept of equivalence as one of opposition, defining such opposition as the “principles of correspondence”. Nida (1964) differentiates between formal and dynamic equivalence, providing the following understanding of the notion of formal equivalence:

Formal equivalence focuses attention on the message itself, in both form and content. In such a translation one is concerned with such correspondence as poetry to poetry, sentence to sentence, and concept to concept; [...] the message in the receptor culture is constantly compared with the message in the source culture to determine standards of accuracy and correctness. (1964: 159)

In a translation where dynamic equivalence is central:

one is not so concerned with matching the receptor-language message with the source-language message, but with the dynamic relationship [...], that the relationship between receptor and message should be substantially the same as that which existed between the original receptors and message. (Nida, 1964: 159)

In news translation, both formal and dynamic equivalence, as defined by Nida (1964), would coexist on different levels within one text. In instances, where factual information is reported, the focus would be on the message and the facts. However, in cases where background information is aimed at providing a context to the developments of a certain socio-political event, the focus in translation would be on the “dynamic relationship” between the source and the target, with “the receptor” – the reader – as the focus of the translation.

In the context of literary translation, Venuti (2008) discusses the same notions of correspondence in terms of foreignising and domesticating translation, both of which are relevant to news translation. The author uses the notion of “violence in translation” to illustrate the nature of the domesticating approach, which can be seen to be widely applied to the translation of news texts. Venuti (2008) writes that such “violence in translation” can be understood as “the reconstitution of the foreign text in accordance with values, beliefs, and representations that pre-exist in the translating language and culture” (2008: 14). As discussed earlier, Bani (2006) points out that the practice of “bringing the text to the reader” is brought about by the need to minimise the effort of reading.

Contributing to the discussion of equivalence, Chesterman (1998) derives his understanding of equivalence from the notion of similarity. He defines similarity as being centred around notions of relevance and salience – “only features that are salient or relevant should count in the attribution of measurement of similarity” (Chesterman, 1998:

16). The question which concerns the translation of political news texts is whether “two entities count as the same, within a given frame of reference and for the purpose in hand” (Chesterman, 1998: 16). Drawing on Catford’s (1965) work and his position on equivalence, Chesterman argues that it is “situational equivalence” that is “the basis for translation” (1998: 22). Essentially, context plays a defining role in what features are to be considered relevant and salient in translation. Such “situational equivalence” is the equivalence of context and rhetorical purpose.

Halliday in his work, “Towards a Theory of Good Translation” (2001), discusses the notion of what a good translation is and in this context brings into focus the notion of equivalence as “the central organizing concept” (2001: 15). However, while Halliday succeeds in defining what a good translation is, he is faced with the question of “equivalence with respect to what?”. In the translation of political news texts, it can be argued that contextual (pragmatic and semantic) equivalence rather than a domesticating approach define the level of authenticity in the transfer of information and news content. To support this claim, it is useful to refer to House (2006) and her understanding of equivalence in translation:

Translation [...] can be defined as the replacement of a text in a source language by a semantically and pragmatically equivalent text in a target language. An adequate translation is thus a pragmatically and semantically equivalent one. (2006: 345)

If pragmatic and semantic equivalence can be claimed to bring a higher level of authenticity to a news text, the question remains how this can be achieved when the writing of a news text is performed within journalistic convention, subject to certain stylistic and editorial requirements.

The theory of language analysis which allows the study of language within and between ranks is Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL), discussed in detail in Chapter 3. SFL approaches language and text analysis from the perspective of ranks and levels, facilitating the translation of texts within and between these, providing resources for achieving equivalence on different levels. SFL studies language by focusing on the notion of “linguistic choice”. It can be argued that, in the translation of news reports, representation is realised through linguistic choices. Lexical and structural choices made in the

construction of a news story through translation create certain representations of the narrated event.

Discussing political discourse, Chilton and Schäffner (2011), distinguish between quantitative and qualitative representation:

Information may be given, but be quantitatively inadequate to the needs or interests of hearers [...]. Qualitative misrepresentation is simply lying, in its most extreme manifestation, but includes various kinds of verbal evasion and denial [...], or the omission of a reference to actors. Euphemism has the cognitive effect of conceptually “blurring” or “defocusing” unwanted referents, be they objects or actions. Implicit meanings of various types also constitute a means of diverting attention from troublesome referents. (2011: 312)

In order to examine how representation is constructed, it is necessary, as Hatim and Mason (1990: 162) point out, “to study the range of lexical items actually used in relation to the range of items that could have been used”. This requires the analysis of the range of lexical and structural choices available to a translator in a particular context, in contrast to choices actually made in the process of translation of a news text. In this thesis the analysis is carried out to examine the differences in constructed meaning and representation between the content of the target and the source. Such analysis allows one to draw conclusions about the relevance of the domesticating approach, and its role in providing an accurate representation of the translated news content.

The relationship between the source and the target texts, which the notion of equivalence establishes, the questions of the freedom of the translator and the faithfulness of the target text to the original are problematic in news translation due to the complex nature of the process of news gathering, writing/translation and dissemination (Bielsa and Bassnett, 2009; Schäffner, 2005). A characteristic feature of news texts translation is the practice of focusing on the final product and its audience, rather than on the question of equivalence between the source and the target. Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) consider news translation as a practice where a translator acquires a degree of independence from the source. This recognises that news translation is different from any other type of translation due to the nature of the journalistic production and a range of constraints in this area. The authors suggest that:

The news translator, unlike the literary translator, does not owe respect and faithfulness to the source text but is able to engage in a significantly different relationship with an often unsigned piece of news, the main purpose of which is to provide information of an event in a concise and clear way. (Bielsa & Bassnett, 2009: 65)

The news translator rewrites the news using, borrowing, adapting and editing the content of the source, performing the combined role of a writer and a journalist rather than that of translator alone. In the area of news translation, some uncertainty exists regarding the identity of the news translator and the role of translation in journalistic practice. Discussing the role of news translators, Conway (2010) suggests that journalists are “the primary news translators”, who as the author claims “engage in interpretative acts of cultural translation by drawing from different sources [...] in order to describe a culture that is not that of their audience” (2010: 188). Discussing strategies of acculturation and foreignisation in news translation, Bassnett (2005) emphasises that the context of news production lacks a clear definition of translation and describes it as “the process of textual manipulation that takes place inter- and intra-lingually” (2005: 130).

As discussed in the previous sections of this chapter, translation of news texts is treated as a tool in journalistic writing. In this context, translation of news texts is carried out with little focus on the source or concern for the equivalent transfer of meaning. Instead, the focus is placed on the target text and its audience. As discussed in section 2.3, the production and translation of news texts, as a journalistic practice, is subject to a number of constraints and challenges, including spatial, temporal and editorial as well as socio-political constraints. In news translation, news texts are often rewritten in a new context and altered to adhere to the needs of the readership and to editorial requirements. Such shifts in context often lead to alteration of meaning, which can result in the misrepresentation of sources and narrated events. In such an environment, the translation of news texts carries the potential for linguistic misrepresentation and language manipulation.

This thesis argues that the question of equivalence is of relevance in news translation, where the reporting of political, social and economic issues has a significant potential for affecting the interpretation of such issues. This is particularly applicable to contexts of

conflicts and intervention where the media construct representations of important socio-political events, as well as representations of other nations, political and social groups. In the analysis of “translated” political news texts, this thesis approaches equivalence from a semantic, pragmatic and contextual perspectives, suggesting that the discussion of equivalence in the area of news translation should be in terms of the “equivalence in representation”. Such understanding of equivalence does not focus on the equivalence of individual ranks and levels, such as, for example, equivalence on the lexical level or equivalence in function (pragmatic equivalence). Rather it is the type of equivalence that can be understood as the cumulative effect of correspondence between the source and the target, created through a range of textual elements on different levels, evaluated in the context of the narrated political and military events.

2.6. Conclusions and further discussion

In this chapter, the notions of political news text and political discourse have been discussed. It has been argued that a political news text can be seen as a piece of journalistic writing defined by the existing political discourses. It has been suggested that a political news text is a text which is thematically bound to a particular political conflict, war or crisis. As discussed, linguistic choices in the creation of these texts, and representations constructed in them have the potential to affect the readers’ perceptions and understanding of the narrated events.

Thus, this chapter has established the need for further exploration of political news text translation. This chapter has further suggested that both the role of translation in the news as well as the relationship between the source and the target news text in translation needs to be reassessed. The focus of the analysis is on news texts as intertextual products. Such analysis can assist in our understanding of the differences between representations constructed in the analysed political news texts as well as of the ideological frameworks within which they are produced.

To reflect the peculiarity of the area of news translation and the complexity of the relationship of source and target, the question of equivalence has been approached from a wider perspective. “Equivalence in representation” has been suggested to account for the correspondence between the source and the target involving a range of individual ranks and levels. Viewed as a cumulative effect, such an understanding of equivalence requires

the analysis of a range of linguistic choices at different ranks and levels. As discussed above, SFL provides the resources necessary for the analysis of linguistic choices on a range of ranks and levels further discussed in the following chapters.

Chapter 3. The Theory of Systemic-Functional Linguistics in Translation Analysis

3.1 Introduction. Systemic-Functional Linguistics as a theory of language as a social semiotic system: application in the area of translation studies

Shifts in meaning, misrepresentation and manipulation of language in the process of news production are widely discussed issues within the area of critical linguistics. The ways in which language is used to alter the meaning and angle of a news text as well as the mechanisms and strategies applied in this process are examined by a number of researchers including, Fowler et. al. (1979), Menz (1989), Fowler (1991), Holland (2006), Conboy (2007), Davis (2007), Johnson and Ensslin (2007), Talbot (2007) and Richardson (2007). These authors apply critical linguistics to the analysis of language as a social semiotic system in order to examine strategies of language use and manipulation applied in the press. Discussion of bias in media reporting, the “skewing” of facts and representations in the media is not new to the area of journalistic and language research. The discussion of the research in this area informs further study of translational practices in the production of news texts related to the context of political conflicts and instabilities.

In order to be able to discuss representations constructed in the analysed news texts the theory of Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL) has been applied to the analysis of the data presented in this thesis. As a functional theory, SFL allows analysis of texts from a broad text-in-context perspective looking at them from a range of levels through the application of a range of linguistic analytical categories. SFL is based on the notions of system, function, context and choice. The following sections of this chapter present the way in which SFL evolved and how it is related to the study of language within socio-political context. Key features and categories of the theory are also discussed in this chapter and their application is illustrated in Chapter 4 and 5 of the thesis.

Section 3.1 focuses on critical linguistics as the grounds on which SFL has emerged. SFL is examined as an approach to language as a social semiotic system – as a study of language as a system of signs within the context of social practices. The study of language as a social semiotic system informs our understanding of the ways in which language is used across the press to construct ideas, inform beliefs and shape opinions. Critical linguistics as an approach to language analysis builds on the understanding of language as a resource not only for reflecting, but also for constructing meaning. This aspect is further

discussed in sections 3.2 and 3.3 in relation to newspaper discourse and the analysis of language within a specific socio-political context. Section 3.4 discusses “linguistic choice” as a central concept within SFL. It also examines the relevance of SFL to the analysis of translated news texts.

In section 3.5 and 3.6 the theory of SFL is discussed in more detail. Section 3.5 examines key features and categories of SFL. This section presents an SFL model, based on the work of Halliday (2004). In this section, following Halliday (2004), also an SFL-based model of ranks and levels of analysis and its analytical categories is illustrated as a model that may be applied to the analysis of translation in news texts in political contexts. In section 3.6, the application of SFL in translation analysis is discussed in order to inform the application of the SFL categories to the analysis of the data presented in this thesis. This includes the discussion of the research that has been previously conducted in the area of translation studies based on the application of SFL and critical discourse analysis. This research includes studies on cohesion and coherence (Blum-Kulka, 1986), discourse and lexical choice (Hatim & Mason, 1990, 1997), context and register (House, 2006), transitivity (Pérez, 2007), construction of narrative, questions of lexical choice and meaning in translation (Baker, 1992/2011) among others. This overview refers also to the limitations and potentials of the application of the SFL approach to translation studies, based on the existing applications of the theory in this domain. The discussion and analysis of the research conducted in the area of translation studies will provide the grounds for applying an SFL-based model to the analysis of translation of news texts in political discourse. The categories of the SFL theory discussed in this chapter are further applied and illustrated in Chapter 4 and 5.

3.2. Language as a social semiotic system: critical linguistics as an approach to language as a social medium

In the study of language in the media, language is approached as a tool for constructing ideas and beliefs, reinforcing or refuting ideologies and informing readers’ perceptions. As Halliday (2009: 60) writes, “language includes both the potential to mean and the act of meaning which brings that potential to life”. Language as a social semiotic system in the process of news writing provides resources for meaning construction. In translation of news texts, shifts in meaning and representation occur as a result of content transfer between languages as social semiotic systems.

The following paragraphs discuss the grounds on which SFL has developed and examine critical linguistics as an approach to language as a social semiotic system. Inquiries into language as a manifestation of social practices and discourses can be found in the works of Berger and Luckmann (1967), Halliday (1978), Fowler (1991) as well as other linguists whose research is based on the view of language as a social semiotic system. The understanding of language as a social semiotic system has been central to research in the area of critical linguistics and translation studies, and as such has been examined by Fowler et. al (1979), Menz (1989) and Richardson (2007) among others.

Research in the area of critical linguistics enquiry evolved from the interpretation of linguistic elements against the background of certain socio-political practices, events and contexts – as a study of language as a social semiotic system. In social semiotics, language is viewed as a system of signs, a product of social practices and a source for the interpretation and construction of meanings in social discourses. The study of semiotics first emerged as a doctrine of relations in the works of Peirce (1894/1998) who, as Escbach (1983) in his overview of the history of semiotics points out, is often considered as the founder of the theory of semiotics. Peirce (1894/1998) crystallises the theory of semiotics and following the tradition of philosophical thought of Plato, Aristotle and Thomism, establishes maxims of semiotics (Eschbach, 1983).

Discussing semiotics as a study of signs, Escbach (1983) suggests that it can be seen to evolve as a philosophical category of signs, which at the time of Aristotle, and later Plato and Socrates, is viewed as a system of signs, both vocal and non-vocal. This includes the study of signs and inferences in medicine and sciences. Throughout its preliminary developments, based on which Peirce (1894/1998) and Saussure (1916/1959) formulated the theory of language as a semiotic system, the study of signs is mainly interested in the vocal signs. It is in the work of Bacon (1605/1998), as Escbach (1983) points out, that the study of signs started to involve the analysis of both vocal and non-vocal forms as information and meaning transmitters. The strength of Bacon's approach to the study of language was to reaffirm the relationship between the sign and its "interpretant". Peirce (1894/1998) further explored the relationship between the sign and the one who receives, accommodates and interprets it. Discussing the notion of "semiosis" as central to the study of language as a social semiotic system, Peirce (1894/1998) points to the "cooperation" of the three – the sign, the object and the interpretant.

Developing within the study of language as a general theory, mainly in the work of Peirce (1894/1998), semiotics started to be seen from a new perspective as presented by Saussure (1916/1959) and later in the works of Kress (1976; 2010) and Hodge (1979). In this regard Saussure (1916/1959) defines semiotics as “a science which studies the role of signs as part of social life”. The author also introduces a new term “semiology”, attributing it an important role within linguistics and the study of language. Discussing the developments of semiotics, McDonald (2012) points out that the central shift in Saussure’s (1916/1959) semiology lies in the understanding and approach to language as no longer merely “reflecting”, but now “constituting” meaning.

Building on Saussure’s (1916/1959) contribution to the study of language as a system “constituting” meaning, Hjelmslev (1943/1953/1961) develops a theory of “glossematics”. This views language as a system constituted of relationships rather than structurally consisting of elements and components. Hjelmslev’s (1943/1953/1961) work is of relevance to the developments in understanding of language as a social semiotic system or as a system of relations within language. Approaching language as a system, “glossematics” is also of relevance to the development of the theory of SFL which approaches languages as a system organised by the function of its elements.

Developing SFL, Halliday (1978; 1994) points out that the SFL theory sprung from the work of Firth (1956/1968), Hjelmslev (1943/1953/1961) and the Prague school. However, in discussing the relationship between the SFL theory and Hjelmslev’s (1943/1953/1961) “glossematics”, Bache (2010) questions the direct relationship between the two theories. Bache (2010) does though acknowledge the prominent influence that the work of Hjelmslev (1943/1953/1961) had on the development of SFL and the study of language as a social semiotic.

Following the development of the study of language as a social semiotic system and the inclusion of a functional approach to language, Halliday (1978) further develops the understanding of language as a social semiotic system and formulates a theory of systemic functional linguistics. As a social semiotic system language is a system of meaning. Halliday (1978) points out that unlike other semiotic systems, language is a semogenic system, which means that language is not only capable of expressing meaning, but also creating meaning, which Halliday (1978) defines as “meaning potential”.

The author provides an example of language as a semogenic system as opposed to other semiotic systems or systems of meaning. If we were to compare a system of traffic signals and language, the system of traffic signals, unlike language, has fixed meaning, and thus cannot carry any potential meaning creations (Halliday, 1978). From a socio-semiotic perspective, an adequate analysis of language and its effects can be performed if language is approached as a social realisation of existing social relations and discourses. Halliday (1978) suggests the following understanding of language as a social semiotic system:

A “sociosemiotic” perspective implies an interpretation of the shifts, the irregularities, the disharmonies and the tensions that characterize human interaction and social processes. It attempts to explain the semiotic of the social structure, in its aspects both of persistence and of change, including the semantics of social class, of the power system, of hierarchy and of social conflict. It attempts also to explain the linguistics processes whereby the members construct the social semiotic, whereby social reality is shaped, constrained and modified – processes which, far from tending towards an ideal construction, admit and even institutionalize myopia, prejudice and misunderstanding. (Halliday, 1978: 126)

According to Halliday’s (1978) interpretation of language as a social semiotic system, language is bound to construct and define social reality. It is also through language that misunderstanding and prejudice can be reinforced. Thus, language may be viewed not as a static body of linguistic elements but as a functional entity, which is constituted through functions and is organised systemically. In his discussion of language, Halliday (1978) approaches the study of language as a social entity with both institutional and as a system-like features. As an institution, language in its two realisations – dialect and register – encodes and transmits information. It conveys information about the speaker and information about the situation. As a system, language possesses two characteristics. First, it is stratified, and, second, it is organised functionally. As a stratified system, language encodes meaning on three levels – that of semantics, lexicogrammar and phonology. As a functional system, it is realised by a set of three functional components: ideational (experiential and logical), interpersonal and textual functions. As a functional system language carries meaning potential. It is no longer what language does and how it creates meaning, but as Halliday (1978) claims, it is the potential of what language can do and the meaning which it can project. Since the focus is on what language can do and what

meanings it can create, the interest is no longer solely in its organisation, but in its organisation in relation to its functions (Halliday, 1978). As a result, construction of meaning becomes central to the understanding and analysis of language as a functional system.

“Meaning potential” is intrinsically dependant on the choices which language presents to its speaker or, in the case of the research presented in this thesis, to a journalist-translator. The discussion of linguistic choice is central to the analysis of news texts and their translation as it allows for the examination of textual data from the perspective of linguistic choices made by journalist-translators in specific socio-political contexts. According to Van Doorslaer (2010: 11), “journalist-translator” is the main actor of this process of meaning making in social contexts.

At this stage of the discussion it is necessary to define the notion of choice. As Halliday (1978) writes, it is not the choice between “cat” and “dog”, but rather between “cat” and “mog” (1978: 63). In other words, the choice is paradigmatic, as the two variants differ in the level of expressiveness. Linguistic choice in the analysis of translational practices includes those linguistic variants which hold paradigmatic relations and are contextually adequate. Such linguistic variants include not only lexical choices, but choices of both lexis and grammar.

Basing the argument on Halliday’s (1978) interpretation of language as a functional semiotic system, it is possible to suggest that choices made in the translation of news texts are defined by the immediate linguistic as well as wider socio-political context. Section 3.4 will return to the discussion of linguistic choice within the theory of SFL, turning to the notion of choice in functional terms in translation with reference to concepts of network and paradigmatic system. The potential for the construction of bias, misleading interpretation of facts and misrepresentation is created in the media in relation to the use of specific linguistic choices. The manipulation of meaning through language in the media is analysed within critical linguistics from the perspective of language as a social semiotic system. The study of meaning and representation constructed by means of language use and linguistic choices is conducted by means of critical linguistics analysis. The following section will discuss the study of language in the press as a manifestation of existing socio-political discourses, social practices and relationships.

3.3. Critical linguistics approach in the analysis of newspaper discourse

The tradition of linguistic enquiry into newspaper discourse and analysis of the relationship between language and media – between representation, ideology and language – was developed by the so-called “East-Anglian” cohort of linguists and researchers in the late 1970s’. Fowler, Hodge, Kress and Trew (1979), all of whom belong to this group, devoted their work to the study of language as a social semiotic system. In their understanding of language as a social semiotic system, the language is considered both as a source and a product of any existing social discourse and its environment.

As a product of the social environment, language can be seen to reflect a social system, its ideology and values. In turn, as a source, language has the potential to influence audiences and their perceptions. In newspaper discourse, this is achieved through particular choices of linguistic expression. In his discussion of language in newspaper discourse as a facilitator in the construction of social reality, Hodge (1979) emphasises that the language used in the process of news production is largely manipulated and is used to meet journalistic needs and purposes. As the author points out, newspapers “select, reorder, transform, distort, and suppress, so that the final product is recognizably that paper and not another, whatever happened on the day in question” (Hodge, 1979: 157).

As can be seen from Hodge’s (1979) argument, in news production language is used as tool for specific purposes that performs a set agenda established prior to the actual writing of a news text. To demonstrate how reality is constructed in news discourse, Hodge (1979) provides a comparative analysis of the content of two British newspapers, *The Sun* and *The Times*. Comparing the ratio of foreign news to home news content, the author illustrates how the world is constructed in both newspapers. In *The Sun*, when compared to *The Times*, the world is represented as being smaller and less complex as it holds fewer foreign items and discusses fewer foreign issues (Hodge, 1979: 168).

Examining language manipulation and newspaper discourse, Trew (1979) discusses how the choice of lexical and structural categories informs potential representations of the world; how it suggests a certain perception of events, and mainly defines the way in which an image of a social group is constructed (1979: 106). Trew (1979) analyses news texts from the perspective of their lexico-grammatical organisation and the relationship between processes and participants in news texts. To illustrate the potential of language to construct

certain perceptions, Trew (1979) suggests that, for example, in a news text where processes are represented without attributing these to certain participants, agency is eliminated. This is illustrated through an example of an article published in *The Times* which narrates the events of a riot. The article refers to the actions of the police without explicitly stating the actor – “the police”. This shifts the agency away from “the police” as a participant in the narrative and emphasises other actors involved in the riot (Trew, 1979: 105).

Approaching language as a means by which ideology in its broad understanding – views, values, beliefs perceptions, discursive practices, traditions and institutions – is reflected and constructed, the authors of *Language and Control* (1979) discuss the advances in the theory of SFL. As will be discussed in the following sections of this and the next chapter, SFL offers a linguistic approach to the analysis of language on a range of ranks and levels, where language is understood as a system in which linguistic elements perform specific functions. It makes it possible to conduct a detailed analysis of the lexico-grammatical features of a text in the context in which the text is produced.

Following the critical linguistics tradition of studying meaning manipulation and the construction of representations through the use of language in the press, Menz (1989) illustrates how representations of the events, which took place in Austria in 1984 and evolved around environmental issues, were constructed by means of particular linguistic choices. The author points to the fact that representations are constructed through the incorporation of myths, clichés and cultural “triggers” into the newspaper discourse. These are the first advances in the study of language and its potential for constructing meaning and representations in the news. Later, Richardson (2007) applies a critical linguistics approach in order to analyse the potential of linguistic choice to construct meanings in the news. The author adds to this field of analysis by pointing to the semantic changes which result from syntactic reorganisation of news texts. Richardson (2007) also examines the ways in which that structural rearrangement of content in a news text, such as the reorganisation of paragraphs, omissions and additions, lead to shifts in meaning. Richardson (2007), however, does not carry out his analysis with regard to translation practices or shifts resulting from source-target transfer in a news text. His analysis is concerned with the shifts that occur in a monolingual environment, particularly as a result of content transfer from a source. Richardson assesses such shifts against the source, in his case an agency copy, which in the process gets rewritten, republished and pitched to a

particular audience. However, Richardson's (2007) analysis is relevant to the study of translated news texts as slight omissions in the content of the target news texts often lead to the construction of representations which are different to that of their sources. This will be illustrated in Chapter 5 in the analysis of the data presented in this thesis.

Application of critical linguistics to the study of news discourse and meaning manipulation in the media provides illustration of strategies and means by which language represents events and constructs meanings. As a social semiotic system, language enacts social relationships and is constructed within a social context. Building on the tools and methods of critical linguistics, SFL enables the analysis of language as a social semiotic system to examine and interpret meanings in social contexts. According to Halliday (2009: 60), social context can be seen as a "material mode of being" – as a precondition for meaning activation. The application of the SFL model relates the textual elements, choices and characteristics of a news text to an existing external discourse and produces an understanding of a news text as an instance of realisation of social and political relations and contexts. Linguistic choices are realised in the environment of a specific context.

The notion of linguistic choice is further presented and discussed in the following section as a central category of SFL analysis. The discussion follows Halliday's (2004) model of SFL and examines the ways in which linguistic choices relate to representation and construction of meanings in the translation of news texts.

3.4. Linguistic choice: paradigmatic relations and meaning as a system network

The notion of linguistic choice is central to translation studies and is also a crucial category of SFL. Decisions made by a translator in the process of translation regarding lexical and syntactic choices – whether depending on the function of the target text, the text type or the relationship which the translator chooses to establish between the source and the target text – define the final product. As a result, a translated news text is a realisation of the meaning potential of language constituted in the choices made by a journalist-translator. Viewing text as a product of a sequence of certain choices, Halliday (2004) defines text in terms of a system and suggests the following:

A text is the product of ongoing selection in a very large network of systems – a system network. Systemic theory gets its name from the fact that grammar of a language is represented in the form of system networks, not as an inventory of structures. Of course, structure is an essential part of the description; but it is interpreted as the outward form taken by systemic choices, not as the defining characteristic of language. A language is a resource for making meaning, and meaning resides in systemic patterns of choice. (Halliday, 2004: 23)

A characteristic feature of Halliday's (2004) understanding of linguistic choices in language is its relation to the concept of system. In his earlier work, Halliday (1979) suggests that, for example, "any choice made in transitivity has a significant effect on other choices within the transitivity systems, but has very little effect on choices within the mood or theme systems" (Halliday, 1979: 113).

Discussing language as a system of choices, Halliday (1985) coins the term "system network". He points out that it "represents a language, or any part of language, as a resource for making meaning by choosing" (Halliday, 1985: xxvii). It is possible to suggest that it can be understood as a system – a paradigm – of linguistic choices. A paradigm of a linguistic item represents all those linguistic options and variants that a linguistic item can have. Within systemic functional linguistics, Halliday (2009) explains paradigmatic relations as relations between linguistic elements within a system in the following terms:

Paradigmatic relations are those between an element and what could have occurred in place of it (but did not), like positive / negative ("yes / no"), first / second / third person ("me / you / him, her, it"). (Halliday, 2009: 63)

The notion of paradigmatic relations can be found in the work of Saussure (1916/1959) and Hjelmslev (1943/1953/1961) and is not new to Halliday's (2009) theory. In his analysis of possible links between "glossematics" and SFL, Bache (2010) suggest a more inclusive definition of paradigmatic relations, indicating that they can be understood in the following way:

The elements x and y are in a textual relation if both are selected, or can be selected, but they are in a paradigmatic relation if the choice of one excludes the choice of the other. (2010: 2568)

Thompson (2004) further attempts to explain “linguistic choice” by setting out two sets or two types of choices. These are choices in meaning and choices in wording, or in other words choices in meaning and choices in function and form. The author suggests the following:

Functional grammar sets out to investigate what the range of relevant choices are, both in the kinds of meanings that we might want to express (or functions that we might want to perform) and in the kinds of wordings that we can use to express these meanings; and to match these two sets of choices. (Thompson, 2004: 8)

Thompson (2004: 9) rightly points out that, “the use of the term “choice” does not necessarily imply a conscious process of selection by the speaker: what we aim to uncover through a functional analysis are the reasons why the speaker produces a particular wording rather than any other in a particular context (in some ways, it would almost be true to talk of the wording choosing the speaker)”. For Thompson (2004), it is important that, through the analysis of linguistic choices in a text it is possible to identify reasons for which these choices have been made. For the purposes of the research presented in this thesis, the focus is on the evaluation of the linguistic choices and their potential in constructing representations.

As has been pointed out in the discussion of language as a social semiotic system in the previous section, Halliday (1978) suggests that there are certain limitations in the variation of linguistic choices. Thus, certain criteria for evaluating the adequacy of choices in a text need to be established prior to undertaking analysis. Supporting Halliday’s (1978) call for establishing criteria for linguistic choices, Gregory (2002: 16) writes that “the concepts of stratum and rank within the “codal” resources, and the concepts of dialect configuration and register potential in the area of linguistic usage locate and restrict what may be chosen.”

In the environment of the production and translation of news texts, there exists a commonly held belief that news can be objective and impartial, and that impartiality can be achieved through the elimination of such semantically charged words as “terrorist”, “rebel”, “peace process” etc. As Holland (2013) suggests, in the area of news text

production, such words are often deemed as potential triggers of existing discourses and hidden meanings. Holland (2013) seems to argue that journalists have learned that such choice of lexis can trigger certain associations and cause the construction of particular meanings in a news text. However, as Holland (2013) rightly points out, in the area of news production, there remains a gap between what journalists and linguists understand as the impartial representation of reality. Unlike journalists, linguists talk about “discursively constructed representations” rather than objectivity or impartiality in the production of news (Holland, 2013: 342). For the purposes of linguistic analysis of the news, the notion of linguistic choice suggests that objectivity is not determined solely by decisions of whether to use words such as “rebel” and “terrorist” in a news text. Choices in grammatical and semantic structures – lexicogrammar in Systemic-Functional theory – also allow the linguists to assess the representation constructed in the translation of a news text.

3.5. Systemic-Functional Linguistics: key ideas, features and components

As discussed, the theory of SFL, which approaches language as a social semiotic system – as a source and product of social practices – allows an adequate analysis of language in the area of news translation. Particularly within news texts which discuss issues of intervention and political or social upheaval, language cannot be analysed other than as a means of reflecting and constructing social reality. In the area of translation studies the application of the theory of SFL is wide yet rather fragmented. Its potential for applicability to translation studies relates to the ability of the model to present analysis of the lexicogrammatical elements in a text in relation to other elements and features of higher ranks – register, coherence and cohesion – all against the background of context and wider socio-political discourse.

Discussing the interrelation between SFL and the area of translation studies, Matthiessen (2009: 41) rightly points out that the link between the theory of SFL and its applications in the area of translation studies is not new. Indeed, translation studies is widely based on a range of interpretations and applications of the theory. This can be seen from the body of relevant research in the work of House (2006), Munday (2004), Pérez (2007) and others. This includes studies in the analysis of shifts of transitivity, context and register, analysis of narrative construction, study of cohesion and coherence. These will each be further discussed in section 3.6 of this chapter.

Prior to assessing the research regarding translation studies and the ways in which SFL has been applied in this area, it is necessary, first, to take a closer look at the theory itself, its key features and components. The following paragraphs of this section will present the main components and elements of Systemic-Functional theory, which constitute the model introduced in the works of Halliday (1978, 2004).

As discussed in the previous section, the model of SFL is based on the approach to language as a system of signs produced in a social context: as a social semiotic system. As its name suggests, SFL is a theory of functionalism in language. As discussed earlier, Bache (2010) points out that certain themes in Hallidayan SFL reflect Hjelmslev's (1943/1953/1961) understanding of and approach to language. Assessing the impact of Hjelmslev's (1943/1953/1961) theory of "glossematics" and its possible influences on the development of the Hallidayan approach, Bache (2010) points to the following shared notions and elements:

- Paradigmatic/systemic relations
- Function and functionalism
- Text
- Stratification
- The concept of construal
- Descriptive goals in analysis. (Bache, 2010)

Halliday (1978; 1994) himself suggests throughout his work that he has adopted the "general perspective" on language, which can be found in Hjelmslev (1943/1953/1961). As will be discussed in the following paragraphs of this section, the notions of function, text, social construal (or construct), stratification and system form the basis of the Hallidayan model of SFL.

The development of early functional linguistics, as outlined by Steiner (2005), began with the work of anthropologist Malinowski (1935). This in turn influenced the works of Firth (1956/1968) and played a fundamental role in the development of the functional approach as it evolved in the works of Halliday (1985, 2004). In 1985, Halliday published an *Introduction to Functional Grammar*, in which he presented a notion of systemic grammar as based on the works of Firth (1956/1968), Hjelmslev (1943/1953/1961) and the Prague

School. In his work, Halliday approaches language as a system and describes grammar as “the central processing unit of language” (1985: xxxv). It is through grammar that linguistic choices are realised and meaning is conveyed. Publications that predate the first edition of Halliday’s (1985) systemic functional grammar (Halliday, 1961; 1970; 1973; 1978) widely discuss language, its structure and functions by means of viewing language as a social semiotic system and relating the analysis of language to the wider communicative context. In Halliday’s (2004) later work, grammar remains central to the discussion of language and its potential in the construction of meaning, but now its analysis is merged with lexis and is presented as one concept – lexicogrammar (Halliday, 2004).

Throughout his work on language as a social semiotic system and in his functional analysis of language, Halliday’s (2004) theoretical discussion is based on three central concepts. These are the concepts of system, function and context. As a system, language is constituted through its elements and components which are interrelated and interdependent, functioning on a number of ranks and levels. The systemic approach views language as a system where lexis and grammar – lexicogrammar – function to allow a language user to make linguistic choices within a specific communicative situation and context and for a specific purpose.

According to the theory of SFL, language is also functional. It carries out the following three core functions: the function of organising the language users’ experience of the world; the function of enacting social relationships and the function of creating relevance to the context of situation (Halliday, 2004: 61).

As a system, which performs these three main functions, language is context-dependant, whereby, lexico-grammatical and structural choices are determined by the context and the rhetorical purpose of the discourse in question. Approaching language as a system, SFL requires the analysis of the linguistic elements in a text as a system. Analysis of lexicogrammatical features without the linking of these to context will result in an incomplete understanding of how language contributes to the construction of meaning in a social domain. Viewing language as a system, which is constituted through its functions and realised in context, Halliday (2001) defines the three named functions as metafunctions by means of which the linguistic system is organised. Halliday (2001) suggests the following definition of “metafunction”:

Metafunction is the organization of the content strata (lexicogrammar and semantics) in functional components: ideational, interpersonal and textual – roughly, the parts of the system that have to do with construing human experience, enacting social relationships, and creating discourse. (2001: 15)

The three metafunctions of language – ideational, interpersonal and textual – are closely interrelated and interdependent. Through the ideational and interpersonal metafunctions, linguistic choices are realised. Bache (2010) suggests that the textual metafunction seems to be of a different kind. The textual metafunction has more to do with the organisation of textual elements, which seems to suggest that it is of greater importance in terms of textual analysis. However, as Bache (2010) points out Halliday (2001) insists on the equal importance of all the three metafunctions and their interdependence.

In a text, the three metafunctions are mapped, as Halliday (2004) suggests, in the following way. The experiential metafunction corresponds to the construction of a model of experience and is realised by means of a clause as representation. Through the interpersonal metafunction enactment of social relationships is actualised. The textual metafunction is established by means of creating contextual relevance and is realised through the clause as a message. Through the logical metafunction (which is rarely discussed and is viewed as an overarching abstract concept which unites all three metafunctions) language can be analysed as constructing social reality. Analysing the relationship between the three metafunctions of language, Halliday (2009) presents it as existing between the components of language which constitute the process of meaning construction:

Having evolved simultaneously as the means of making sense of our experience (construing “reality”) and of getting along with each other (enacting our social relationships), language manages these as complementary modes of meaning (ideational, interpersonal) – along with a third functional component (the textual) which maps these on each other and on to the context in which meanings are being exchanged. (2009: 62)

As Halliday (2009) argues, these functional components of language all contribute to the overall interpretation of meaning. This is due to the fact that they can function only simultaneously and in relation to each other. As Halliday (1989) writes, in the analysis of language, “we look at the whole thing simultaneously from a number of different angles, each perspective contributing towards the total interpretation”, which as the author states is the very nature of the functional approach (1989: 23).

In terms of the application of the functional approach to the study and analysis of language, as Halliday (1985) states, the approach “leans towards the applied rather than the pure, the rhetorical rather than the logical, the actual rather than the formal, the text rather than the sentence” (1985: xxviii). The notion of text, as it is defined in “Text as Semantic Choice in Social Contexts” (1977), presupposes “a continuous process of semantic choice”, where text is viewed as a system of linguistic choices (1977: 48). As has been discussed, the notion of choice in the SFL theory is central to the discussion of meaning construction in the analysis of news texts presented in this thesis. Linguistic choices are closely related to and dependant on the notions of text and context.

Halliday and Hasan (1989) published a collaborative work where they suggest approaching context as an environment for the construction and unfolding of meaning in a text. Context in Hallidayan terms does not stand solely as an immediate linguistic environment of the elements and components of language, but includes three strands of meaning – field, tenor and mode. These three components of meaning constitute the register of a text and correspond respectively to what is being communicated, by whom, to whom and in what form that communication is realised. The three strands of meaning are realised in the register of a text and correspond to the three metafunctions, discussed earlier, in the following way. As Halliday (1989) suggests, “the field is expressed through the experiential function in the semantics”, “the tenor is expressed through the interpersonal function”, and “the mode is expressed through the textual function in the semantics” (1989: 25).

Working collaboratively with Halliday, examining the notion of context and its role in text interpretation within the model of SFL, Hasan (2009) views context as central to text analysis. Discussing the importance of the integration of context into text analysis where tenor, mode and field are viewed as the three “contextual vectors” of discourse, Hasan

(2009) points out that such integration “is critical to the conceptualization of functionality in language” (2009: 174).

Discussing the notion of context and its role within the model of SFL, Butler (2003: 155) emphasises the far-reaching and broad nature of context. Such context includes immediate contextual features and textual structure as well as discursive practices of text production. Emphasising the sociocultural dimension of SFL and the role of context, Butler (2003) argues that as the theory of SFL has developed over the years the “sociocultural dimension became, if anything, more prominent, and is deeply entrenched in current Systemic Functional Linguistics” (2003: 154).

Thus, SFL as a tool for textual analysis in translation incorporates the analysis of context. In its attention to context, SFL forms a basis for the more widely applied tool in critical linguistics – critical discourse analysis (CDA). CDA is applied not only in translation analysis, but across a range of discourses, including political discourse. In CDA, linguistic analysis is based on the notion of context, allowing for the analysis of texts and textual features against the background of wider discursive practices and social contexts. In terms of the contextual and sociocultural dimension of texts, CDA can be understood as the linguistic analysis which links modes of linguistic expression with the analytical interpretation of their contextual background and broader socio-discursive practices.

This emphasis on the sociocultural dimension of context and functionality of language is shared by the model of SFL. In the analysis of translated news texts, SFL provides a linguist with a more advanced set of linguistic tools, which, as with CDA, are dependant on the analysis of context. Like CDA, SFL provides a linguist with results, which can be further interpreted and evaluated. Young and Fitzgerald (2006) describe SFL and CDA as the two perspectives of the approach to text analysis that are intrinsically complementary, but have different objectives. As the authors write, SFL provides a “description of discourse”, whilst CDA is aimed at “explanation and interpretation of a discourse in terms of the relationships between language, power and ideology” (Young & Fitzgerald, 2006: 23). The application of the elements of SFL to the analysis of translated news texts in the area of political discourse allows for a detailed analysis of lexical, semantic and textual features. In addition, the application of CDA to the analysis of such texts contributes to the interpretation of these features against their contextual background – their socio-cultural and socio-political discourses.

SFL provides a set of linguistic tools by means of which linguistic features can be examined and analysed so as to provide a linguist with an adequate interpretation of a linguistic expression alongside an understanding of the use of such features. Among such linguistic features Halliday (2004) discusses the following in close detail: transitivity, mood/modality, theme/rheme patterns and cohesive features which are systemically related. The following paragraphs present an overview of Halliday's (2004) model of SFL and its key elements. This overview is based on Halliday's (2004) *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. In this third edition of Systemic-Functional Linguistics, or functional grammar, according to Halliday (2004), the clause is the central notion around which all the elements of the system are grouped and in relation to which they are discussed.

Halliday (2004) presents his description and discussion of functional grammar in two stages. In the first half of his work, elements of SFL are analysed at the level of clause. The second half examines those linguistic categories which constitute ranks and levels above, below and beyond the clause. Ranks and levels below the clause are constituted by such groups and phrases as nominal, verbal, adverbial and others. Above the clause, clause complexes are analysed. Around the clause, cohesion and coherence are discussed. Beyond the clause, metaphorical modes of expression are examined including lexicogrammar, semantics and modality. The analysis of the clause is approached from three perspectives – as a message, as an exchange and as a representation determined by the three metafunctions discussed earlier in this section – ideational, interpersonal and textual. On the level of analytical categories, analysis of transitivity includes analysis of participants, processes and circumstances, corresponding to ideational (experiential) metafunction. Mood/modality actualises interpersonal metafunction and is expressed by means of modal auxiliaries and adverbs. Textual metafunction is realised by means of theme/rheme patterning, structures of cohesion and coherence, sequencing of paragraphs and the use of references and conjunctions.

Relationships between the linguistic features of a text, its structuring and function as well as context and the broader discourse can be schematically represented as the relation of different ranks and levels of grammar, text structure and function. Table 1 illustrates the ranks and levels which constitute the categories by means of which the textual analysis of translated texts may be conducted.

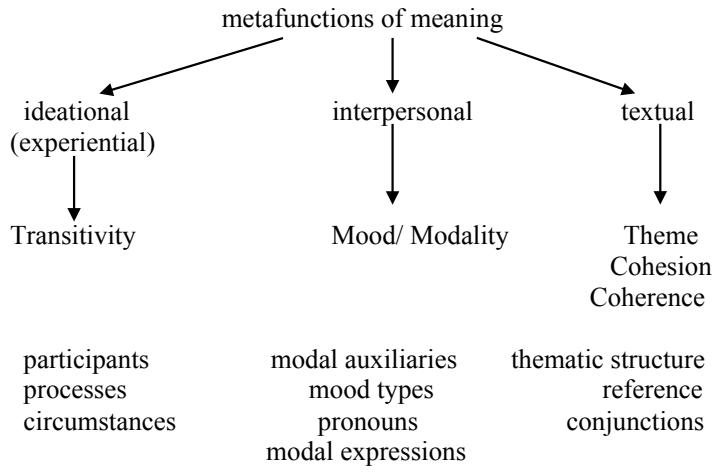
Context and text	context social practices broad socio-political discourse	Interpretation and Evaluation
	discursive practices: • translation (source/target) • accessibility (user/audience)	
	intertextuality (internal and external)	
Function	 <pre> graph TD MM[metafunctions of meaning] --> Ide[ideational experiential] MM --> Inter[interpersonal] MM --> Text[textual] Ide --> Trans[Transitivity] Inter --> Mood[Mood/ Modality] Text --> Th[Theme Cohesion Coherence] Trans --> Participants[participants processes circumstances] Mood --> Aux[modal auxiliaries mood types pronouns modal expressions] Th --> Thematic[thematic structure reference conjunctions] </pre>	
Textual Realisation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> participants processes circumstances <ul style="list-style-type: none"> modal auxiliaries mood types pronouns modal expressions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> thematic structure reference conjunctions 	

Table 1. SFL-based model of ranks and levels of analysis and analytical categories
(following Halliday, 2004)

To translate this SFL model outside of the monolingual text production and analysis would mean that the relationship of different ranks and levels of text as well as a broader context and socio-political discourse of translated news texts can be examined. Suggesting a potential resource for translators within the ranks examined by the theory of SFL, Steiner suggests that now “the translator is freed to shift between ranks, levels and metafunctions when searching for translational equivalents” (2005: 488). SFL enables both the assessment of the context and broader discourse within which a news text is placed and the analysis of the textual elements of that context as a systemic representation of language in that context. Bringing the notions of system, choice and context together, the model of SFL is empirically suitable for the analysis of translational practices in news texts in political contexts. Application of SFL meets the need to explore language of the news and translation practices in a particular socio-political context where language is both a realisation of social practices and of relationships – an agent which reinforces practices and relationships in social and political discourse. Through SFL translation practices in the production of news texts can be examined from the perspective of language as a social

semiotic system. The following chapters further examine the application of the SFL categories to the analysis of news texts in translation and suggest a methodology based on the analytical categories of SFL. In the following paragraphs the ways in which the Hallidayan SFL model has been applied and adapted to translation analysis are examined. This will involve discussion of the work of those linguists who have applied the SFL-based approach to the analysis of translated texts. It will also serve to examine the relevance of the approach to the analysis of news text translations.

3.6. Application of SFL in translation analysis: theoretical considerations

This section is aimed at examining the applications of the SFL model and its categories in the area of translation studies. This will be done in order to provide information about the application of the SFL categories to the analysis of translated news texts presented in this thesis. It will also illustrate the fragmented nature of the application of SFL to translation analysis, highlighting both the potential that existing research in this area has to offer and the limitations that it has. The first category of analysis of particular relevance to this research is that of the lexical choice. The first study to be discussed in relation to this is that of Mason (2010). It focuses on the notions of discourse and the relationship between translation and ideology, where ideology is examined as embedded in the linguistic choices, content and structure of a translated text. In understanding how this category is related to the work in this thesis, it is useful to explain the study Mason (2010) has conducted. The texts analysed in this study are taken from an edition of the *UNESCO Courier* published in April 1990. These are parallel texts as they carry the same information targeted at speakers from Western and South American cultural backgrounds. To illustrate how certain understanding is embedded into a text by means of lexical choices, Mason (2010) writes that by choosing to translate the Spanish “sabios” into English “diviners” instead of its possible alternative “wise men” (which is its denotative meaning), the translator constructs a concept devoid of a form of South American understanding of wisdom. By means of such a lexical choice as an example, it is possible for a text to be tailored to suit the perception and understanding of a Western audience. As a result, “sabios” are represented as men of divinity and some extraordinary almost magical powers rather than men of knowledge and experience.

Mason’s analysis focuses on cohesion as well as lexical choice, or, as it is termed by Halliday and Hasan (1976), “a chain of collocation cohesion”. In a sample, which can be

identified as a case study of a Spanish text and its English translation, Mason (2010) demonstrates how the construction of meaning and reality occurs by means of a series of lexical choices made in the process of translation: “prolongados esfuerzos” (prolonged efforts) translated as “obstinate determination”, “enfrentamientos” (confrontations) – as “war”, “antiguos mexicanos” (ancient Mexicans) – as “Indians” and “encuentros” (encounters) – as “clash of cultures” (2010: 87). Such lexical choices skew the meaning of the original text by making choices which fit into the discourse of the Western culture and its understanding of other cultures and contexts. Mason (2010) defines it as embedding ideology into the textual material, content and structure. In order to identify ideology constructed in the translated text, Mason (2010) does not only focus on individual linguistic choices, but rather analyses these conjointly by examining themes alongside choices of lexis and grammar.

It is important to note that ideology is viewed here in its broad understanding. Mason (2010) recognises ideology “not in the commonly used sense of a political doctrine but rather as the set of beliefs and values which inform an individual’s or institution’s view of the world and assist their interpretation of events, facts and other aspects of experience” (2010: 86). Such a broad understanding is also relevant to the analysis of news texts where ideology is comprised of a vast array of beliefs, values and practices as well as existing social discourses. The analysis of news translation presented in this thesis follows Mason’s (2010) understanding of ideology, focusing on the meaning constructed by lexical choices throughout each analysed news text. In the analysis presented in this thesis, the focus is specifically on choices of participants, processes, circumstance and modality – in other words lexicogrammar rather than on a more general notion of lexical choices.

Another key feature adapted for use of categories in the analysis of news texts is the idea that thematic choices contribute to the construction of an ideology. Mason (2010) provides an example of meaning construction through text structure in the English translation of a Spanish text. According to Mason (2010), the choice of English “efforts” and “memory” as the two recurring themes “esfuerzos” and “memoria” in the Spanish text relay a certain world-view and ideology of the text – “destiny as personal commitment rather than passive observation” (2010: 90). Mason’s (2010) thematic analysis is based on the distinction of theme and rheme. Importantly, the author points out that the “theme/rheme arrangement” in Spanish and English will be dependent on both the word order and textual norms of

Spanish and English. As a result, “one cannot be prescriptive about the translator’s choices in this respect” (Mason, 2010: 90).

Building on his analysis of the translation of the edition of the *UNESCO Courier*, Mason (2010) emphasises that examination of individual choices made in translations (both in lexis and structure) “may provide evidence of underlying ideologies” (2010: 92). The analysis of news texts undertaken in this thesis takes thematic choices to be contributing to the ideology of representation of the events which the analysed news texts present and discuss. In his analysis, Mason (2010) adopts an approach traditional to the Prague School, namely the analysis of theme and rheme where there is a distinction between theme as a topic and rheme as a comment. Halliday’s (2004) interpretation of theme as applied to the analysis of the data in this thesis builds on the work of the Prague School. His focus is on “the Theme” as a label for a function of the clause.

The SFL category of theme – this being an element found in the initial position of a clause – carries the message of the clause. In translation analysis, in addition to thematic arrangement of clauses, the markedness of thematic elements is of significance. What is marked in one language can be translated as unmarked by preserving the syntax of a clause common to that language – for example, the place adjunct in German. The application of this thematic analysis is discussed in more detail, along with illustrations, in Chapter 4.

The following paragraphs discuss the limitations of the Hallidayan application of theme and thematic structure analysis. In the process it examines how Williams (2009) and Baker (2011) among others have dealt with this issue in their analysis of translated texts. It also presents an approach adopted in this thesis so as to make it possible to analyse the thematic structure of news texts in English and Russian.

Baker (2011) applies SFL notions to the discussion of equivalence, examining the notions of thematic and information structures. Baker (2011) rightly points out limitations of the SFL-based analysis with its focus on the initial position of linguistic elements in a clause as thematic. Discussing the applicability of SFL to the analysis of other languages, such as Arabic and Chinese, Baker (2011) argues that, unlike in English, the initial position of certain lexical choices will not necessarily signify any added emphasis. In languages such as Spanish, Portuguese or German no emphasis is added by the positioning of an adjunct of place of time in the initial position of a sentence. As a result, such elements would be

considered unmarked in these languages, and by contrast, marked in English. Baker (2011: 144) suggests the following example:

Hier steigen wir aus (literally: “Here we get out”)

While the initial position of “here” in German is common, and therefore adds no emphasis, such a structure would place the emphasis on “here” in English, due to its difference from the common word order. Thus, Baker’s (2011) approach suggests that in languages other than English, the initial position of those elements which would appear as marked in English does not necessarily reflect markedness or any added emphasis. In turn, Baker (2011) emphasises that “if theme is whatever occurs in initial position we would have to acknowledge that some languages prefer to thematize participants [...] on a regular basis while other languages prefer to thematize processes” (2011: 153). For this reason it is important not to limit attention to the choices of themes and the information that is being thematised in each clause. It is also critical to examine those elements which appear as marked and add a particular emphasis to the expression.

It is possible to agree with Baker (2011) that the initial position of linguistic elements is not necessarily an indication of an added emphasis or given prominence. However, taking Baker’s (2011) emphasis on the limitation of the Hallidayan model into consideration, it is still possible to argue that it is not the initial position that is of importance in the analysis of translated news texts, it is whether markedness or unmarkedness is achieved through being placed in the initial position or not. To illustrate this, Baker (2011) argues that “hier” in German is not marked. Similarly, in English, in a sentence “I get off here”, “I” will not be marked, even though it appears in the initial position.

It is, thus, important to emphasise that the structural differences of languages need to be taken into consideration when analysing the thematic structure of news texts in languages other than English. In the analysis of Russian news texts this issue can be dealt with by differentiating between marked and unmarked themes in their initial position. Unlike English, Russian does have a rather free word order. However the structure which it follows, as with English is SVO (subject-verb-object). For thematic analysis, this means that as with English but unlike German, when an adjunct of place is in the initial position, it will carry emphasis. Examining topic prominence and theme-rheme position in German, English and Russian, Lötscher (1992) points out the following about Russian:

Russian is a language with relatively very free word order; i.e. there are few if any restrictions for applying the theme-rheme formula in any given utterance. Russian sentences thus reflect very directly the theme-rheme articulation of a sentence with respect to the theme-rheme formula. German and especially English are more restricted by additional grammatical constituent ordering rules. (Lötscher, 1992: 97-98)

The analysis of Russian news texts in this thesis will therefore consider as thematic those elements which appear in the initial position. But added emphasis will be recognised only where themes are marked. The relatively free word order of Russian in translation presents a potential rather than a limitation for translation from English to Russian. In Russian, it is possible to thematise almost any element of a clause or sentence, whilst in English such an arrangement would be problematic for being ungrammatical. However, peculiarities of thematic structure in a text are not only defined by the characteristics of word order in a certain language. There are often genre and style considerations, which might influence the ways in which information is organised and presented in a text. In the analysis of translations of news texts it would be relevant to examine the differences in thematic structure as potentially resulting from norms, traditions and practices of news reporting in a particular language and editorial style. Stylistic considerations will not be taken into account in the analysis of the presented data. However, these could be included for a more informed evaluation of the importance of specific thematic elements in constructing meaning and representation in news texts.

In terms of the analysis of thematic structure the thematisation of certain elements may result from different style and genre considerations (Lorés Sanz, 2003; Williams, 2009). Conducting a quantitative and qualitative analysis of Spanish and English translations of biomedical research articles, Williams (2009) examines theme progression. This research explains differences in thematic structure of the analysed texts as due to either the progressive (background information) or retrogressive (initial/early claim) style of presentation of information in a sentence. Strategies and mechanisms for aligning translated texts with target language norms are also suggested. One example of this is the “splitting of complex themes into two units, one of which becomes the new usually marked theme” (Williams, 2009: 253). The texts analysed by Williams (2009) being biomedical research articles may be seen as requiring translation of a high level of equivalence, almost

a literal translation. In contrast, analysis of news texts translations does not involve the same level of equivalence. Instead it focuses on equivalence of representation created at the level of text as an accumulation of the effects created by individual structures and linguistic choices. Following Williams' (2009) application of theme analysis, differences encountered in the analysis of news texts produced in different socio-cultural and linguistic environments can be interpreted as being created via the stylistic norms and limitations of that particular language and culture of journalistic practice.

Lorés Sanz (2003) discusses thematic structure within genre characteristics and language norms of "initial position". Analysing the thematic position of connectors in English and Spanish tourist literature, Lorés Sanz (2003) suggests that by placing conjunctions and discourse markers in the initial position, Spanish tourist texts display "explication of logical relationships" (2003: 302). In turn, "English tourist literature tends towards the implication of logical relationships, displaying a scant use of connectors of either type" (2003: 302).

Following the approach applied by Williams (2009) and Lorés Sanz (2003), it should be acknowledged that style and genre considerations can motivate the positioning of certain linguistic elements, and not others. However, due to the constraints of the scope of the research presented in this thesis stylistic considerations are not examined. The focus is on the ideological meaning created by means of the organisation of themes and the prominence that they are given, rather than stylistic considerations.

As for the analysis of the style in news translation, regarding the way in which an author places an emphasis on certain meanings, this would be very relevant to other analysis but in news translation this is made almost impossible. As emphasised throughout this thesis, in news translation it is not only problematic to determine the author of a certain text, but even to locate a source for many translations of news texts. News texts are often unsigned and are products of a many-layered intertextual process of writing and re-writing. In the application of thematic structure analysis, further discussed and illustrated in Chapter 4, the analysis of themes will be based on the following suggestion by Baker (1992/2011):

The selection of an individual theme of a given clause in a given text is not in itself particularly significant. But the overall choice and ordering of themes, particularly those of independent clauses, plays an important part in organizing a text and in providing a point of orientation for a given stretch of language. (1992/2011: 137)

To rephrase Baker's (1992/2011) suggestion, in the analysis of news texts and their translation it is not the individual themes that matter, but the meaning that they add to the representation of ideology at text level. Certainly, individual linguistic choices contribute to the overall meaning of the text, but textual features also provide evidence for interpreting and evaluating an ideology of a news text. Markedness of themes will be a criterion for identifying an added emphasis in the narrative of the analysed news texts.

Another category of analysis adapted to the analysis of news texts in this thesis which contributes to the overall meaning and ideology of a news text is transitivity or transitivity structure of a clause. Following Munday (2002) and Pérez (2007), in the research presented in this thesis, choices made within transitivity structure are interpreted and evaluated as contributing towards an ideology of a translated text.

One key aspect of the application of categories to the analysis of news texts in this thesis is to examine the possibility of ideological motivation behind translation shifts, where “the shifts have been intentionally motivated by a publisher or even a translator to create a different image of the story in the minds of its readers” (Munday, 2002: 85). In attempting this Munday (2002) analyses translations of the column “Náufrago en tierra firme” by García Márquez which originally appeared in the *Juventud Rebelde* and translations of which further appeared in *El País*, *The New York Times* and *The Guardian*. In the following example of two transitivity structures, Munday (2002: 85) illustrates the difference in the image created in the *Juventud Revelde* and its translation in *the Guardian*:

(1) ST (*Juventud Revelde*):

la mayoría de los pasajeros se inyectaron gravinol intravenoso

BT: most passengers themselves injected Gravinol intravenous.

(2) TT (*the Guardian*):

most passengers were injected with Gravinol

In example (1), the passengers are presented as active because they inject Gravinol into themselves (reflexive form of the verb). In the translation, on the other hand (example 2), an external action is suggested through the use of the passive. As analysis carried out by Munday (2002) suggests, ideological meanings can be interpreted by means of the analysis of transitivity structure. Following Munday's (2002) suggestion that ideological motivations may be at the heart of translation shifts in transitivity structure, the transitivity structure of news texts will be interpreted within the specific socio-cultural context of news production. However, in Munday's study (2002) the interpretation of ideologically motivated choices encompasses sentence length and number of words. In contrast, the analysis presented in Chapter 5 focuses on interpretation of transitivity structures to the extent that they affect the overall ideological representation in the source and target news texts.

Similarly to Munday (2002), Pérez (2007) examines transitivity shifts in translation in qualitative and quantitative terms. The data which the author analyses consists of English-Spanish translations of speeches in the European Parliament. Pérez (2007) points out that all the features of lexico-grammar, including mood, modality, transitivity, lexis, cohesion etc. are interconnected. She refers to these as "texture", where "texture" is interrelated with meaning and context (Pérez, 2007: 11). In her analysis Pérez (2007) narrows the focus only to one of the elements of texture and focuses on transitivity, or as the author herself suggests, – "on the relations that are established between a particular type of textural device – transitivity – and the socio-textual aspects of semiotics" (2007: 11).

The research discussed above demonstrates and emphasises the need for a wider contextual analysis to allow the evaluation and interpretation of the transitivity structures of a text. In the analysis presented in this thesis this approach is applied consistently, such that transitivity (as well as thematic structure, and modality) are interpreted within a given socio-political context. To enhance the evaluation of context, where possible, this text also discusses the intertext of the analysed news texts. These are texts, which appeared in the media prior to or concurrently with the analysed news texts. As such they make an important contribution to understanding of context and discourse surrounding translation of the analysed news texts.

Since in the analysis of news texts, context is vital for interpreting any textual features, it is worth mentioning the work of authors focusing on the importance of contextual analysis. Based on the Hallidian notions of context and its textual realisation, register, House (2006) develops a theory of recontextualisation, the model of which places context at the heart of the linguistic enquiry. House (2006) explores “linguistic choice” in detail and refers to the “system network”, which underpins both the notion of choice and context. Linguistic choices at the decision-making stage constitute a network which allows the translator to make one choice out of the many options available. House writes, “the translator is always forced to make choices, i.e., to set up a hierarchy of demands on equivalence he or she wants to follow” (2006: 345). House (2006) views context as the basis for decision-making in translation and for the choices made in the process of translation. House’s (2006) recontextualisation theory is presented in the work on text and context in translation. The notion of recontextualisation, developed by House (2006), is based on Halliday’s work and can be defined as a transfer of a text from one context into another. House explains such transfer as involving “taking a text out of its original frame and context and placing it within a new set of relationships and culturally conditioned expectations” (2006: 356). The focus that House (2006) places on the context of situation and its impact on the properties of a text is not new to the area of translation studies. Such understanding of context and its influence on the final product in translation is closely related to Vermeer’s “Skopos” theory (1989). This identifies translation as a kind of rewriting for a specific audience and views the translated text as a text that performs a function similar to that of the original. This fact only reinforces the importance of context analysis in the interpretation and evaluation of individual linguistic choices in the analysis of news text translations.

As with House (2006), Hatim (2009) examines the notion of context in the analysis of translated texts. Throughout Hatim’s (2009) work linguistic choice stands out as a central defining factor in the construction of meaning in translated texts along with the notion of context and texts characterised as contextually sensitive. As the author suggests, linguistic choice determines whether positive or negative connotations arise in a translated text. Discussing translational shifts which often result from the process of recontextualisation, Hatim (2009) emphasises the semiotic and the functional nature of linguistic resources. He indicates that these may be manifested in the features of a text which “conspire with discursive practices and collectively act in society and culture” (Hatim, 2009: 49). As advocated by Hatim (2009), socio-political contextual considerations are central to the

analysis and interpretation presented in this thesis of linguistic choices in news texts. Although this emphasis on context is a valuable contribution, Hatim's (2009) analytical applications are rather fragmented in that a range of issues are explored at the same time, including processes of textualisation, functions of a text, notions of equivalence and translation shifts.

In the following paragraphs other work is examined, some features of which are relevant to the applications of SFL to news text analysis and translation. It should be noted that these features have not been directly applied for various reasons. It is important to acknowledge the work of authors such as Schäffner (2004; 2012), Erjavec and Volcic (2007), Al-Hejin (2012) and Jahedi and Abdullah (2012) in order to recognise and illustrate the ways in which the study presented in this thesis is different in (1) its broader application of the SFL model in comparison to what has been done and (2) application of SFL to the analysis of news texts translations and their (often "potential") sources. The work of the above authors is relevant to news texts analysis for the reason that they analyse media texts and political discourse by applying elements of the SFL model. These, however, are often individual categories, such as lexical choice or thematic structure, applications of which are often unsystematic and fragmented. Despite this limitation, the context-sensitive approach and contextualised analysis, as applied in the work of these authors, is adopted in the analysis of news texts translations in this thesis. As with the work of authors discussed earlier in this section, Schäffner (2004; 2012), Erjavec and Volcic (2007), Al-Hejin (2012) and Jahedi and Abdullah (2012) interpret textual features as the realisation of an ideology constructed in the media texts and texts of political discourse, which they analyse.

Schäffner (2004) examines the notion of recontextualisation, as she emphasises, "from the point of view of translation" (2004: 123). Applying the notions of choice and context, the author examines word choice in the translation of political texts in political contexts. Analysing multilingual political texts, she examines textual features, focusing on peculiarities of lexical choices. Emphasising the importance of a context-sensitive approach, Schäffner concludes, "textual features need to be linked to the social and ideological contexts of text production and reception" (2004: 131). In her later work, Schäffner (2012) examines transformations in mass media translation and in the interpretation of political discourse which result from recontextualisation. She studies representations in journalistic texts, analysing differences in used terminology, "metaphorical expressions" and "interpersonal relationships" (Schäffner, 2012: 106).

Studying translation in media texts, Al-Hejin (2012) analyses examples of *BBC News* translations. These are scripts of biographical news stories from a project conducted by *BBC World Service Trust* with *BBC Arabic* and *UNICEF*. The author examines transformations in thematic structure – thematic “prominence” (Al-Hejin, 2012). These are discussed within the context of a selective appropriation developed by Baker (2006) and based on the notions of choice and context. Al-Hejin’s (2012) study informs the analysis of translated news texts presented in this thesis by emphasising the importance of evaluation of linguistic choices in a specific socio-political context.

The work by Erjavec and Volcic (2007) and Jahedi and Abdullah (2012) is relevant to the study of translations of news texts in that it shows how textual features are realisations of discourses and ideologies. For example, Erjavec and Volcic (2007) examine the Serbian discourse of nationalism and the image of Kosovo constructed in Serbian newspapers by applying the notion of recontextualisation. Similarly, Jahedi and Abdullah (2012) examine the transitivity systems of analysed news texts published in *The New York Times* in order to interpret the negative representation and demonisation of Iran and its nationals. However, the limitation of the work of these authors lies in the fact that the analysis is conducted in monolingual environments, in the case of Kosovo – Serbian news texts; in the case of Iran – the discourse of *the New York Times*. As with the quantitative analysis of transitivity structures conducted by Munday (2002), the study carried out by Jahedi and Abdullah (2012) focuses on how frequently participants and processes are used, and on how this constructs negative representations of Iran. Whilst quantitative analysis is not dismissed as an approach to the transitivity structure of texts, it has not been applied to the analysis of news texts and their translations in this thesis and only qualitative analysis has been carried out.

Modality is another element applied to the analysis of constructed ideology of representation in the news texts analysed in this thesis. Modality is one of the elements of the SFL model analysed by Halliday (2004) from the functional interpersonal perspective. From this perspective the clause acquires meaning in terms of the exchange it engenders. Essentially, modal expressions are used by speakers or writers to indicate the level of probability or desirability associated with a particular proposition. Using the SFL model Munday (2004) examines a corpus of English and Spanish football reports in *the Guardian* and *El País* analysing modality as part of a wider evaluation system. His analysis aims to

identify both positive and negative attitudes, looking at a range of elements such as epithets, lexis of inclination/hope/intention, modals, comparatives and superlatives, attitudinal adverbs, adverbs of normality, metaphors and verbs.

Unlike the football reports analysed by Munday (2004) which are rather expressive and use a range of evaluative language, news reports construct representations implicitly, and it is mostly through the use of modality that explicit evaluations can be analysed. To analyse modality, Munday (2004) examines modals and attitudinal adverbs. Following Munday (2004), the analysis of news texts will include the analysis of modal verbs and adverbs. This analysis will, however, refer to these as modal operators (e.g. “will”, “must”) and modal adjuncts (e.g. “probably”, “certainly”) so as to analyse expressions of probability, possibility, certainty and obligation. The analysis of thematic and transitivity structure along with that of context and modality contributes to the understanding and evaluation of the cumulative effect and the meaning constructed in a news text.

Other examples of research based on the SFL model analysing modality can be found in the work of Rabadán (2006) and Lian and Jiang (2014). In the work of these authors modality is examined in detail to produce strategies and recommendations for practicing translators. Rabadán (2006) analyses modal verbs and modal meanings of possibility, necessity and obligation contrasting their use in Spanish and English so as to produce an inventory of cross-linguistic equivalents in the two languages. Lian and Jiang (2014) examine translations of Chinese legislative discourse into English and suggest that equivalent legal conventions of modality need to be preserved in translation so as to retain the law enforcement function of the legislative discourse. The analysis carried out by these authors is effective in explicating how modality works on the cross-linguistic level in particular types of texts.

Each study discussed above demonstrates the need for the contextualised analysis of textual features. In the translation analysis of news texts, context can be taken into account by analysing categories of texture and structure such as transitivity, thematic structure and modality of news texts in the context of a wider socio-political discourse. Analysis of these categories provides textual evidence for the interpretation of certain ideological frameworks constructed in news texts. This thesis suggests a broader approach based on the analysis of thematic structure, transitivity and modality, all evaluated and interpreted within a given socio-political context of the news. Such a broader framework applied to the

analysis of news texts builds on the existing research in the area of translation studies and the work of the authors discussed in this section: Munday (2002)/(2004), Lorés Sanz (2003), House (2006), Erjavec and Volcic (2007), Pérez (2007), Hatim (2009), Williams (2009), Mason (2010), Baker (1992/ 2011), Schäffner (2004; 2012), Al-Hejin (2012) and Jahedi and Abdullah (2012).

Previous applications of the SFL model, discussed above, have either been applied in monolingual contexts or in the analysis of translations with a clear distinction between source and target texts. As Bassnett and Bielsa (2009) point out, a comparative analysis of source and target texts is not relevant to the analysis of news translation. It is difficult to identify source and target text relationships between news texts due to the extent of rewriting, recontextualisation and adaptation. Thus, in news translation analysis the notion of “source” cannot be used in the traditional sense. The traditional definition of a source in the area of translation studies presupposes a linear relationship between a text existing in one language (source) and a text reproduced in another language, culture and context (target). Such a linear relationship might effectively be influenced by intermediary factors, for example, the writer of the target text, the audience or medium of production. All of these are characteristic of news texts translation. Yet, other aspects of mediation, such as the existence of multiple sources of news content some of which may be intertextual, add to the complexity of the relationship between the traditional notion of source and target. This thesis suggests the use of the term “potential” source to reflect the intertextuality of news texts, the complexity of the process of news production and the use of multiple sources of information. Such sources take a variety of forms, including agency reports, newswires, quotations, witnesses’ accounts and their multilingual translated versions.

The notion of “potential” source acknowledges the deviation from a traditional definition of “source” in translation studies. It recognises the fact that translated news texts function as direct sources of information, rarely seen as translations. Schäffner (2004) rightly points out that “it is in those intertextual and interdiscursive contexts where interpretations are often made solely on the basis of a translated version” (2004: 124). In a comparative study of selected news texts, adopting the notion of “potential” source allows a degree of variation in the way information is presented in the “source” and the target. Such variation is approached in this thesis as potentially arising from differences in communicative styles as well as differences in the socio-political contexts of production of the analysed news texts.

As suggested in Chapter 1, throughout this thesis I refer to the “constructed ideology of representation”. This is in order to distinguish between representation as a narrow functional SFL category and its broader understanding as “constructed ideology of representation” or “ideology of representation”. These latter understandings include context as well as the image of certain events and actors constructed through a wide range of textual features in news texts. As a narrow SFL category, the analysis of representation refers to the analysis of transitivity structures of clauses. “Ideology of representation”, on the other hand, reflects the fact that wider ideological representations are constructed in journalistic texts through the use of a wide range of expressive features and in the context of existing socio-political discourse and ideology. It also incorporates the idea of language as a social construct by means of which ideological frameworks are reflected in journalistic discourse. To include context into the analysis of linguistic features of a text, Baker (2009) suggests using “frame” or “narrative” in the analysis of texts in the context of conflict. These are frames within which texts are read and understood. This is particularly relevant to the analysis of news texts where each text is produced and consumed in a specific context and socio-political discourse. Similarly, Hatim (2009), uses the term “stance” to reflect characteristics of the notion of representation. In his discussion of register analysis in the production of texts as a socio-textual practice of discourse, Hatim (2009) views “stance” as the following:

To be closer to the life world of the language user and to communicate anything meaningful regarding social, cultural or political issues, texts must involve more than organization and mapping procedures or simply the need to uphold conventionality. Texts must be seen as macro-structures through which the language user can take a “stance” on an issue or a set of issues. (2009: 47)

This is also referred to as “ideology” in Hatim and Mason (1990; 1997). All the above definitions of representation share the idea of language as a social construct through which meanings and perceptions are constructed and manifested. In further discussion and analysis, “ideology of representation” will be used to reflect, as discussed, peculiarities of socio-political context of news texts production and consumption.

3.7. Conclusions

In this chapter, the theory of SFL and its application in translation analysis has been presented and discussed. As a theory based on the notion of linguistic choice, SFL allows for the examination of linguistic features of a text as well as for their interpretation and evaluation in a context. The analysis, based on such categories as theme, transitivity structures and modality, provides linguistic evidence for discussing the constructed ideology of representation in “translated” news texts.

The model of SFL presented and developed by Halliday (1978; 2004) has been applied in the area of translation studies. This can be seen in the work of authors whose research adopts an approach based on the notions of choice, such as lexical grammatical and structural choices as examined in the works of Mason (2010) and Baker (1992/2011), transitivity, register and context – as in the works of House (2006) and Pérez (2007), and modality, as in the research of Munday (2004). SFL as a model can be seen as widely applied in the area of translation studies, yet fragmented in its application.

The originality of the approach presented in this thesis is in (1) a broader application which integrates the analysis of thematic structure, transitivity and modality; (2) the evaluation of these categories in the immediate linguistic context as well as a wider socio-political context; (3) application of this range of categories for purposes of analysing the created cumulative effect and the constructed ideology of representation; (4) application of the SFL categories to the analysis of “translated” news texts and their “sources” for the comparison and analysis of the contextual and ideological frameworks represented by such texts.

In the research presented in this thesis, SFL is applied to Russian as well as English news texts to illustrate the applicability of the SFL-based components to the analysis of such texts. In this research the constructed ideology of representation is analysed and interpreted through a model based on that of SFL. The focus is on the analysis of differences between the constructed representation of the narrated events in target news texts as opposed to their potential source texts. The SFL-based model applied to the analysis of the news texts selected as data in this thesis includes a wider range of elements of analysis than has been the case with research previously conducted in this area. It includes analysis of thematic structure, transitivity structure and modality embedded in the analysis of a socio-political

context. It applies this to the analysis of Russian and English “translated” news texts in political contexts. This broader application is discussed in detail in the next chapters. In Chapter 4, categories of the SFL model which can be considered as most effective for purposes of identifying shifts in representation in the context of news translation are examined. Chapter 4 discusses the application of these categories, based on the analysis of the selected translated news texts in the context of political conflict and instability. Chapter 5 illustrates how SFL as a theory is capable of providing answers to questions of source-target analysis in news translation. In Chapter 5, the analysis of news texts translations and their “potential” sources is presented.

Chapter 4. Methodological aspects of the application of the SFL-based model in the analysis of news texts translation

4.1. Introduction. Application of SFL categories in translation analysis and qualification of the addressed research questions

Chapter 3 discussed the notion of language as a socially constructed system of signs, addressing shifts of meaning and representations which result from linguistic choices in the process of news transfer across socio-political contexts and media cultures. Chapter 4 presents key elements and categories of the SFL theory in application. A key feature of this thesis is the examination of the application of the SFL-based model to an analysis of ideologically constructed representations in translated news texts. The focus of Chapter 4 is to present a methodological framework for the application of an SFL-based analytical model in news texts translation analysis.

This chapter illustrates the application of the SFL-based model to the analysis of news texts translation. Chapter 5 then presents and discusses the findings from the analysis of the corpus of data in terms of the “constructed ideology of representation”.

The aim of Chapter 4 is to:

- Present an SFL-based methodology which can be used to analyse the translation of news texts.
- Provide an illustration of how the SFL categories selected as suitable for the analysis of the selected corpus have been identified.
- Demonstrate how an SFL-based translation analysis of news texts can be used to identify differences between ideological frameworks.

Structurally, Chapter 4 consists of the following sections. Section 4.2 explores methodological aspects of the conducted research such as the selection of data. It also presents a discussion and illustration of the analytical categories selected for use in the SFL-based methodology. Section 4.3 presents six stages of the SFL-based analytical approach applied to the analysis of the corpus of data in this thesis.

4.2. Methodological aspects: data selection, analytical categories and illustrations

Translated news texts dealing with issues and events of political instability and conflict as well as political and military intervention have been collected and collated as data for the purposes of the research presented in this thesis. In this section the following are discussed: criteria for the data selection, selected language pair, the unreliability of the approach of matching equivalent clauses and illustrations of the applied analytical categories.

4.2.1. Translated texts and the criteria for data selection

The following paragraphs provide a detailed overview of the methodological aspects of the selection and collection of translated news texts. At a preliminary stage of data collection two criteria were identified. The purpose of these was both to determine the scope for the selection of news texts as well as ensuring the consistency of the process of texts selection. These are the “thematic” criterion and the “translation” criterion.

Within the *thematic criterion* three contexts of political and military instability and intervention were selected. Each context either directly involved the Russian Federation or was widely reported on by the Russian media. These are the contexts of intervention in Georgia, political instability and humanitarian intervention in Somalia and socio-political and military events in Afghanistan. A set time frame was identified for each of the three contexts within which events of a conflict took place – events in Georgia in 2008, in Somalia in 2011 and in Afghanistan in 2010 and 2012. Based on the thematic criterion, news texts for each of the three identified thematic contexts were selected.

These particular regions and contexts of conflict, instability and intervention were identified as having been heavily reported in the media across a number of countries. These include the U.S., the UK, France, Ukraine, the Russian Federation as well as a number of other countries. Each of these was either directly involved in one of the three conflicts or contributed to the dialogue in the global media. The fact that information reported within the press and mediated by translation can potentially influence perceptions as well as have an impact on policy making has determined a selection of the contexts of conflict and instability.

News texts analysed and presented in this thesis can be viewed as political texts due to their thematic correlation with political discourse. As argued in Chapter 2, political texts are not only those texts which are intended to have an immediate effect on certain political conditions or the process of policy-making, such as political speeches, parliamentary debates or transcribed interviews of political figures. Political texts also include news reports of politically important events produced daily by the media worldwide.

The second stage of data selection and collection was based on the “translation” criterion. This led to the selection of news texts with a reference to a source as well as those news texts for which a “potential” source could be located.

4.2.2. Qualification of a selected language pair

Given the linguistic background of the author of this thesis, Russian and English-language news texts were selected for analysis. This factor influenced the choice of particular contexts of conflict and intervention reported by the Russian and U.S. media. As a result, news texts which discussed political and military events in Georgia (2008), Somalia (2011) and Afghanistan (2010/2012) were selected. In the process of news texts selection neither English nor Russian news texts were predetermined to be analysed either as a source or a target. However, Russian news texts often provided a reference to an English-language source (e.g., *Business World Journal*, *The New York Times*, *Bridges Weekly News Digest*), whereas English texts were not found to cite Russian-language sources. This might be an indication of the phenomenon of Anglophone dominance and hegemony in journalism as claimed by Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) and Tymoczko (2009). Refutation of or support for the claim made by these authors would require a study of other language-pairs within a much larger corpus than that used in this thesis. The research presented in this thesis is limited to one language pair and to a set number of translated news texts.

In the process of news texts selection priority was given to no particular publication. That said, only those news texts, which appeared in established online news media sources, were selected (e.g., *the New York Times*, *RIA Novosti*). This was done in order to exclude media publications created and run by individual users and readers. This was considered important since the collection of sources was carried out via online resources through the web pages of publications, online article archives, databases of newswires and press releases. The *Nexis* database was used as the primary resource of data search and selection.

This has proved an effective resource, making it possible to pull data from a extensive range of online publications and archives across a number of languages.

The Nexis database was used as a primary search engine as it enabled the selection of a range of news texts within a particular political context. This was done via a search of key words, including the region, the year and a particular event or name of a political figure or group involved. At this stage, nine target texts were identified. All nine were Russian-language texts.

The next stage of data collection was to locate “potential” sources. This was achieved directly by searching web pages of identified publications and their article archives. Based on the reference provided in each translated – target – text, a search for a potential source news text was run according to the date and main theme or event discussed in the target text. Across the three selected contexts, the collected data totalled twenty news texts. These were further grouped, organised and analysed as the data of this thesis. In certain cases intertextual data was also identified. As discussed in section 2.4, where possible such intertextual data was collected and discussed. The term intertextual data is meant to indicate those news texts which have appeared prior to or alongside the publication of the analysed news texts. Intertextual data includes those news texts which contribute to the evaluation and interpretation of the context of the analysed news texts.

4.2.3. Case study analysis and the unreliability of the approach of “clause matching”

A case study format was selected as the method for organising and presenting the data selected. This was dictated by both the necessity of analysing the selected news texts as being positioned in particular contexts as well as by the need to evaluate and interpret linguistic textual features within a certain political discourse. Thus, the need to incorporate context into the process of evaluating and interpreting textual features was key in determining the case study format as an effective way of presenting and analysing data.

Thomas (2011) discusses the important features of the case study as a method of collating and analysing textual data. He writes that the main aim of a case study is to provide full descriptions and analysis of a phenomena, which, in turn, would allow interpretation. Thus, the second determining factor for selecting the case study format was the adoption of the SFL model in order to conduct a detailed analysis of a range of textual features and

functional elements of selected news texts. Halliday points out that, “high-level analysis has to be carried out by hand for small samples of text” (2004: 49). Similarly, House (2006: 342) suggests that:

In both functional-pragmatic and systemic-functional theory, the preference for using a broad textual functional explanation for linguistic phenomena, combined with a detailed description of linguistic expressions in both their oral and written contexts, makes these approaches [...] useful and appropriate for the interpretation, analysis and production of text, which is what we are concerned with in translation [...].

An in-depth analysis of the linguistic elements of the analysed texts and their contexts requires the selection of a limited number of texts organised according to certain thematic contexts – those of Georgia, Somalia and Afghanistan. Twenty selected news texts were grouped into three contexts. These were further organised according to their thematic contexts and according to the date of their publication. A full list of the analysed data, grouped according to their contexts and case studies is presented in Appendix 1.

News texts within the first analysed context – the South-Ossetian conflict – present and discuss events taking place during the intervention of the Russian Federation in the affairs of Georgia in 2008. The discourse of this conflict involved a number of indirect participants and global media, which disapproved of this political and military intervention. News texts within the second selected context – Somalia – discuss events which took place in Somalia in 2011 and were related to both a drought in East Africa and political instability in the region. Events in Somalia resulted in a response from a wide global audience. The third context of the selected news texts presents events related to the military intervention and political instability in Afghanistan in 2010 and 2012. News texts grouped within this context narrate events and discourses which are bound to the past and current discourses of the Russian and U.S. intervention in the region – from the Soviet invasion to the U.S. “war on terror” and military intervention in Afghanistan.

Within each of the three contexts news texts were grouped into three case studies. In total, nine case studies were analysed, the results of which were evaluated within each of the corresponding selected contexts. Each of the three case studies in each of the selected contexts comprises at least two news texts. These were analysed according to the relationship of source and target. Some of the case studies comprise three news texts. If

more than one potential source could be located for an analysed target text then both potential sources were included in a case study and analysed as such. In addition, intertextual data, where identified, was collected for purposes of the contextual analysis. Such data includes other news texts published by the same news source on the same topic, official websites and publications by aid agencies and international organisations as well as governmental institutions such as, for example, *Oxfam*, *FAO*, and the *U.S. Department of State*.

It is a characteristic feature of the adopted SFL-based model that analysis is carried out at the level of the clause. Hence, each analysed text was broken down into the constituent clauses and analysed at the level of such. The initial analysis conducted involved testing the match between clauses of target and source news texts comparable in content. This matching of clauses involves finding a clause in the source which can be matched to its translation in the target. This proved an unreliable approach to the analysis of translation in the selected news texts due to a number of features characteristic to news texts. Among such features are the intertextuality of these texts and their production within a certain context for a particular audience. Produced in different socio-cultural and socio-political contexts for different audiences each with a certain purpose, news texts require analysis which not only incorporates all textual features of a text as a whole but also places such a text in the context of its production and consumption.

An attempt to analyse matched clauses of source and target news texts yielded results which were judged not to be comparable to the ideology of representation constructed in the analysed news texts. Matching certain clauses of a target news text with its source would therefore be an inadequate method for evaluating the constructed ideology of representation. Such a construction could only be fully evaluated and interpreted through analysis of a range of linguistic and contextual characteristics of a new text in a full-text analysis. As a result, a full text clause-by-clause approach to news texts analysis was adopted. Each news text was analysed separately and an overall constructed ideology of representation was interpreted in relation to its particular context.

4.2.4. Central analytical categories and stages of the adopted analytical approach

Analysis of contextual and discursive factors within which the selected news texts have been produced allows one to interpret and evaluate the linguistic choices made within these texts – choices of thematic structure, transitivity and modality. The evaluation of context is important in determining the ways in which linguistic choices translate an existing political discourse. These, in turn, contribute towards the construction of an ideology of representation in a new text. This stage of the analysis discusses the ways in which a particular existing socio-political discourse may define certain linguistic choices and how these have the potential to construct a certain ideology of representation through translation.

In order to carry out a full text analysis at clause level, following the SFL model developed by Halliday (2004), a set of analytical categories was adopted. They include theme/thematic pattern, transitivity and modality, each being further interpreted against the background of the relevant socio-political context. In his commentary on the analysis of a text according to theme, mood and transitivity, Halliday (2004) suggests that conclusions can be made regarding textual, interpersonal and experiential metafunctions of a text respectively.

Throughout this chapter it is argued that the interpretation of these three metafunctions – by means of analysis of linguistic characteristics of news texts – informs our understanding of the ideology of representation constructed in the translation of a journalistic text. The thematic pattern shapes the distribution of emphasis at the structural level. Transitivity patterns indicate specific perspectives of the events reported in terms of responsibility, agency and blame. Modality patterns allow one to evaluate expressions of probability, certainty, obligation or desirability. The analysis of these patterns in context provides an insight into the overall ideological representation encoded in the news reports.

The following paragraphs present the three analytical categories of theme, transitivity and modality. These categories are incorporated into the adopted analytical approach and are analysed against the background of the relevant socio-political context. The end of this chapter, following the discussion and illustration of these analytical categories, presents the six stages of the analytical approach applied to the analysis of the corpus of data analysed and presented in this thesis.

Appendices 2 – 10 present a full analysis of the thematic structure of the analysed news texts. These news texts are analysed by clause, where for each clause a theme is identified. Themes in each clause are highlighted, including a literal translation for each of the Russian text clauses. In the Appendices, a gloss for each target text (TT) clause is provided where the equivalent elements are highlighted accordingly in order to illustrate the arrangement of the analysed elements in the TT. In addition, a literal translation for each analysed text is provided in order to aid the reader’s understanding of the discussed news content. As discussed in the previous section, the analysis of the TT is presented first, followed by the analysis of the potential source text (ST). This organisation is motivated by the focus on the analysis of constructed representation rather than on that of equivalent choices in translation.

Thematic structure

In the process of unfolding of a text *themes* construct and frame meaning. In the analysis of English language texts, a theme is always identified by its initial position. As Halliday writes, “in speaking or writing English we signal that an item has thematic status by putting it first” (2004: 64). In Halliday’s (2004) theory of SFL the following types of themes are distinguished: topical, textual and interpersonal. Whilst a topical theme, as Halliday (2004: 79) suggests, is a theme that “ends with the first constituent that is either participant, circumstance or process”; textual and interpersonal themes can be distinguished according to their function. A clearer distinction between topical, interpersonal and textual themes is provided in Young and Fitzgerald (2006). The authors define topical themes as elements of the ideational metafunction realised as participants (encoded as nouns, noun phrases or pronouns), processes (verbs and verbal phrases) or circumstance (prepositional phrases and adverbs). Interpersonal themes, as the authors suggest, “demonstrate the speaker’s/writer’s position towards the information in the clause” (Young & Fitzgerald, 2006: 112), e.g. “of course”, “surprisingly”, “wisely”. In Hallidayan terms such would be examples of a modal or comment Adjunct. Halliday (2004) distinguishes between other possible interpersonal themes, which can be vocatives and finite modal operators in the yes/no interrogatives. An example of a vocative theme would be *Kate* in the sentence “Kate, look here”. An example of a finite verbal operator theme in a yes/no interrogative theme would be *is* in the sentence “Is Kate at home?”. However, given the nature of the discourse analysed in this thesis (news texts) vocative

and finite verbal operator themes in yes/no interrogative sentences have not been encountered. Thus, mostly modal or comment Adjunct themes were considered as interpersonal.

Young and Fitzgerald (2006: 112) describe textual themes as connectors, for example, “but”, “therefore”, “however”. According to Halliday (2004) the following can function as textual theme: continuatives, conjunctions and conjunction Adjuncts. Examples of these are the following: continuative – *well, yes*; conjunction – *and, but*; conjunctive Adjunct – *in other words, likewise*. The analysis presented in this thesis does not emphasise the differences between these grammatical categories and refers to these as textual themes, similarly to the way of Young and Fitzgerald (2006) in their interpretation of textual themes as connectors.

As discussed in Chapter 3, both in Russian and English news texts, those elements of a clause which are found in the initial position will be viewed as thematic. Initial position is the first criterion used in this analysis to identify themes. A distinction is made between topical, interpersonal and textual themes. The second criterion of theme selection and analysis in news texts and their translations is markedness. Those elements of the clause which are less likely to appear in an initial position in a clause are marked (e.g. expressions of time and place or objects in passive constructions, in English and Russian). The initial position of these elements places emphasis on them. Textual and interpersonal themes are, by their very nature, always marked. Examples of marked themes are presented in the examples below. Markedness contributes emphasis towards the overall organisation of a news text and allows one to make conclusions about constructed meaning and ideological perspective. The following are examples of themes distinguished in the analysis of the news texts presented in this thesis:

(1) /In any event, of course, the issue of payments is a sensitive one/ (line 65, Appendix 9A).

“in any event” – textual theme (marked)

“of course” – interpersonal theme (marked)

“the issue of payments” – topical theme (unmarked)

(2) Однако ранее на этой неделе военнослужащему было официально предъявлено обвинение в преднамеренном убийстве 17-ти человек./ (line 15, Appendix 9A).

Literally: However, earlier this week the soldier was formally charged with premeditated murder of 17 people.

“however” (однако) – textual theme (marked)

“earlier this week” (ранее на этой неделе) – topical theme (marked)

The full distribution of topical, interpersonal and textual themes of all the news texts analysed in this thesis is presented in the Appendices. In the analysis of the thematic structure of the selected news texts, topical as well as textual and interpersonal themes are analysed.

Both marked and unmarked topical themes are analysed as contributing to the construction of a particular ideology of representation in a news text. As discussed earlier, marked themes place the emphasis in a clause, in order to foreground certain information. For example, in ST1 of case study 1.2, where Russia’s potential isolation on the international arena is discussed, a marked theme “with such growing prosperity and opportunity” (line 71, Appendix 3A) is used:

/With such growing prosperity and opportunity, I cannot imagine that/ most Russians would ever want to go back to the days, as in Soviet times,/ when their country and its citizens stood isolated from Western markets and institutions./

This sentence consists of three clauses. In the first clause the use of a marked topical theme places the emphasis on the progress which the Russians have achieved since the fall of the Soviet Union. In this context foregrounding of the ideas of progress, prosperity and opportunity highlights the fact that Russia’s aggressive actions, which might lead to its isolation, will not be welcomed by its own nationals. In this particular case the whole phrase “with such growing prosperity and opportunity” is thematic, expressing circumstance of reason in the initial position. Throughout the analysis presented in the next chapter whole phrases or even clauses can often be identified as thematic. Another

example of the use of a phrase as thematic is the following (line 141, Appendix 3A). In this case it is the unmarked topical theme which introduces the clause:

/Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance have deeply angered Moscow,/ which objects to its Cold War foe moving hardware into its backyard./

Whilst marked topical themes suggest a particular emphasis on certain elements in the development of the story of a news text, analysis of both marked and unmarked topical themes as well as thematic patterns contributes to capturing the particular ideological of representation being constructed.

In the analysis presented in Chapter 5, the focus is on those themes that are significant in the development of a narrative in a news report. These are those topical themes that represent the entities and the events discussed in the analysed news reports that are important for the development of the story. These include both marked and unmarked themes. In addition, the analysis incorporates both textual and interpersonal themes. The thematic analysis is presented in the form of tables. This is followed by the discussion of the themes in their specific context and within the narrative of the news report. The following (Table 2) is an example of the analysed themes of the ST of case study 1.1. It includes topical (both marked and unmarked), textual and interpersonal themes:

Type	Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	in addition to 130 tons of airlifted cargo	30
	unmarked	the U.S. military	27
		Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman	33
		we	33-41
		deliveries from U.S. aircraft	50
		the State Department	54
		surface vessels	57
		fighting	60
		Moscow	63
		Russian aggression	64
		a host of international partners	71

Textual	but in addition meanwhile	38 44 71
Interpersonal	none	

Table. 2 Case study 1.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 2A).

In this particular case a marked topical theme (line 30) emphasises the efforts undertaken by the U.S. and its European allies in assisting Georgia. The listed unmarked topical themes present the development of the narrative starting with the discussion of the U.S. commitment to assistance, moving through the delivery of that aid, then onto the discussion of the conflict, ending by presenting Moscow's actions and the future concerns of other parties in relation to these. The textual themes "but", "in addition" and "meanwhile" add emphasis at specific points in the development of the narrative. Case study 1.1 in Chapter 5 presents a full analysis of the linguistic and contextual elements alongside other factors involved. In the analysis of the ST of case study 1.1 no interpersonal themes were identified. Themes of the analysed TTs are presented in the same way in Chapter 5 – in the format of tables listing those themes which can be considered significant for the development of the narrative of the analysed news report.

Transitivity structure

Another analytical category adopted for the analysis of news texts in this research is the category of *transitivity*. The transitivity structure of each clause is examined according to its functional elements, namely: participants, processes and circumstances. Based on Halliday's (2004: 175) framework, the transitivity structure of each clause describes each clause as the following:

1. A process unfolding through time (encoded in a verbal form) – e.g. "go", "think", "say".
2. The participants involved in the process (encoded in a nominal or pronominal form) – e.g. "soldier", "government", "civilians", "he", "it", "they".
3. Circumstances associated with the process (encoded in a prepositional or adverbial form) – e.g. "in Afghanistan", "according to the recommendations", "swiftly", "early".

Complete analysis of the participants and processes of the texts analysed in this section is presented in the Appendices. Reference to dominant or central processes and participants is intended to indicate those processes and participants which are significant in constructing an ideology of representation of the narrated events, focusing on the key entities in the reported events.

The following examples illustrate the transitivity structure of a clause:

- (1) /**The United States** **made** payments last weekend to Afghan families/ (line 43, Appendix 9B)
- (2) /**Three NATO soldiers** **were shot** to death on Monday in two separate confrontations involving Afghan security forces/ (line 121, Appendix 9B)

In the first example, “the United States” is a participant, “made” – a process and “last weekend” – a circumstance. In this case “Afghan families” is also a participant presented as an object (“the beneficiary”) in relation to the participant “the United States”.

In the second example, the structure is very similar where there is a participant – represented by a phrase – “three NATO soldiers”, a process “were shot” and a circumstance – “on Monday” and “in two separate confrontations involving Afghan security forces”. In this case “were shot” is a passive construction by means of which the participant “three NATO soldiers” is represented as acted upon and the actor is omitted.

Analysis of the transitivity features allows one to make interpretations of the ways in which the relationship between the participants and the narrated event is represented. Transitivity analysis and thematic analysis provide textual evidence for the evaluation and interpretation of a certain ideology of representation. Analysis of transitivity reveals the roles assigned to different participants of a clause. In the news text analysed in this chapter, human participants may be presented as actors, aggressors or victims being acted upon.

Within SFL analysis (Halliday, 2004) a range of process types are distinguished. Of these the most important are experiential or mental (verbs of feeling, thinking and perceiving), relational (states of being), material (actions) and verbal (“saying” and “asking”). The analysis presented in this thesis distinguishes between the following process types used in

the analysed news texts: material, relational, mental and verbal. The following are examples of the four process types analysed:

Soldiers **left** the base. (material – referring to action)

The victim **was** pregnant. (relational – attribution)

The residents **sensed** danger. (mental – verbs of perception, feeling and thinking).

The government **has expressed** regret. (verbal – referring to verbal expression).

Depending on the process types participants are associated with, the following can, similarly, be distinguished as in the above examples: actors – “soldiers”, carriers or identified – “the victim”, sensers – “the residents” and sayers – “the government”.

Analysis of processes and participants contributes to our understanding and evaluation of the ways in which ideology of representation is constructed in a news text. For example, in the Russian news text analysed as part of case study 3.2, participants, which are represented as actors or aggressors are structurally combined with material process types to foreground their destructive actions. The following example illustrates how the actions of sergeant Bales (also referred to as “the American”) as a participant are represented as having a destructive impact on the livelihood of the village residents:

/Бейлс, по данным следствия, **вышел** со своей базы, **направился** в одну из близлежащих деревень и, **врываясь** в дома **местных жителей**,/ **которые** тогда **спали**,/ **расстреливал** их./ Затем **американец вернулся** в расположение части, а через некоторое время **направился** в другую деревню, где также **совершил** убийства/ (line 7, Appendix 9B).

Literally: **Bales**, according to the investigation data, **left** his base, **headed** to one of the nearby villages and, **breaking** into the houses of **the local residents**, **who** then **were asleep**, **was shooting** them. Then **the American returned** to the base, and after some time **headed** to another village, where he also **committed** murder.

Another example illustrates the way in which the use of the relational process type “was” constructs a fact of existence of the unborn child. This is important, given that there was

much discussion in the media at the time as to whether there was an unborn child and whether it could be considered a victim:

/Среди жертв сержанта американской армии Роберта Бейлса, расстрелявшего мирных афганцев в начале марта, **был неродившийся ребенок/** (line 2, Appendix 3).

Literally: Among victims of the U.S. army sergeant Robert Bales, who shot Afghan civilians at the beginning of March, there **was an unborn child.**

In the analysis presented in Chapter 5, forms of the verb “to be” used in constructions “there is”/“there was” are identified as relational. They identify the participant with the reality of the discussed events and place it within a context. Given the range of process types identified within the SFL model, it is not excluded that a difficulty in distinguishing between these might occur. Krizsán (2011) emphasises that it is often rather problematic to make a definitive distinction between process types in a clause. Conducting analysis of the representations constructed in European political discourse, the author writes, “the ambiguity of some of the categories in transitivity can occasionally create difficulties in the coding of process types” (Krizsán, 2011: 46). In this case, suggests Krizsán (2011: 46), “not only the syntactic but also the conceptual structure of each clause must be considered individually.”

In the analysis presented in this thesis, nominalisations are analysed as a part of the transitivity system of the discussed news texts. Analysis of nominalisations allows one to identify the ways in which agency may have been more or less consciously removed from the reported events. The following are examples of nominalisation used with material processes in the news texts analysed in this thesis:

/Fighting/ **that began** in the breakaway Georgian region of South Ossetia on Aug. 8/ **broadened** to include Russian attacks on other parts of the country, including Abkhazia, another heavily separatist region/ (line 62, Appendix 2B).

/As clashes escalated, **the conflict fueled** fears internationally that/ (line 64, Appendix 2B).

In these two examples nominalisations are presented as participants, which removes the agency of Russia as the aggressor in this conflict. It is possible to suggest that in this particular context the news text strives for neutrality by substituting an actual participant with more neutral “fighting” and “conflict”.

Another category analysed as a part of the transitivity structure suggested earlier in this section is that of circumstance. Within this category the following types can be identified: circumstance of location (time and place), circumstance of manner and reason or cause. The following example of circumstance of manner illustrates how the category of circumstance adds to the discourse of regret expressed by the U.S. government in the context of payments made to victims of conflicts in which the U.S. was involved (adding to the positive representation of the U.S.):

/any eventual payments would be out of compassion for the victims/
(line 58, Appendix 3).

In case study 2.2, the circumstance of location – “at a global level” (line 147, Appendix 6B) provides a focus on scope of the potential impact. As it is used in the English ST, this highlights the effects of climate change on many regions of the world, of which Somalia is an example. The TT, however, omits such a circumstance of location, which reinforces the focus of the TT on Somalia’s natural climate conditions. Arguing that climate change will affect other regions of the world, the ST focuses on the long-term preventative measures such as investment and government control. In contrast, discussing food aid as an emergency measure that needs to be taken into consideration in Somalia, the TT justifies this through reference to the climate conditions in Somalia. Such a representation fits well in the context of “in-kind” aid which the Russian Federation provides and to a certain degree accounts for the omission of such a circumstance of location. Thus, analysis of circumstance as a part of the transitivity structure also contributes to the evaluation of the ideology of representation constructed in a news text.

Modality

The next category of analysis in the adopted analytical model is that of modality. By means of modality a certain attitude towards the narrated information is expressed. Following Halliday's (2004) definition, the analysis of modality relates to the analysis of a clause as exchange, where meanings are exchanged between the writer and the reader. Examining the modal choices made by a writer allows the analyst to identify the ways in which reality is being represented. By means of modal verbs and modal expressions degrees of obligation, probability and certainty are expressed.

The analysis of constructed ideology of news texts presented in this thesis looks at a number of different kinds of modal operators. This includes modal verbs “must”, “may”, “might” and “could” expressing possibility, probability or certainty; modal adjuncts such as “possibly”, “likely”; expressions of probability, possibility or necessity such as “it is unknown”, “it is doubtful” as well as modal operators expressing desirability and obligation such as “must”, “should”, “have to” etc. All of the above are significant in the news texts in relation to the construction of ideology.

The following example illustrates how, in the ST of case study 3.2, the use of a modal verb expresses probability and the author's suggestion that the seventeenth victim had existed:

/the 17th victim could be accounted for because a pregnant woman was among the dead/ (line 158, Appendix 9B).

In the context of the discussed events in case study 3.2 such a use of a modal verb suggesting a possibility reinforces the constructed ideology of representation according to which there is uncertainty about the number of victims.

Similarly, in case study 2.1 the use of modal verbs reinforces the constructed ideology of representation in which long-term investment is seen as the key solution to the drought and the suffering in Somalia. For example:

/we should also go further and take steps to prevent future calamities/ (line 43, Appendix 5B) – quoting FAO Director General Jacques Diouf.

/To do so we must invest in the world's smallholder farmers/ (line 52, Appendix 5B) – quoting IFAD Vice President Yukiko Omura.

The use of modality can also be identified as reinforcing the views from the participants of the meeting regarding the necessary long-term investment. For example:

/Support for such activities should be a sustained, multi-year effort and be linked to improvements in basic services including education, health and clean water/ (line 43, Appendix 5B).

In contrast, the analysed TT uses a modal adjunct “очевидно” (evidently) (line 23, Appendix 5B), to express the certainty on the part of the international community of the need for emergency food assistance in this particular case:

/Очевидно, что для преодоления продовольственного кризиса на Африканском Роге требуется экстренная помощь международного сообщества/ (line 23, Appendix 5B).

Literally: Evidently, in order to overcome the food crisis in the Horn of Africa emergency assistance of the international community is needed.

Context is another element of the analytical model on which the analysis carried out in this thesis is based. For each given news text the context of the narrated events is presented and discussed. This includes the political involvement of the parties in a conflict, the countries' varying commitment to humanitarian aid, the views of official publications, the activities of the organisations involved, such as the UN, NATO, the FAO and missions such as that of the ISAF. The context of the events is analysed as an environment which facilitates the understanding and interpretation of ideologies of representation constructed in the analysed news texts.

In addition, in some of the case studies intertextual data is analysed as it has been judged to add significantly to the understanding of the constructed representations. The term intertextual data is meant to indicate data which can provide a deeper insight into the news content presented in the analysed news reports. For example, in the context of case study 2.1 the section “Chair's Summary and Recommendations” was selected from the

document: “Emergency in the Horn of Africa: Follow-up and Response Actions”. This document was produced as a result of the FAO emergency meeting in Rome in 2011. Published by FAO on FAO.org (2011) this is an official document which outlines further actions to be taken by the UN, governments and other international organisations involved. This text is an important intertextual material which allows one to make evidence-based conclusions regarding the information presented at the actual meeting in Rome. The stage of analysis involving the interpretation and evaluation of textual evidence examines how, by limiting the focus of the discussion on emergency food aid, the Russian TT misrepresents the aims of a long-term investment and assistance set out in the FAO meeting.

Stages of the analytical approach

Through the analysis of specific linguistic choices in each of the analysed texts – 1) thematic structure, 2) participants process types and circumstance and 3) modality – the constructed ideology of representation can be evaluated. Such linguistic choices are interpreted within a particular socio-political context of the reported events.

The following paragraphs present the stages of the analytical approach to the analysis of the selected corpus of data. These are based on the previously discussed analytical categories of the SFL model. The stages of the adopted analytical approach are as follows:

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis. At this stage source, title and data of the publication are identified and the source-target relationship of the analysed texts is established.

Stage 2. Context analysis. This stage of the adopted analytical approach examines the context of the analysed case study as well as the broader socio-political context of the discussed events. This stage is effective in informing the interpretation of the linguistic choices as textual evidence of constructed ideology of representation. At this stage additional intertextual data, where identified, is also discussed. This discussion is further incorporated into the final stage of the analysis – the interpretation and evaluation of the results of a case study.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis. This is the first stage in the analysis of the textual evidence of the constructed ideology of representation. At this stage thematic patterns of

the analysed news texts are examined by means of analysis of topical, textual and interpersonal themes.

Stage 4. Transitivity Analysis (dominant participants, processes and circumstances). This is the next stage of examining linguistic choices. Here, dominant participants of each of the analysed news texts are identified. Nominalisations are also analysed at this stage. Along with dominant participants, dominant process types of each of the selected news texts are analysed. Through analysis of the processes, it is possible to see how participants are represented in relation to their actions (material processes), states and relations (relational processes), cognitive (mental processes) and verbal acts (verbal processes). The term dominant is meant to indicate those processes and participants which are significant to the analysis and interpretation of the reported events.

In addition to the analysis of participants and processes, the use of circumstance is examined at this stage. Subtypes of circumstance are identified, such as those of location (time and place), manner (means) and cause (reason or purpose).

Stage 5. Modality. At this stage the use of modality in the analysed news texts is examined. Modal verbs, modal adjuncts and other relevant modal expressions of probability, possibility, certainty, obligation or desirability, which contribute to the construction of an ideology of representation are identified and discussed.

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation of the constructed ideology of representation. This is the final stage of the adopted analytical approach. At this stage textual evidence is evaluated and interpreted in the context of the discussed military and political events. Through analysis of these, the constructed ideology of representation for each analysed new text is examined and evaluated. At each stage of the analysis the linguistic elements of the TT are examined first, with the analysis of the ST being conducted subsequently. Such a presentation, where analysis of the TT is followed by that of the ST, is not traditional in the area of translation studies. In this thesis, however, the process has been dictated by the focus of the analysis on the context of the events at Stage 2 discussed above. This organisation of the process is also determined by the attention paid to the representation constructed on the level of the whole text.

This section has illustrated the six stages of analysis conducted on the selected news texts. As discussed, this is aimed at uncovering the ideology of representation in the translation of news texts through the use of the SFL-based analytical approach. In news reporting, implicit evaluations and representation of ideology are embedded in the choice of linguistic elements which can be analysed by means of thematic and transitivity structure, modality and context analysis.

4.3. Conclusions

In Chapter 4, an SFL-based methodology for the analysis of the translation of news texts has been presented and discussed. This chapter has illustrated how SFL categories have been identified for use in the analysis of the presented corpus. Such analytical categories as thematic structure, context, transitivity structure and modality have been discussed and illustrated. It has also been suggested how such SFL-based translation analysis can be used to identify differences between different ideologies of representation constructed in news texts. Chapter 4 has illustrated the applications of the adapted analytical approach and analytical categories which will be further applied to the analysis of the selected corpus of data presented in Chapter 5.

Chapter 5. Data Analysis and Discussion

5.1. Introduction

The previous chapters presented the SFL-based analytical model, discussing its application to news translation and translation analysis. This chapter presents the analysis and discussion of news texts selected as the data for the purposes of the research presented in this thesis. In this chapter the application of the analytical framework is illustrated. It is further discussed in Chapter 6 focusing on the findings, applied methodology and further applications.

This chapter presents three contexts of analysis within which the case studies are analysed:

- Context 1. The South-Ossetian conflict (2008-2009):
 - Case study 1.1. The U.S. humanitarian operation in Georgia continues.
 - Case study 1.2. The security threat from Russia and its potential isolation.
 - Case study 1.3. “Ukraine is not Georgia”.
- Context 2. Instability in Somalia: drought and conflict (2011-2012):
 - Case study 2.1. The FAO call for assistance.
 - Case study 2.2. Emergency assistance to the Horn of Africa.
 - Case study 2.3. *Turkish Airlines* starts flying to Somalia.
- Context 3. The Afghanistan War (2010 and 2012)
 - Case study 3.1. The U.S. military campaign in Afghanistan.
 - Case study 3.2. Killings of civilians in Kandahar Province.
 - Case study 3.3. U.S. investigations: the case of Afghan ex-governor Abu Bakr.

The full list of news texts related to the case studies listed above is provided in Appendix 1. According to the methodological approach presented in Chapter 4, the analysis of the selected news texts in each case study is carried out in six stages. These are as follows:

- Stage 1. Case study structure analysis.
- Stage 2. Context analysis.
- Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis.
- Stage 4. Dominant participants, processes and circumstances analysis.
- Stage 5. Modality.
- Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation of the constructed ideology of representation.

Analysis of the identified linguistic features of the analysed source and target texts in the selected contexts provide evidence for understanding and interpreting ideological frameworks within which information is constructed and communicated in news reports. Each of the following sections opens with a short discussion of the analysed broader context for each case study – Context 1, 2 or 3 – followed by the six stages of the analysis mentioned above and in Chapter 4.

5.2. Analysis

5.2.1. Context 1. The South-Ossetian conflict (2008 - 2009)

On 8 August 2008, Russian troops flowed into Georgian territory and started an offensive. The reasoning behind the operation, according to the claims of the Russian leaders widely reported in the media, was to “stand up” for Russian citizens in the territory of Georgia and to recognise the sovereignty of South-Ossetia and Abkhazia. Russian leaders ignored the fact that such an operation contradicted international law. Russia was heavily criticised for its actions by the international community. As Gahrton (2010: 179) writes, “the Russian recognition of Abkhazia and South Ossetia was condemned by the European Union, the Council of Europe and most Western states”.

The Russian demonstration of power heavily affected the security of the region at the time and was a matter of concern for leaders of other countries in the region – for the rest of the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS). The South-Ossetian conflict marked the first stages of the strategy which Russia would expand a few years later in February 2014 in the CIS region. This involved the invasion of the Crimean peninsula in Ukraine, territory of yet another independent sovereign state. The justification which Russian leaders offered in the case of Georgia (to ensure that rights of the Russian “citizens” are observed) has been

presented as a reason for military intervention in the region. This justification is perceived as a threat not only by the sovereign states in the CIS region neighbouring with Russia, but also by the eastern members of the European Union. Discussing the motivations behind Russia's military intervention in Georgia in 2008 and its use of military force, Allison (2009: 173) points out:

Russian legal arguments, humanitarian claims and political rhetoric to justify this major incursion do not reliably indicate the core motivations of the Russian leadership in using military force in this particular case.

The Western media reported the response of the international community towards Russia's actions and Russia's justification of the invasion of Georgian territory. News texts of the first case study, analysed within the Georgia context, present and discuss events which took place in August 2008 when the international community, heavily represented by the U.S., was supplying humanitarian aid to the Georgian residents affected by the conflict. The discussion in case study 1.1 reflects the ways in which Russia interpreted and evaluated the involvement of the U.S. in the region. Case study 1.2 continues the discussion of the involvement of the international community and its response to Russian actions in Georgia. Case study 1.3 presents a commentary by the Ukrainian former President Viktor Yushchenko on Russia's intervention in Ukraine's presidential election campaign in the context of the events in Georgia in 2008. The commentary was provided during his interview with *The Financial Times* in 2009.

Case study 1.1 *The U.S. Humanitarian Operation in Georgia Continues*

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 1.1 is the first set of news texts analysed within the context of Russian military incursion into Georgian territory in August 2008. It consists of a potential English source (the *U.S. Department of Defense Press Service*) and a Russian target news text (published in *RIA Novosti*), both published on the 18 August 2008. The *U.S. Department of Defense Press Service* is an official journalistic source of information reporting on the U.S. humanitarian actions in Georgia. Despite the fact that the Russian news text does not provide a reference to this or any other source, the *U.S. Press Service* article is considered as a potential source due to the close correspondence between the Russian and the English

text in the way information is organised and presented. This correspondence suggests that the Russian text is based on the *U.S. Department of Defense Press Service* article. The structure of this case study is presented in Table 3.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
18.08.2008	<i>RIA Novosti</i>	“Пентагон намерен продолжать оказывать гуманитарную помощь Грузии” Literally: The Pentagon intends to continue to provide humanitarian assistance to Georgia	Target text	Russian
18.08.2008	<i>U.S. Department of Defense: American Forces Press Service</i>	“\$2 Million Humanitarian Mission in Georgia to Continue”	Source text (potential)	English

Table 3. News texts of case study 1.1 (Appendix 2 A and B) in the context of the South-Ossetian conflict.

Stage 2. Context analysis

The context of the events discussed in the news texts of the case study 1.1 is the U.S. humanitarian assistance to those affected by the military events in Georgia. As discussed earlier, Russia was seen to have violated the international law by sending its troops to Georgia. This prompted a negative response from the international community and widespread support for the people of Georgia. However, Russian leaders justified the intervention in Georgia as necessary assistance for and protection of Russian citizens in Georgian territory and those affected by Georgian powers. As illustrated in the following stages of the analysis of the news texts in this case study, the discourse promoted and supported by the Russian media at the time rejected any suggestion that Russia was behaving unjustly or unlawfully, causing unnecessary human suffering. Furthermore, within the Russian media any suggestion of international criticism was denied or omitted.

Relations between Russia and the U.S. declined following accusations from Russia that the Immediate Response exercise by the U.S. in 2008 represented assistance to Georgia. In July 2008, *Reuters* (2008) wrote:

One thousand U.S. troops began a military training exercise in Georgia on Tuesday against a backdrop of growing friction between Georgia and neighboring Russia.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

The narrative of the TT starts with the discussion of the U.S. Department of State intention to continue its humanitarian aid to Georgia. This is also the central issue in the discussion of this news text. The text continues by citing the Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman, and then follows on with the discussion of the U.S. humanitarian aid. Table 4 illustrates themes significant in the development of the narrative of the Russian TT.

Type		Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	в настоящее время (currently)	13	
		по словам Уитмана (according to Whitman)	19	
		как отметил Уитман (as Whitman noted)	22	
	unmarked	американское военное ведомство (the U.S. military)	1	
		мы (we)	4	
		США (the U.S.)	10	
		гуманитарная помощь от США (humanitarian assistance from the U.S.)	15	
			-	
Textual		кроме этого (besides)	15	
Interpersonal		none		

Table 4. Case study 1.1 TT significant themes (Appendix 2A)

The topical themes of the TT illustrate how the Russian text is focused on the discussion of the U.S. effort in assisting Georgia and its humanitarian action. Topical themes of the Russian TT text include: “американское военное ведомство” (the U.S. military; line 1),

“мы” (we; line 4), “США” (the U.S.; line 10) and “гуманитарная помощь от США” (humanitarian assistance from the U.S.; line 15). These are unmarked topical themes which refer to the U.S. and its actions as the central point of interest in the discussion.

Also marked topical themes as “по словам Уитмана” (according to Whitman; line 19) and “как отметил Уитман” (as Whitman noted; line 22) refer to the Pentagon spokesman as a representative of the course of actions that the U.S. has chosen to take. Marked topical theme “в настоящее время” (currently; line 13) emphasises the time frame and the urgency of the ongoing efforts of the U.S. humanitarian action.

There is only one textual theme – “кроме этого” (besides; line 15) which is important in constructing meaning in the TT. This textual theme introduces an additional proposition to the one made. The first proposition is the fact that a U.S. aircraft is being prepared to take off in Charleston, SC. The second proposition, which the textual theme “кроме этого” (besides) introduces, is the fact that the U.S. aid is being delivered by planes from Germany. The wider co-text is given below:

/В настоящее время в Чарльстоне (штат Южная Каролина) к вылету готовится транспортный самолет C-17 Globemaster III/ [...] Кроме этого, гуманитарная помощь от США поступает в Грузию самолетами C-130 Hercules, которые вылетают из Германии/ (line 13)

Literally: Currently in Charleston (state South Carolina) a transport aircraft C-17 Globemaster III is preparing for the flight. [...] Besides, humanitarian aid from the U.S. arrives to Georgia by planes C-130 Hercules which fly from Germany.

These two propositions are presented jointly, which suggests that humanitarian aid is being delivered equally from two geographical locations. Discussion of the ST themes will illustrate the extent to which this is a misrepresentation of the ways in which the ST refers to the delivery of the aid and the involvement of the countries.

As for interpersonal themes, none of these can be identified in the Russian TT.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text

In comparison to the Russian TT, the ST includes a higher range of topical themes, which unlike in the TT, refer not only to the humanitarian intervention but also to fighting and Russian aggression. These are presented below (Table 5):

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	marked	in addition to 130 tons of airlifted cargo
	unmarked	the U.S. military
		Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman
		we
		deliveries from U.S. aircraft
		the State Department
		surface vessels
		fighting
		Moscow
		Russian aggression
		a host of international partners
Textual	but	38
	in addition	44
	meanwhile	71
Interpersonal	none	

Table 5. Case study 1.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 2A).

The discussion in the English ST develops from the presentation of the U.S. humanitarian effort to the statement of its commitment, where an unmarked topical theme “we” is used. The emphasis here is added by means of repetition:

We are going to continue to flow in assistance (line 33).

We have been over the weekend (line 34).

and *we* will continue this week (line 34).

and we're trying to fill that need and alleviate the suffering (line 41).

Such use of the topical theme “we” reinforces the idea of the U.S. commitment to the humanitarian action as a nation.

At this point a textual theme “but” introduces an important aspect that despite all the aid delivered and the efforts taken, human suffering continues:

/But despite the steady flow of supplies,/ there remains a shortage of food, bedding, tents and other supplies in Georgia, where an estimated 80,000 people are displaced, according to U.S. Agency for International Development figures/ (line 38).

This section is omitted in the TT translation, as the Russian text only focuses on the actions of the U.S, and not on the need of humanitarian aid as a result of the incursion of Russian troops into the Georgian territory.

As with the TT, the ST continues with the discussion of the details of the aid and the transport used for its delivery. As discussed earlier, the TT presents two geographical locations from which planes with humanitarian aid take off by introducing a textual theme “*кроме этого*” (besides; line 15). In contrast, the ST uses a textual theme “in addition” (line 44) to suggest that the planes taking off in Charleston, SC are used to supplement the “twice-daily deliveries” of the U.S. aid from Germany as the main source of aid:

/Sustained flights by American C-17 Globemaster III aircraft departing from Charleston, S.C., will deliver food over the next several days,/ in addition to twice-daily deliveries by C-130 Hercules planes leaving Germany with other supplies/ (line 44).

This slight difference is important for further understanding how meaning is constructed in the two texts, and, specifically, to emphasise the support which the U.S. receives from its European partners in the context of the discussed events.

The TT narrative finishes with a discussion of the U.S. efforts to gain passage via Turkish waters for vessels engaged in humanitarian aid. However, the narrative of the ST continues discussing details of the conflict and the response of the international community. Among

the main topical themes of the ST the following can be identified: “fighting” (line 60), “Moscow” (line 63), “Russian aggression” (line 64) and “a host of international partners” (line 71; Table 5).

Importantly, a textual theme “meanwhile” used in the closing lines of the ST in that context reinforces the fact that the U.S. aid efforts have the wide support of its international partners:

/Meanwhile, a host of international partners have contributed to the U.S.-led humanitarian mission in Georgia/ Whitman said/ (line 71).

No interpersonal themes could be identified in the analysed ST.

Stage 4. Dominant participants, process types and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

As seen in the thematic structure of the analysed Russian TT, the U.S. is represented as a topical theme, meaning that one of the central participants of the narrative is the U.S. and its actions. Another is the Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman (Table 6).

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants									
	американское военное ведомство (the U.S. military)	намерено продолжать (is determined)	1						

	представитель Пентагона Брайан Уитман (Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman)			заявил (told)	3	
	мы (we)	намерены продолжать (are determined to continue)	4			
	мы (we)	делали (have been doing)	4			
	Уитман (Whitman)			сказал (said)	6	
	США (the U.S.)	доставили (have delivered)	11			
	гуманитарная помощь от США (humanitarian aid from the U.S.)	поступает (arrives)	16			
	около 125 человек военного персонала США (about 125 U.S. military personnel)				задейс твован о (are involve d)	20
	США (the U.S.)	рассматрива ет (are considering)	23			

Circumstances	для продолжения гуманитарной операции (for continuation of the humanitarian operation)	23
----------------------	--	----

Table 6. Case study 1.1 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 2B).

Process types associated with the U.S. and Bryan Whitman as its spokesman and representative are predominantly material and verbal. They are material when referring to the U.S., in order to project an action in the future and to represent the U.S. as an actor of the events. They are verbal when citing the Pentagon spokesman. For example:

/**Американское военное ведомство**, которое уже доставило в Грузию гуманитарной помощи на два миллиона долларов, **намерено продолжать** гуманитарную операцию/ (line 1).

Literally: **The U.S. military** which has already delivered to Georgia humanitarian aid worth \$2 million, **is determined to continue** humanitarian operation.

/**Мы намерены продолжать** помочь/ (line 4).

Literally: **We are determined to continue** the aid.

/**Мы делали** это в выходные и продолжим на этой неделе/ (line 4).

Literally: **We have been doing** this over the weekend and will continue this week.

/**США доставили** в Грузию предметы первой необходимости/ (line 11).

Literally: **The U.S. have delivered** to Georgia essential items.

/**США рассматривает** варианты отправки военных кораблей к грузинским берегам для продолжения гуманитарной операции/ (line 23).

Literally: **The U.S. are considering** options of sending warships to Georgian shores to continue the humanitarian operation.

/заявил журналистам представитель Пентагона Брайан Уитман/ (line 3).

Literally: **Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman told** reporters.

/сказал Уитман на брифинге в Пентагоне/ (line 6).

Literally: **said Whitman** at the briefing in Pentagon.

To discuss the humanitarian aid provided by the U.S. material and relational process types are used. For example:

/гуманитарная помощь от США поступает в Грузию самолетами C-130 Hercules/ (line 16).

Literally: **humanitarian aid from the U.S. arrives** to Georgia by planes C-130 Hercules.

/По словам Уитмана, в гуманитарной операции на территории Грузии задействовано около 125 человек военного персонала США/ (line 20).

Literally: According to Whitman, **about 125 U.S. military personnel are involved** in the humanitarian operation on the territory of Georgia.

The use of material processes associated with the U.S. as a central participant and its actions in an effort to provide humanitarian aid to Georgia reinforces the fact that the analysed TT is focused on the steps taken by the U.S. By means of material processes describing actions of the U.S. the Russian TT represents the U.S. as an active participant in the events in Georgia.

The use of circumstance of cause – significant in the context of the analysed events – as a constituent of the transitivity structure in the analysed TT contributes to the representation of the U.S. as an active participant of the humanitarian operation. For example:

/Между тем, как отметил Уитман, США рассматривает варианты отправки военных кораблей к грузинским берегам для продолжения гуманитарной операции/ (line 23).

Literally: Meanwhile, as Whitman has noted, the U.S. are considering options of sending warships to Georgian shores for continuation of the humanitarian operation.

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the source text

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	the U.S. military	has delivered	29					
	[the war-torn former Soviet republic] that	came	30					
	U.S. European Command	has granted	32					
	we	are going to continue	35					
	Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman		said	35				
	we	have been/ will continue	36					
	Whitman		said	39/50/ 56				
	we	are trying to fill	43					
	the State Department	is working	56					
	fighting	began	62					
	the conflict	fueled	64					
	Moscow	would attempt to depose	65					

	Russian aggression	could spread	66					
	a host of international partners	have contributed	73					
Circumstances	under Russian attack							31
	internationally							65
	to other parts of the region							66

Table 7. Case study 1.1 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 2B).

As with the TT, one of the central participants of the ST is the U.S. associated with the material processes and represented as an active participant (Table 7). For example:

/The U.S. military **has delivered** \$2 million worth of humanitarian aid to Georgia in an ongoing effort to relieve the war-torn former Soviet republic/ that came under Russian attack 10 days ago/ (line 29).

/The State Department **is working** necessary agreements to achieve passage through the straits of Turkey and elsewhere/ (line 56).

To refer to the U.S. actions regarding Georgia the ST also uses the participant “U.S. European Command” (line 32; omitted in the TT). This makes the connection between the U.S. humanitarian operation and the planes taking off in Germany, where the headquarters of the U.S. European Command is located. This participant is used with a material process type “has granted” (line 32) which emphasises its willingness to assist Georgia:

/In addition to 130 tons of airlifted cargo, **U.S. European Command has granted** the Georgian government in Tbilisi access to a \$1.2 million stockpile of disaster relief and medical supplies stored in Georgia/ (line 32).

This is also reinforced by the use of a marked topical theme in this clause “in addition to 130 tons of airlifted cargo” (line 32).

As with the TT, the participant “we” is used in the ST with material process types to refer to the U.S. and its commitment to humanitarian aid. However, the participant “we” (line

43) is used with the material process, representing the actions of the U.S. This use reinforces the idea of human suffering in the ST and is omitted in the TT.

/We **are going to continue** to flow in assistance/ (line 35).

/We **have been** over the weekend/ (line 36).

/and we **will continue** this week/ (line 36).

/and we're **trying to fill** that need and alleviate the suffering/ (line 43).

In both the TT and the ST, verbal process types are associated with the Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman expressing his views and opinions regarding the actions of the U.S.:

/Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman **said** today/ (line 35).

/Whitman **said**/ (line 39, 50, 56).

Unlike the TT, the ST has central participants which refer not only to the U.S. but also to Russia. Examples of these are “Moscow” (line 65) and “Russian aggression” (line 66). These participants are associated with material processes and represent Russia as an active participant to reinforce its representation as an aggressor. For example:

/Moscow **would attempt to depose** the democratically elected government in Georgia/ (line 65).

/Russian aggression **could spread** to other parts of the region/ (line 66).

To refer to Georgia, the ST uses a participant “the war-torn former Soviet republic” in the following clause:

/[the war-torn former Soviet republic] that **came** under Russian attack 10 days ago/ (line 30).

In this clause, the “victim” status of Georgia is emphasised through attribution “war-torn” and object of Russia’s aggressive actions.

“A host of international partners” is a participant of the ST which emphasises the activity of the international community and the support received by the U.S. within the discourse of international criticism of Russian military invasion of Georgia:

/Meanwhile, a **host of international partners** *have contributed* to the U.S.-led humanitarian mission in Georgia/ (line 73).

To refer to the events in Georgia, the ST uses nominalisations by means of which agency of the events is eliminated. The use of such participants as “fighting” (line 62) and “conflict” (line 64) emphasises the fact that these were military events, as a result of which civilians were affected and are now seeking aid. These are associated with material processes and represented as actors.

/**Fighting** that *began* in the breakaway Georgian region of South Ossetia on Aug. 8 broadened to include Russian attacks on other parts of the country, including Abkhazia, another heavily separatist region the conflict fueled fears internationally/ (line 62).

/As clashes escalated, **the conflict** *fueled* fears internationally/ (line 64).

The use of circumstance in the ST stresses the fact of Russian aggression in the region as “under Russian attack” (line 31) – circumstance of manner and “to other parts of the region” (line 66) – circumstance of location. The use of circumstance “internationally” (line 65) – circumstance of manner – emphasises the concern of the international community with Russia’s actions.

Stage 5. Modality

As for the use of modality in the TT (Appendix 2B), no modal operators or modal adjuncts can be identified. This stands in contrast to modal operators identified in the ST as expressing probability. These are used in the context of the concern of the international community with Russia’s actions. For example, in “Russian aggression could spread” (line

66), the modal verb “could” is used to emphasise the possible threats of Russian aggression and their associated impacts. In the context of the international response to Russia’s actions, modal verb “should (line 71) is used to express a degree of desirability/obligation regarding the message that the U.S. and its allies should send to Russia.

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

When compared to its potential English source, the Russian news text contains two points in the development of its narrative where information is omitted. The first point comes three paragraphs into the Russian text where the story switches from the discussion of the details of the U.S. aid, to that of the transport by means of which humanitarian aid is delivered to Georgia. The aspect that the Russian text fails to translate is the fact that suffering in the region persists as the shortage of supplies remains, and thousands of people are displaced.

The second aspect that the Russian text omits is the discussion of the Russian aggression, and the response of the international community to this aggression. Unlike the ST, the TT does not move further than the discussion of humanitarian aid. Similarly, the TT does not refer to any political aspects in describing the conflict. This is in contrast to those clear references in the ST such as “the democratically elected government in Georgia” (line 65, Appendix 2B), “military intervention” (line 71, Appendix 2B), or “international partners” (line 73, Appendix 2B).

The fact that the TT only focuses on the discussion of the humanitarian aid operation and omits any details regarding the conflict, its victims or the response of the international community reinforces the ideology of representation constructed in the TT. The U.S. is represented as an actor that might have a particular interest in the region, whilst any reference to the reasons why such humanitarian actions might have been needed or Russia’s aggression in the region are removed.

By contrast, in the ST, the U.S. is represented as an active donor, which seems to encourage the international community to act in response to Russia’s aggression.

As discussed in the analysis, the focus of the TT (exclusively on the U.S. actions) can be identified by the linguistic choices made. One example of this is in the choice of topical

themes, which refer to the humanitarian operation and to the U.S. Likewise, in the use of participants, the U.S. military, government and its representatives dominate. Effectively, by using a textual theme “*кроме этого*” (besides; line 15, Appendix 2A) the Russian text presents South Carolina in the U.S. and Germany as the two locations from which the U.S. equally supplies its aid. This creates confusion regarding the involvement of Germany. In addition by referring to the U.S. rather than the U.S. European Command, as the ST does, the TT eliminates the idea of the international support for the U.S. actions.

In the ST, the use of circumstances and modality reinforces the idea that the U.S. and the international community are concerned not only with the military intervention in Georgia but also with international peace and security.

As a result, the image which the ST constructs can be interpreted as the one of suffering, resulting in the need for aid and assistance for the victims of the conflict in Georgia as well as criticism of Russia’s aggression and involvement of the U.S. and its allies. The TT, on the other hand, presents events in the light of the humanitarian operation and represents the U.S. as a participant which expresses its interest in the region by contributing significant amounts of aid to its residents. In the context of Russia’s criticism of the U.S. involvement in military training in Georgia earlier in 2008, such representation of the U.S. only reinforces the idea that such criticism might have not been unmotivated.

Case study 1.2 *The Security Threat from Russia and its Potential Isolation*

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 1.2 consists of the news texts that further present and discuss events in Georgia in 2008 following the Russian incursion into the Georgian territory. This case study consists of a Russian target text which appeared in the *Euro News* on the 19 September 2008 along with two potential English source texts. The Russian text does not directly refer to any specific source. However, it does discuss a speech by the U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice. It also refers to views expressed by the U.S. Defence Secretary Robert Gates and NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer regarding Russia’s policy in the region.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
19.09.2008	<i>EuroNews - Russian</i> (newsletter)	“Делегация ООН прибыла в Южную Осетию”	Target text	Russian
		Literally: UN delegation arrived to South Ossetia		
18.09.2008	<i>U.S. Department of State Archive</i>	“Secretary Rice Addresses U.S.-Russia Relations At the German Marshall Fund”	Source text 1 (potential)	English
18.09.2008	<i>Agence France Presse</i>	“Gates Urges Caution in NATO Response to Russia”	Source text 2 (potential)	English

Table 8. News texts of Case study 1.2 (Appendix 3 A and B) in the context of the South-Ossetian conflict.

Case study 1.2 is an effective example of intertextuality in news translation and news writing – in that it incorporates information, views and discussions from a range of potential sources. The analysed TT in case 1.2 is a newsletter, which suggests that it could have potentially served as a basis for writing news texts on this topic both in and outside of Russia. In terms of the analysis being conducted here, this makes it possible to illustrate a constructed ideology of representation in a target text as it borrows, rewrites and adapts news content to construct meaning.

Stage 2. Context analysis

The events discussed in the news texts of case study 1.2 took place a month after the Russian troops invaded Georgian territory. The context for these texts is the response of the international community to Russia's actions. On the 18 September 2008 U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice gave a speech at the German Marshall Fund in Washington, D.C. addressing the issue of relations between the U.S. and Russia.

The U.S. Secretary criticised Russia for its actions towards Georgia and its behaviour in the region, stressing the country's potential diplomatic, political and even economic isolation. The full script of Rice's speech was published on the official U.S. Department of State website. In the light of these events, on the 18 September 2008 NATO defence ministers met in London to discuss a possible response to Russia's actions.

Earlier that year, in April, at a NATO Summit in Bucharest, Georgia's and Ukraine's future potential membership in the Alliance was discussed. This was in line with the focus of the Summit as the Bucharest Summit Declaration which aims "to enlarge our Alliance and further strengthen our ability to confront the existing and emerging 21st century security threats" (NATO, 2008).

It is possible that the prospect for Russia of having NATO on its doorstep propelled Russia's aggressive actions in the region. As reported in the media, this still applies as Russia continues its aggressive military action in the region in March 2014 after Ukraine's attempt to sign the EU-Ukraine Association Agreement in November 2013.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

Themes of the TT include both topical and textual themes, as Table 9 illustrates. Use of a textual theme "тем временем" (meanwhile; line 13) is crucial for contributing to the meaning of the entire text.

Type	Themes		Line
Topical	marked	в Южную Осетию (to South-Ossetia)	1
	unmarked	переговоры с Россией об увеличении числа наблюдателей ОБСЕ в Южной Осетии и расширении территории их миссии (negotiations with Russia regarding the increase in the number of OSCE monitors in South Ossetia and expansion of the territory of their mission) "уровень безопасности в грузинских деревнях"	7 - - - - - 11

	района (level of security in Georgian villages of Georgian villages of the region)	-
	госсекретарь США Кондолиза Райс (U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice)	13
	ее действия (its actions)	14
	министр обороны США Роберт Гейтс (U.S. Defense Secretary)	21
	Грузия (Georgia)	25
Textual	между тем (meanwhile)	7
	тем временем (meanwhile)	13
Interpersonal	none	

Table 9. Case study 1.2 TT significant themes (Appendix 3A).

The narrative of the TT starts with a discussion of the arrival of the UN delegation to South-Ossetia, as the headline suggests, with a marked topical theme “в Южную Осетию” (to South Ossetia; line 1). It then discusses the repercussions from the lack of any cooperation between Russia and the OSCE (Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe) introducing this by means of a textual theme “между тем” (meanwhile; line 7) and an unmarked topical theme “переговоры с Россией об увеличении числа наблюдателей ОБСЕ в Южной Осетии и расширении территории их миссии” (negotiations with Russia regarding the increase in the number of OSCE monitors in South Ossetia and expansion of the territory of their mission; line 7).

At this point in the development of the narrative a textual theme “тем временем” (meanwhile; line 13) is introduced. It is used to present the response from the international community, and specifically, the U.S. representatives. It introduces a critical representation of the U.S. authorities who they express as being ineffective, irrelevant and unhelpful to the region. This is further reinforced by the idea that the intervention on behalf of the UN and the U.S. command only seem to lead to negative results as the use of an unmarked topical theme in the previous paragraph suggests – “уровень безопасности в грузинских деревнях” района (level of security in Georgian villages of the region; line 11).

In this second half of the narrative where the response from the U.S. authorities is presented (line 13), the TT first presents the views of the U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice and then, by means of another marked textual theme “в свою очередь” (in turn; line 21),

introduces the views of the U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates. In this second half in the development of the narrative, where views of the U.S. authorities are presented the following topical themes are used: “госсекретарь США Кондолиза Райс” (U.S. Secretary of State Condoleezza Rice; line 13) and “министр обороны США Роберт Гейтс” (U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates; line 21).

To refer to Rice’s views on Russia’s actions an unmarked topical theme is used – “ее действия” (its actions; line 14). In turn, when discussing a call for caution expressed by Gates with regard to Russia, a marked topical theme is used – “к “осторожности в действиях” и “избежании провокаций” ” (to “caution in actions” and “avoidance of provocations”; line 23). In the closing line of the TT, the narrative returns to the discussion of Georgia by means of an unmarked topical theme “Грузия” (Georgia; line 25) in the context of its potential membership in NATO.

In the analysed TT only cases of the use of topical and textual themes can be identified as no interpersonal themes are used.

Thematic structure analysis of source text 1

For purposes of analysing Rice’s speech as a potential source text for the Russian TT, two abstracts from the speech have been chosen which contain information referred to in the TT. Appendix 3A presents an analysis of each abstract according to their thematic structure. In Abstract 1, Russia’s aggressive actions and details of the conflict are discussed. In Abstract 2, Rice discusses the potential isolation and international irrelevance of Russia.

Abstracts 1 and 2 correspond to the content of the Russian TT where first Russia’s isolation is discussed (line 15) which corresponds to Abstract 2, and Rice’s quote (line 16) provided in the TT is a translation from Abstract 1.

Among the topical themes of Abstract 1 of ST1 the following can be identified (Table 10). These include those themes which introduce the discussion of the conflict in Georgia, as well as Russia’s aggressive actions and aspirations (Table 10).

Type		Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	what is more disturbing about Russia's actions	53	
	unmarked	the causes of the conflict	27	
		the United States and our allies	30	
		the conflict in Georgia	34	
		all sides	34	
		thousands of innocent civilians	42	
		Russia's leaders	43	
		the ceasefire agreement	44	
		other actions of Russia	46	
		the picture emerging from this pattern of behaviour	60	
Textual		and	34	
		but	40	
Interpersonal		indeed	31	
		clearly	34	
		regrettably	38	

Table 10. Case study 1.2 ST1, Abstract 1 significant themes (Appendix 3A).

An unmarked topical theme “thousands of innocent civilians” (line 42) introduces a clause that reinforces the criticism of Russia's actions as it refers to the effect of the conflict on peaceful civilians. A marked topical theme is used to reflect Russia's aggression, where the whole clause is thematised – “what is more disturbing about Russia's actions” (line 53). In this context, an unmarked topical theme “the picture emerging from this pattern of behaviour” (line 60) adds to the emphasis of Russia's aggressive pattern of behaviour regarding Georgia and other countries in the region, as emphasised by Rice throughout her speech.

Among the textual themes used in Abstract 1 “and” and “but” can be identified. The textual theme “and” (line 34) is used as a discourse connector. Importantly, the textual theme “but” (line 40) is used to emphasise the fact that events in Georgia prior to the incursion were already “troubling”, but what made things worse was Russia's military intervention:

/But the situation deteriorated further when Russia's leaders violated Georgia's sovereignty and territorial integrity/ (line 40).

Due to the fact that ST1 is a speech, it is more expressive and overt in its use of evaluative language than the two analysed news texts – TT and ST2. As a result, in Abstract 1 the following interpersonal themes can be identified: “indeed” (line 31), “clearly” (line 34) and “regrettably” (line 38). These are interpersonal themes which only reinforce the U.S. Secretary of State’s concern regarding Russia and its actions.

In the translation, quoting Rice, the TT omits the following information “and its persecution – and worse – of Russian journalists, and dissidents, and others” (line 58):

TT:

Я говорю, помимо других вещей, и о запугивании Россией своих суверенных соседей, об использовании газа и нефти в качестве политического оружия, ее одностороннем выходе из договора о нераспространении обычных вооружений, ее угрозе применить против миролюбивых наций ядерное оружие, а также о продаже вооружений государствам и группам, угрожающим международной безопасности. (line 16)

Literally:

I’m talking about, among other things, and about Russia’s intimidation of its sovereign neighbours, about its use of oil and gas as a political weapon, its unilateral suspension of the CFE Treaty, its threat to use nuclear weapons against peaceful nations, and also about its arms sales to states and groups that threaten international security.

ST1 (Abstract 1):

I’m referring, among other things, to Russia’s intimidation of its sovereign neighbors, its use of oil and gas as a political weapon, its unilateral suspension of the CFE Treaty, its threat to target peaceful nations with nuclear weapons, its arms sales to states and groups that threaten international security, and its persecution – and worse – of Russian journalists, and dissidents, and others. (line 58)

The topical themes of Abstract 2 of ST1 include themes which refer to Russia and its nationals, who might be potentially affected by Russia’s foreign policy (Table 11). Further

topical themes emphasise the involvement of the international community and the need for its responsive actions. The examples, “our strategic goal” (line 85) and “accomplishing this goal” (line 87) can be identified.

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	marked	with such growing prosperity and opportunity
	unmarked	Russia's leaders
		the bases of Soviet power
		most Russians
		the Russian people
		Russia's attack on Georgia
		its democracy/its economy/ its independence/ its
		military
		our strategic goal
		their choices
Textual	but	80
	And for what?	79
Interpersonal		

Table 11. Case study 1.2 ST1 Abstract 2 significant themes (Appendix 3A)

In addition, the marked topical theme “with such growing prosperity and opportunity” (line 71) is used. It reinforces the optimism which Rice expresses towards Russia's citizens and the progress that they have achieved in many areas of life. Used as a marked theme this topical theme also emphasises the fact that any isolation which may result from Russia's foreign policy will not be approved of by Russians who, according to Rice, have come so far since the fall of the Soviet power.

To reinforce the idea of Russia's positive achievements that might be compromised by its actions, a repetition of “its” in the following topical themes is used. These topical themes refer to Georgia and its economic, political and military strength which, as Rice emphasises, will eventually rebuild itself:

/Its democracy will endure./ Its economy will be rebuilt./ Its independence will be reinforced./ Its military will, in time, be reconstituted/ (line 81).

An important textual theme used in Abstract 2 include is “but” as in the given context it reinforces the idea of Georgia’s ability to restore its strength despite Russia’s attack:

/But Georgia has survived/ (line 80).

As for interpersonal themes, the whole clause “And for what?” (line 79) can be identified. Similarly to the topical themes “its democracy”, “its economy” etc. (line 81) and the textual theme “but” (line 80), this interpersonal theme reinforces Rice’s idea that actions of Russia will not only hinder the development of other countries and nations for some time to come, but, ultimately, have a negative effect on Russia’s own progress and political relevance in the international arena.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text 2

Among the topical themes of ST2 the following themes can be identified (Table 12).

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	asked if the shifting security concerns would make it more difficult to maintain NATO’s commitments in Afghanistan	136 - -
	U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates	92
	worries about Russia	95
	some member countries	96
	the transatlantic alliance	96
	those who are currently in NATO	98
	Gates’s comments	103
	such a solution	110
	that promise	117
	NATO	117
	flexible, expeditionary forces, rather than static Cold War defences	122 -
	we	127
	the Baltics and eastern European countries	133

	De Hoop Scheffer Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance	138 141 -
Textual	however because	114 127
Interpersonal	even though	96

Table 12. Case study 1.2 ST2 significant themes (Appendix 3A).

These are topical themes that refer to the central issues discussed throughout the ST2. These are the concerns of the Baltics and the Eastern European countries over their security and the defensive abilities of NATO in the wake of Russia's military intervention in Georgia. The narrative starts with the discussion of the caution expressed by the U.S. Defense Secretary regarding NATO's response to Russia's actions. It is introduced by the topical theme "US Defence Secretary Robert Gates" (line 92). It then continues suggesting reasons underlying the need for cautious behaviour introduced with such topical themes as "worries about Russia" (line 95) and "some member countries" (line 96). At this point in the narrative an interpersonal theme "even though" (line 96) is used to reinforce the idea that NATO has no need to change its policy, and most importantly that Russia does not pose any serious threat to any of the NATO member states:

/Gates also said/ worries about Russia should have little impact on NATO's military commitments in Afghanistan,/ **even though** some member countries argue/ the transatlantic alliance should now look to threats closer to home/ (line 95).

This is further reinforced by a marked topical theme in the following set of clauses:

/Asked if the shifting security concerns would make it more difficult to maintain NATO's commitments in Afghanistan,/ Gates said/ he thought/ it would have "very little impact"/ (line 136).

The narrative then develops with the discussion of the views expressed by the NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer regarding the NATO policy. This is introduced by means of a topical theme "such a solution" (line 110). Importantly, at this point in the narrative a textual theme "however" is introduced reinforcing the idea that NATO will

continue its support for the democratic aspirations of Georgia as well as in its potential membership in NATO:

/However, he urged continuing support for a democratic Georgia,/ which together with Ukraine was promised eventual NATO membership at an alliance summit in Bucharest in April/ (line 114).

When compared to the corresponding information in the TT, this clause constructs quite a different ideology of representation. In the TT information on Georgia's potential NATO membership is presented:

/Там же генеральный секретарь Альянса Яап де Хооп Схеффер отметил, что/ Грузия “в конечном счете станет членом НАТО”/ (line 25).

Literally: There NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer noted that Georgia “eventually will become a NATO member”.

Differences in the constructed ideology of representation in the clauses of the ST and the TT which discuss Georgia's NATO membership will be further illustrated by means of analysis of processes and participants.

Following the discussion of Georgia's potential membership in NATO the narrative returns to Gates' caution regarding NATO's response to Russia by quoting Gates where the following topical themes can be identified: “NATO” (line 117), “flexible, expeditionary forces, rather than static Cold War defences” (line 122) and “we” (line 127) referring to NATO. A textual theme “because” (line 127) is used to reinforce the idea that the need for caution is not a result of changes in the NATO policy but a response to its member countries in the Baltics and Eastern Europe:

/“I think we need to proceed with some caution/ because there is clearly a range of views in the alliance about how to respond, from some of our friends in the Baltics and eastern Europe to some of the countries in western Europe,” Gates said/ (line 127).

In the closing lines of ST2, the discussion returns to Georgia's potential membership in NATO. An unmarked topical theme is used to suggest a reason behind Russia's recent aggression in the region:

/Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance have deeply angered Moscow,/ which objects to its Cold War foe moving hardware into its backyard/ (line 141).

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

Among the participants used in the TT, those which refer to officials from Georgia, U.S. and NATO as well as to negotiations between OSCE and Russia can be identified (Table 13).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Rela tion al	Line
Participants	делегация ООН (UN delegation)	прибыла (arrived)	1					
	переговоры с Россией (negotiations with Russia)	не привели (have not led)	7					
	вспышки насилия (outbreaks of violence)	происходят (occur)	10					
	уровень безопасности (the level of security)		вызывае т сомнени е (evokes doubt)	11				
	госсекретарь США Кондолиза Райс				предупре дила (warned)	14		

(U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice)							
глава Пентагона (the head of the Pentagon)				призвал (called)	24		
секретарь Альянса Яап де Хооп Схеффер (NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer)				отметил (noted)	26		
Грузия (Georgia)	станет (will become)	28					

Circumstances	в Южную Осетию (to South Ossetia)	1
	через месяц после военного конфликта (a month after the military conflict)	5
	на встрече в Лондоне (at the meeting in London)	25

Table 13. Case study 1.2 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 3B).

These participants are associated with material, verbal, mental and relational processes. Material process types are used in two cases. First, a material process type is used when referring to the arrival of the OSCE representatives in Georgia where UN delegation is represented as an actor:

/В Южную Осетию **прибыла** с двухдневным визитом **делегация ООН**/ (line 1).

Literally: **UN delegation arrived** to Georgia with a two-day visit.

In the second case, material processes are used to reinforce the fact that negotiations have not brought any positive results for those affected by the events in Georgia. In this case nominalisations are used to eliminate the agency of the actual actors of the events:

/Между тем **переговоры с Россией** об увеличении числа наблюдателей ОБСЕ в Южной Осетии и расширении территории их миссии пока **не привели** к положительному результату/ (line 7).

Literally: Meanwhile **negotiations with Russia** regarding the increase in the number of OSCE monitors in South Ossetia and expansion of the territory of their mission **have not** yet **led** to a positive result.

/на границе Грузии и Южной Осетии “**происходят вспышки насилия**”/ (line 10).

Literally: on the border of Georgia and South Ossetia ‘**outbreaks of violence occur**’

This is further reinforced in the clause that follows by the use of a mental process expressing cognition:

/а также “**уровень безопасности** в грузинских деревнях” района “**вызывает сомнение**”/ (line 11).

Literally: and also “**the level of security** in Georgian villages” of the district “**evokes doubt**”.

Throughout the TT the U.S. authorities and other representatives of Western power are represented as expressing opinions, warnings and cautions by means of verbal processes. These include the U.S. Secretary of State, the U.S. Defense Secretary or NATO Secretary General. For example: “госсекретарь США Кондолиза Райс **предупредила**” (U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice **warned**; line 14), “**призвал** глава Пентагона” (the head of the Pentagon called; line 24) and “генеральный секретарь Альянса Яап де Хооп Схеффер **отменил**” (NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer noted; line 26).

Importantly, to refer to Georgia’s attempts at joining NATO the TT uses a material process type which represents Georgia’s potential NATO membership as a fact – “Грузия **станет**” (Georgia will become; line 28). The combination of the participant “Georgia” and the use of a material process type describes the view of NATO Secretary General regarding Georgia’s future. This combination makes General Jaap de Hoop

Scheffer sound determined and authoritative, reinforcing differences in interests between Russia and the West.

By using a material process type and the representation of Georgia as an actor, Russia's interests and its concern over Georgia actively seeking to join NATO are foregrounded.

The use of circumstance in the TT emphasises the time and place of the discussed events – such as circumstance of location “в Южную Осетию” (to South Ossetia; line 1) and “на встрече в Лондоне” (at the meeting in London; line 25) and circumstance of time “через месяц после военного конфликта” (a month after the military conflict; line 5)

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of source text 1.

In the analysed Abstract 1 of the ST1, mainly material and relational process types are used to refer to Russia's aggressive actions where Russia is represented as an actor (Table 14).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verb	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	the conflict in Georgia						has	36
	several key facts						are	37
	several Russian peacekeepers	were killed	40					
	Russia's leaders	violated/ launched	42					
	these events						were	42
	the situation	deteriorated	42					
	Russia's leaders	established	45					
	a military occupation	stretched	45					
	they	violated	46					
	Russia						is (not)	64

	Russians			enjoy	69			
	Russians				demand	70		
	Russian businesses	have worked	78					
	Georgia	has survived	83					
	its democracy	will endure	83					
	its economy	will be rebuilt	83					
	its independence	will be reinforced	83					
	its military	will be reconstituted	84					
	our strategic goal						is	87
	accomplishing this goal	will require	89					
Circumstances	across an internationally-recognized border							42
	with such growing prosperity and opportunity							73
	since communism							80
	on a one-way path to self-imposed isolation and international irrelevance							88

Table 14. Case study 1.2 ST1 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 3B).

The use of material processes reinforces the fact that Russia violated international law, disregarding the international community, and thereby ending the lives of many Georgian nationals. For example:

/Russia's leaders **violated** Georgia's sovereignty and territorial integrity – and **launched** a full scale invasion across and internationally-recognized border/ (line 42).

/Russia's leaders **established** a military occupation/ that **stretched** deep into Georgian territory/ (line 45).

/And they **violated** the ceasefire agreement/ (line 46).

Discussing details of the conflict, relational process types are used to identify and define the conflict in Georgia:

/The conflict in Georgia, thus, **has** deep roots/ (line 36).

/But **several key facts are** clear/ (line 37).

/These events **were** troubling/ (line 42).

In addition, passive constructions and nominalisations are used to eliminate the agency of the actual actors of the discussed conflict. For example:

/Regrettably, **several Russian peacekeepers were killed** in the fighting/ (line 40).

/But **the situation deteriorated** further when/ (line 42).

It is possible to suggest that the passive voice and nominalisations are used to keep the focus on Russia's actions and to avoid any reference to Georgia or the involvement of its troops in the initial stages which might have set off the Russian aggression. In the analysed Abstract 2 of the ST1, relational, material and mental processes are used to suggest a positive perception of Russia's nationals, their progress and development. These processes also, in contrast, create a negative representation of Russia's leaders and their actions. The following are examples of the use of relational, mental, verbal and material processes in relation to Russia's nationals and the country's development since the Soviet Union:

/Whatever its course, though, **Russia** today **is** not the Soviet Union – not in the size of its territory, the reach of its power, the scope of its aims, or the nature of the regime/ (line 64) – relational – to identify/define Russia;

/And despite their leaders' authoritarianism, **Russians** today **enjoy** more prosperity, more opportunity, and in some sense, more liberty than in either Tsarist or Soviet times/ (line 69) – mental – to represent perceptions of its nationals;

/ **Russians** increasingly **demand** the benefits of global engagement – the jobs and the technology, the travel abroad, the luxury goods and the long-term mortgages/ (line 70) – verbal – to represent Russians as expressing their views and needs;

/that **Russian businesses** **have worked** so hard to build/ (line 78) – material – to represent Russian population as actors.

Also “Georgia” is used as a participant. In this regard, its constituents describe it as a sovereign state: “its democracy”, “its economy”, “its independence” and “its military”. These constituents are associated with material and mental processes in order to represent the participants as actors and experiencers. Repetition is used to emphasise the fact that Georgia is strong enough to rebuild itself:

/But **Georgia has survived/ Its democracy will endure/ Its economy will be rebuilt/ Its independence will be reinforced/ Its military will, in time, be reconstituted/** (line 82).

To refer to the task which the international community and the U.S. in particular now have to face, the ST uses relational and material process types. These define the goals of the U.S. and its partners, representing them as active and capable of taking action. For example:

/And **our strategic goal** now **is** to make clear to Russia’s leaders that/ (line 87) – relational;

/**Accomplishing this goal will require** the resolve and the unity of responsible countries – most importantly, the United States and our European allies/ (line 89) – material.

To emphasise the fact that Russia’s military intervention contravened international law and was not recognised by the international community the following use of circumstance of location can be identified in the ST1:

/But the situation deteriorated further when Russia’s leaders violated Georgia’s

sovereignty and territorial integrity – and launched a full scale invasion across an internationally-recognized border/ (line 42).

In her speech Rice stresses the fact that Russia has come far in its progress and development since the fall of the Soviet power. However, she also emphasises that its behavior in the region undermines opportunities for its own nationals. To highlight this fact the following examples of circumstance of manner and circumstance of location can be identified – “with such growing prosperity and opportunity” (line 73); “since communism” (line 80) and “on a one-way path to self-imposed isolation and international irrelevance” (line 88).

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of source text 2

Dominant process types in the ST2 include mental, verbal and relational processes. In a few cases material processes are also used. Such process types are associated with a range of participants including the “U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates” and “NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer” as well as “member countries”, “NATO” and “Georgia” (Table 15).

Process Types	Materi al	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relation al	Line
Participants	U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates				urged	94		
	some member countries				argue	98		
	the transatlanti c alliance		should look	98				
	a democratic Georgia, which together				was promised	116		

	with Ukraine								
	Gates				emphasis ed	128			
	the Baltics and eastern European countries		are keen	137					
	De Hoop Scheffer				expresse d	141			
	NATO countries	would provide	141						
	Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance		have angered	144					
	Moscow				objects	145			
	Circumstances	in response to Russia's invasion of Georgia						94	
		since the Russian invasion						119	
		into its backyard						145	

Table 15. Case study 1.2 ST2 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances
(Appendix 3B).

Both the “U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates” and “NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer” are mainly used with verbal process types and are represented as sayers. For example:

U.S. Defence Secretary Robert Gates **urged** (line 94).

Gates **emphasised** (line 128).

De Hoop Scheffer **expressed** (line 141).

When discussing the concerns of the member countries of the Alliance in the Baltics and Eastern Europe both verbal and mental process types are used to represent member countries as engaged and to emphasise the existing concerns:

/even though **some member countries** *argue*/ (line 98) – verbal;

/which [the Baltics and eastern European countries] *are keen* to ensure/ (137) – mental.

To refer to NATO's activities, material as well as mental processes are used where NATO is represented as an actor and an experiencer:

/the transatlantic alliance *should* now *look* to threats closer to home/ (line 98).

/NATO countries *would provide* more troops to the 53,000-strong NATO-led force in Afghanistan to stem an increasingly violent insurgency/ (line 141).

To refer to the potential NATO membership of Georgia and Ukraine a verbal process type is used. In contrast to the analysed TT where a material process type is used, the use of a verbal process type in the ST2 is not as definite and emphatic. The use of a verbal process type in this case suggests that such membership is potential rather than definite. In this regard Georgia and Ukraine are represented as receivers of such information:

/a democratic Georgia,/ which together with Ukraine *was promised* eventual NATO membership at an alliance summit in Bucharest in April/ (line 116).

To refer to Russia's response to Georgia's perspectives of NATO the ST2 uses mental and verbal processes. This reinforces the representation of Russia's ambitions and its striving for power in the region:

/Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance *have* deeply *angered* Moscow/ (line 144).

/[...] Moscow,/ which *objects* to its Cold War foe moving hardware into its backyard./ (line 145).

In these examples Russia is represented as an experiencer and a sayer. Georgia's efforts are represented as the phenomenon to which Russia reacts and which it objects to.

The use of circumstance in ST2 reinforces the discourse of Russia's unlawful and aggressive actions in the region. For example: "in response to Russia's invasion of Georgia" (line 94) – circumstance of cause, "since the Russian invasion" (line 119) – circumstance of time, and "into its backyard" (line 145) – circumstance of location (place).

Stage 5. Modality

Unlike in ST1 or ST2 no use of modality can be identified in the TT. (Appendix 3B)

In ST1 a modal verb "can" is used with reference to the international community and its response to Russia's actions:

/We cannot afford to validate the prejudices/ that some Russian leaders seem to have/ (line 90).

This use ties in with the discourse constructed throughout ST1 by emphasising the fact that there will be a response from the international community and Russia's actions will not be left unnoticed.

In ST2, modality is used predominantly to highlight expectations of NATO member states in the Baltics and Eastern Europe that NATO will act to improve security in the region:

/whether NATO should continue to pursue/ (line 122).

To emphasise the certainty of the U.S. Secretary Robert Gates that Russia's actions do not present a viable threat to any of the NATO member states a modal auxiliary "should" is used:

/worries about Russia should have little impact/ (line 97).

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

The analysed TT of case study 1.2 is an effective example of a news intertextual product. Such a product results from the adaptation of content borrowed from different sources. All three analysed news texts within this case study present the discourse of Russia's potential isolation within the international arena. Whilst the TT addresses this issue, it still redirects the narrative to emphasise the interference by the international community and particularly of the U.S. In ST1, on the other hand, Russia is represented as an aggressor, whose actions can lead to its isolation and will, eventually, have a negative impact on the prosperity and opportunities of its own nationals.

In ST2, Russia is represented as an aggressor, but one which constitutes an unlikely threat to any of the member states of the Alliance. ST2 represents the aggression of Russia in the light of the caution expressed by the U.S. Secretary Robert Gates who also denies any need to change NATO policy. As presented in the analysis such representations are constructed by means of the choices of themes, participants, processes as well as circumstance and modality.

In comparison with the information presented in the analysed ST1 and ST2, the TT constructs quite a different ideology of representation. The TT appears critical of the international community and its interference in South Ossetia. It does this predominantly by pointing to a lack of positive results and by emphasising the reduced security of some Georgian villages.

Referring to the U.S. Secretary's speech, the TT points to the warning of isolation given to Russia. By contrast, the analysis of Rice's speech – in ST1 – suggests that the U.S. Secretary does not warn or threaten Russia but rather states the results which the choices that Russia makes can lead to.

In the same way, in the discourse of Georgia's potential NATO membership, NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer is misrepresented. In the TT, the NATO Secretary is represented as making a strong factual statement that Georgia will be a NATO member. As discussed in the context analysis of this case study, Georgia and Ukraine were promised NATO membership at the NATO summit in Bucharest in April 2008. ST2 brings this fact to the reader's attention while emphasising only the support expressed by the

NATO Secretary for Georgia's democratic development and not the actual fact that both countries will join NATO. The representation of the NATO Secretary General in the TT only reinforces the idea expressed in the closing lines of the ST2: that Russia is deeply unhappy with Georgia's efforts to enter NATO.

Case study 1.3 “Ukraine is Not Georgia”

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 1.3 consists of a Russian news text which appeared on a Russian news website *InoSMI.Ru*. This is a translation of an English news text from *The Financial Times*. Both news texts present an interview held by *The Financial Times* in September 2009 with the Ukrainian former president Viktor Yushchenko. The structure of this case study is presented in Table 16.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
16.09.2009	<i>InoSMI.Ru</i>	“В преддверии выборов Ющенко критикует Москву”	Target text	Russian
		Literally: Ahead of elections Yushchenko criticises Moscow		
14.09.2009	<i>The Financial Times</i>	“Yushchenko Hits at Moscow Ahead of Poll”	Source text	English

Table 16. News texts of Case study 1.3 (Appendix 4 A and B) in the context of the South-Ossetian conflict.

The Russian text is a literal translation of its English source text which is almost identical to it. However, a close SFL-based analysis effectively illustrates how only a few changes in the choice of themes, participants and processes, circumstance and modality construct a different ideology of representation, effectively misrepresenting the source text. Due to the close correspondence between the two texts, this analysis will present a comparison of the linguistic features of both texts simultaneously.

Stage 2. Context analysis

The context of the events discussed in the analysed news texts of case study 1.3 is the campaign for elections in Ukraine which took place in 2010 not long after Russian military intervention in Georgia. Ukrainian President Viktor Yushchenko gave an interview to *The Financial Times* in which he criticised Russia for its interference in Ukraine's internal politics and for its support for pro-Kremlin candidates. As a result of the poll in May 2010 in Ukraine, a pro-Russian candidate, Viktor Yanukovych heavily supported by Russia won the elections. Such an outcome of the elections was important for Russia as it could then continue exercising its interests in the region. Viktor Yanukovych was ousted from Ukraine in 2014, following which Russia's military intervention in Ukraine began.

In his criticism of Russia's interference in Ukraine's internal relations, Viktor Yushchenko emphasised that Ukraine is not the same as Georgia. By this he was referring to Ukraine's greater military and geopolitical significance. Since that time this statement has served in the media as a basis for discussions regarding the similarities as well as differences between Ukraine and Georgia. Eventually, the scenario seen in Georgia was played out in Ukraine.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis of the target and the source text

As Table 17 and Table 18 below illustrate, both texts share most of the same topical themes due to the close correspondence between the ST and the TT. These are topical themes which refer to the central issues raised and discussed by former president Yushchenko in his interview with *The Financial Times*, among them: the forthcoming elections in Ukraine, Moscow's interference and the conflict in Georgia. The difference in thematic structure between the TT and the ST is in the first theme used in the title of the two news texts. Whilst in the ST it is an unmarked topical theme "Yushchenko", in the TT it is a marked topical theme "в преддверии выборов" (ahead of poll; TT title). What is thematised in the TT is a circumstance of time which appears at the end of the clause in the ST:

/Yushchenko hits at Moscow ahead of poll/ (ST title).

By thematising elections and presenting it as a context for the interview, the TT cautions its reader against any potential bias expressed by the Ukrainian president against Russia and the candidates it supports.

Type	Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	по поводу январского газового противостояния между Киевом и Москвой (referring to January's gas stand-off between Kiev and Moscow)	28 - -
	unmarked	в преддверии ключевых президентских выборов (ahead of key presidential election)	2 -
		в интервью Financial Times (in the Financial Times interview)	5 -
		Москва (Moscow)	5
		избиратели (voters)	8
		тема вмешательства России в выборы на Украине (theme of Russia's interference in the elections in Ukraine)	10 - -
		многие в Киеве (many in Kiev)	20
		Грузия (Georgia)	35
		общеевропейское сообщество (pan-European community)	36 -
Textual	но (but)	15	
Interpersonal	none		

Table 17. Case study 1.3 TT significant themes (Appendix 4A).

Type	Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	(referring to January's gas stand-off between Kiev and Moscow)	73 -
	unmarked	a high-stakes presidential election	51
		in a Financial Times interview	53
		Moscow	53
		voters	56
		the issue of Russian interference in Ukraine's election	57 -

	many in Kiev Georgia the Pan-European community	65 79 80
Textual	but	62/67
Interpersonal	none	

Table 18. Case study 1.3 ST significant themes (Appendix 4A).

Another instance of the use of theme that changes the representation in the translation can be identified in the use of a textual theme “but”. In the TT “но” (but; line 15) emphasises the fact that the Crimea belongs to Ukraine, but its preference is for Russia:

TT:

/Г-н Ющенко говорит, что/ он ожидает, что Россия будет возбуждать сепаратистские настроения на принадлежащем Украине,/ но склоняющемся к России Крымском полуострове./ (line 14)

Literally: Mr Yushchenko says that he is expecting that Russia will stir up separatist mood on the belonging to Ukraine but leaning to Russia Crimean peninsula.

ST:

Mr Yushchenko said he expects Russia to stir up separatist sentiment on Ukraine's Russian-leaning Crimean peninsula. (line 61)

By contrast, no textual theme can be identified in the ST, and instead an adjective “Russian-leaning” is used. This discrepancy with regard to where the Crimea belongs and where, according to the TT, it would prefer to belong is foregrounded by means of a textual theme “but”.

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis of the target and the source text

Since the Russian news text is a literal translation of its English source, the focus of the following stage is on the discrepancies in the use of participants and processes between the two texts.

The first discrepancy in the choice of processes in the Russian text can be identified in the discussion of Russian interference in Ukraine's internal politics. The TT uses a material process to describe Moscow's actions (Table 19):

/В интервью Financial Times г-н Ющенко заявил, что/ **Москва начала** против Киева кампанию клеветы и может попытаться манипулировать украинским избирателем/ (line 5).

Literally: In the Financial Times interview, Yushchenko said that **Moscow started** a smear campaign against Kiev and could try to manipulate Ukraine's electorate.

In contrast, the source states that Moscow “had waged” a campaign against Ukraine's government (Table 20):

/Mr Yushchenko said/ **Moscow had waged** a smear campaign against Kiev and could try to manipulate Ukraine's electorate/ (line 54).

Due to the fact that criticism is directed towards Russia's leaders, a rather expressive material process “had waged” which suggests the fact that some form of sponsorship has been involved is substituted by a neutral “начала” (started) in the TT.

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	Москва (Moscow)	начала (started)	5						
	военного конфликта, подобного тому, который (a military conflict of	разгорелся (broke out)	16						

	the kind)							
	один из которых – Южная Осетия (one of which – South Ossetia)						оказался (turned out to be)	18
Circumstances	против российской угрозы (against Russian threat)							42

Table 19. Case study 1.3 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 4B).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relation al	Line
Participants	Moscow	had waged	54					
	a military conflict of the kind		seen	63				
	one of which, South Ossetia						was	65
Circumstances	against an increasing threat from Russia							84

Table 20. Case study 1.3 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 4B).

Another discrepancy in the choice of processes can be seen in the TT, where the mental process “seen”, referring to the conflict in Georgia in the ST, is effectively substituted by a material process type “разгорелся” (broke out) where the conflict is represented as actor and actual animate agency is eliminated:

/But he ruled out escalation into **a military conflict of the kind**/ *seen* last summer in Georgia/ (line 63).

/Тем не менее, он исключил возможность **военного конфликта, подобного**
тому,/ *который разгорелся* прошлым летом в Грузии/ (line 16).

Literally: But he ruled out a possibility of **a military conflict of the kind** that **broke out** last summer in Georgia.

By means of the material process “разгорелся” (broke out; line 16) the agency is removed and the conflict is represented as a natural occurrence. A similar case can be observed where a neutral relational process type “was” (line 66) is translated as an emphatic relational process type expressing unexpectedness – “оказался” (appeared/turned out to be; line 20):

/Moscow continues to firmly back the independence aspirations of two Georgian breakaway enclaves,/ **one of which, South Ossetia, was** at the centre of the war/ (line 65).

/Москва продолжает твердо поддерживать стремление к независимости двух отколовшихся анклавов Грузии,/ **один из которых – Южная Осетия – оказался** в прошлом году в центре войны/ (line 18).

Literally: Moscow continues to firmly back the independence aspirations of two Georgian breakaway enclaves, **one of which – South Ossetia – turned out to be** at the centre the war last year.

Such change in the relational process chosen in the TT suggests that South Ossetia accidentally happened to be in the middle of the conflict. It is clear that the South-Ossetia could not just “appear”/ “turn out” in the middle of the conflict without Russia’s assistance, however agency is placed on South-Ossetia to remove any possible suggestion of Russia’s involvement. This is a peculiar and at the same time rather common strategy adopted by the Russian media when discussing the country’s involvement in the conflicts which it has generated.

Whilst awareness of Russia’s military intervention is widespread, it is represented by the media in such a way as to remove any possible suggestion that Russia is involved. This approach has continued to be used years after the conflict in Georgia, when Russian troops took over Ukrainian territory in February and March 2014. In the Crimea, Russia’s troops appeared unidentifiable and Russian leaders as well as its media denied the fact that the troops in the Crimea were Russian.

The ideology of representation constructed in the TT is also reinforced through the use of circumstance. Looking at the phrase “against an increasing threat from Russia” in the ST, we can see that in the TT the adjective “increasing” is omitted in the circumstance of reason:

/In an open letter, politicians, artists and experts had called for western leaders to provide Ukraine with stronger security guarantees against an increasing threat from Russia/ (line 84).

/В своем открытом письме политики, художники и эксперты призывали лидеров Запада предоставить Украине более надежные гарантии безопасности против российской угрозы/ (line 42).

Literally: In their open letter politicians, artists and experts had called for western leaders to provide Ukraine with more reliable security guarantees against Russian threat.

As a result, the TT presents the Russian threat as a subjective almost prejudiced view of the Ukrainian intelligentsia. By omitting the adjective “increasing”, the TT removes any unwanted negative representation of Russia, the actions of its leaders and authorities.

A similar case, whereby the translation of a circumstance of reason reinforces the constructed ideology of representation in the TT, can be identified in the case when “Russia’s support for their candidacies” (line 91) referring to Ukrainian candidates for presidential election is translated as “поддержки России” (“Russia’s support”; line 50).

In this case, “for their candidacies” is omitted in the TT and the notion of “Russia’s support” becomes rather general. The element of meaning which might directly suggest that Russia interferes in the process of elections in Ukraine is removed and is substituted with a more general positive notion of support.

Stage 5. Modality

In the TT modality is presented in the use of the modal adjunct “вероятно” (probably) to express a degree of possibility as opposed to a more certain “is expected” in the ST (Appendix 4B):

/which the pro-western leader is expected to lose to a more Kremlin-friendly candidate/ (line 53).

/на которых прозападный лидер, вероятно, проиграет более дружественному к Кремлю кандидату/ (line 3).

Literally: which the pro-western leader will probably lose to a more Kremlin-friendly candidate.

The Russian text resorts to using a more uncertain “probably” in order to understate the idea that the pro-western candidate of presidential election in Ukraine is likely to lose to a pro-Russian candidate.

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

The linguistic choices in the TT overall serve to tone down the idea of Russia’s interference in Ukraine’s internal politics – which is also the main topic of the interview. The way Russia’s support is represented in the TT can be interpreted more positively whereas opinions expressed by the Ukrainian president appear biased and subjective. As a result, it seems that the TT not only misrepresents the image of Russia and the Ukrainian former president constructed in *the Financial Times*, it also misrepresents its source, *The Financial Times* itself, by suggesting that the representation constructed in the Russian news text is a translation of *The Financial Times* news text.

In the context of the South-Ossetian conflict and Russian aggression in the CIS region, linguistic choices made in the TT provide textual evidence for suggesting that Russia’s strive for power and interference – be it Georgia’s issue of breakaway regions or Ukraine’s presidential election – is less prominent in the TT compared to the ST. As discussed, “Russia’s increasing threat” is presented as a threat in general and “increasing” is omitted. Russia’s support for pro-Kremlin candidacies is translated as a more positive and vague “support”.

In terms of the choice of participants and processes, the TT shifts the agency from Russia as an aggressor towards South-Ossetia as an active participant. To set a context for understanding the criticism of Russia’s interference by Ukraine’s president, we can analyse the phrase “ahead of polls”. In contrast to the TT, the use of the phrase in the ST is not thematic. As a result, based on the textual evidence from the analysis of the two news texts, the ideology of representation constructed in the TT is of Ukraine’s president making

critical statements unmotivated by any external factors. The ST, on the other hand, presents Russia as an aggressor in Georgia.

4.2.2. Context 2. Instability in Somalia: drought and conflict (2011-2012)

On the 20 July 2011 on the media page of the official website for the Food and Agriculture Organization of the UN (FAO), a statement appeared declaring “a state of famine in two regions of southern Somalia, Bakool and Lower Shabelle”. (FAO.org, 2014) The famine had been caused by a period of heavy drought and exacerbated by the ongoing conflict in the region. As a response to the drought the FAO called multiple meetings to develop a plan for delivering emergency aid to the region given the conditions of the conflict.

At the time it was widely reported in the media that rebel groups were hindering the movement of food in the Horn of Africa. This denied access to emergency aid for those keenly in need. The FAO, USAID and Oxfam were heavily involved in this situation and encouraged not only emergency aid but also long-term investment and assistance in the development of the region.

As a result of the declaration, and the actions of these organisations a number of countries across the world, including Russia, provided humanitarian aid to Somalia. As the authors of an Oxfam Discussion Paper point out the aid which Russia provides is “in-kind” humanitarian aid which excludes any cash assistance and includes foods, transport, and medical supplies (Brezhneva and Ukhova, 2013). Importantly, the authors emphasise that in Russia the following attitude to humanitarian aid can be observed:

Attitudes towards humanitarian aid among the public are very mixed. Unfortunately, a large proportion of the population has a negative or ambivalent attitude towards Russia’s role as an aid donor. (Brezhneva and Ukhova, 2013:20)

The following analysis of the three case studies in the context of instability in Somalia discusses the involvement of the international community in humanitarian aid and assistance. The analysis is presented from the perspective of the events constructed in the Russian media. Case study 2.1 presents and discusses details of the FAO meeting in Rome which took place on the 18 August 2011. News texts of case study 2.2 discuss the causes and outcomes of both the drought and instability in the Horn of Africa. Case study 2.3

consists of news texts detailing the arrival of the first *Turkish Airlines* flight to Mogadishu, capital of Somalia, in the context of the instability in the region.

Case study 2.1 The FAO Call for Assistance

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 2.1 in the context of the drought, conflict and humanitarian intervention in Somalia is comprised of the analysis of two news texts. The structure of this case study is presented in Table 21. The Russian news text which appeared on the *RIA Novosti* newswire was analysed as a target news text. An article which appeared on the *FAO.org* (2011) and which has a degree of correspondence with the TT has been analysed as a potential source for this text. It is an official source of information related to FAO activity.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
18.08.2011	<i>RIA Novosti</i> <i>The International News</i> (newswire)	“ФАО призывает оказать срочную продовольственную помощь странам Африканского Рога” Literally: The FAO calls for urgent food aid to the countries of the Horn of Africa.	Target text	Russian
18.08.2011	<i>FAO.org</i>	“Meeting on Horn of Africa calls for tackling root causes of famine”	Source text (potential)	English

Table 21. News texts of Case study 2.1 (Appendix 5 A and B) in the context of instability in Somalia.

Similarly to case study 1.2 where a Russian news text in a format of a newsletter was analysed, within case study 2.1 a newswire from *RIA Novosti the International News* was examined. Analysis of news texts that perform a function of a newsletter or a newswire is effective for illustrating how they translate (use and adapt) potential target texts to construct their own ideology of representation.

Stage 2. Context analysis

News texts analysed within the case study 2.1 discuss details of the international emergency meeting organised by the FAO and held in Rome on the 18 August 2011. The aim of the meeting was to decide on the emergency aid that could be provided for the Horn of Africa. It was also convened to discuss possible methods for supplying future assistance and investment in the region in order to increase its resilience to climate change. As will be illustrated through the analysis of the linguistic features of the two analysed texts, the difference in focus which the texts place on the assistance to the Horn of Africa reinforces specific ideologies and practices of humanitarian assistance by the countries for which these texts were produced.

Importantly, as a result of the FAO emergency meeting in Rome in 2011 the “Chair’s Summary and Recommendations” were produced – “Emergency in the Horn of Africa: Follow-up and Response Actions”. This is an official document published by the FAO on FAO.org (2011) which outlines further actions for the UN, governments and international organisations involved. This text represents useful intertextual material which can aid the analyst in making evidence-based conclusions regarding the information presented at the actual meeting in Rome. The stage covering the interpretation and evaluation of the textual evidence will include an examination of how, by limiting the focus of the discussion to emergency food aid, the Russian TT misrepresents the aims of a long-term investment and assistance set out in the FAO meeting.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

Table 22 presents the significant themes in the analysed target text. These include topical themes by means of which a need for emergency food aid for Somalia is emphasised. The narrative begins with the discussion of the meeting which took place in Rome in August 2011 by presenting the views and opinions expressed by the participants during the meeting.

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	marked	по их оценкам (according to their estimates)
	unmarked	<p> дальнейшее углубление продовольственного кризиса в странах Африканского Рога (further deepening of the food crisis in the countries in the Horn of Africa)</p> <p> участники совещания (participants of the meeting)</p> <p> в результате сильнейшей за последние 60 лет засухи (as a result of the strongest in the last 60 years drought)</p> <p> продовольствие, питьевую воду и медикаменты, которые (food, drinking water and medicine which)</p> <p> эксперты ФАО (FAO experts)</p> <p> окончательный ответ на данный вопрос (final answer to this question)</p>
Textual		в частности (in particular)
Interpersonal		очевидно (evidently)

Table 22. Case study 2.1 TT significant themes (Appendix 5A).

Throughout the narrative, emphasis is placed on food aid as an immediate means of assisting Somalia. For example:

Дальнейшее углубление продовольственного кризиса в странах Африканского Рога, прежде всего в Сомали, констатировали участники специального совещания, состоявшегося в четверг в штаб-квартире Продовольственной и сельскохозяйственной организации ООН (ФАО) в Риме/ (line 1).

Literally: **Further deepening of the food crisis in the countries in the Horn of Africa**, particularly in Somalia, was noted by the participants of the special meeting which took place on Thursday in the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) headquarters in Rome.

/продовольствие, питьевую воду и медикаменты, которые нужны для спасения жизней 1,4 миллиона детей и стариков/ (line 15).

Literally: *food, drinking water and medicine which* are necessary for saving 1.4 million children and elderly people.

To reinforce the idea that drought can be considered as a root cause of the famine in Somalia, the following information is thematised:

/в результате сильнейшей за последние 60 лет засухи примерно 12 миллионам жителей этого региона угрожает голодная смерть/ (line 11).

Literally: *as a result of the strongest in the last 60 years drought* approximately 12 million people in the region are under threat of starvation.

The narrative concludes that there is uncertainty regarding how further assistance might best be provided to Somalia. By means of a topical theme “окончательный ответ на данный вопрос” (final answer to this question; line 28) the idea that the FAO meeting in Rome has not given any effective answers is reinforced:

/Окончательный ответ на данный вопрос должна дать конференция стран-доноров/ (line 28).

Literally: Final answer to this question should be provided by the meeting of donor countries.

Among textual themes, use of a textual theme “в частности” (in particular; line 22) reinforces the idea that the kind of assistance that Somalia needs is food aid. This textual theme presents rising food prices, particularly corn prices, as one of the causes of the crisis in Somalia:

/В частности, цены на кукурузу за последний год там почти удвоились/ (line 22).

Literally: Experts also note sharp rising of prices on food. In particular, corn prices have almost doubled there over the past year.

As for the use of interpersonal themes and their contribution to constructed ideology of representation, the interpersonal theme “очевидно” (evidently; line 23) foregrounds the idea that emergency assistance on behalf of the international community is what is needed to overcome the crisis:

/Очевидно, что для преодоления продовольственного кризиса на Африканском Роге требуется экстренная помощь международного сообщества/ (line 23).

Literally: *Evidently*, in order to overcome the food crisis in the Horn of Africa emergency assistance of the international community is needed.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text

Table 23 presents the significant themes in the ST. These include themes which refer to the participants of the FAO meeting in Rome and their contributions, including discussion of the ways in which assistance to the Horn of Africa needs to be provided both as an immediate as well as a long-term measure.

Type	Themes		Line
Topical	marked	none	
	unmarked	governments, UN agencies and international organizations meeting in Rome a call for a twin track approach that comprehensive, government-endorsed investment plans feeding the hungry specific immediate-term measures recommendations generated by the meeting	31 - 40 44 - 49 68 96
Textual		none	

Interpersonal	even	43
----------------------	------	----

Table 23. Case study 2.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 5A).

The analysed target news text thematises participants of the meeting to illustrate the scope of the involvement of the international community in the crisis in Somalia:

/Governments, UN agencies and international organizations meeting in Rome today urged the international community to continue their support for life saving operations in the Horn of Africa but also warned that/ food producing farmers and herders need immediate help to prevent the crisis from deepening/ (line 31).

The need for a comprehensive approach to strengthening the resilience of the Horn of Africa to similar shocks in the future is reinforced by being thematised with the topical theme “a call for a twin track approach”:

/a call for a twin track approach that involves both meeting pressing relief needs as well as addressing the root causes of the problem and strengthening the affected populations’ resilience in the face of future shocks/ (line 40).

In the context of the importance of long-term investment and assistance for the region a quote by the Vice President of the International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD) Yukiko Omura is introduced with a unmarked topical theme “feeding the hungry”:

/Feeding the hungry does not end hunger/ (line 49).

Use of the topical theme “feeding the hungry” in this context effectively emphasises the idea that even though immediate measures need to be taken to stop the crisis food assistance deepening any further, this alone is insufficient and thus long-term measures need to be considered.

The narrative of the analysed target news text concludes with recommendations. These are provided through the presentation of the meeting as a frame for further long-term actions:

/Recommendations generated by the meeting will guide international response efforts and help prepare upcoming advocacy, fundraising and coordination events to support the affected population in the region/ (line 96).

Use of an interpersonal theme “even” (line 43), where it introduces the quote by FAO Director-General Jacques Diouf, further highlights the need for a long-term investment in the region.

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

Dominant process types used in the analysed TT are verbal and material (Table 24). Due to the nature of the discussed events, namely the FAO meeting, at which participants expressed their views and perspectives on future assistance to Somalia, verbal process types are particularly frequent.

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	генератор ФАО Жак Диуф (FAO Director General Jacques Diouf)				подчеркнул (stressed)	8		
	участники совещания (participants of the meeting)				указывали (indicated)	11		
	голодная смерть (death from starvation)	угрожает (threatens)	12					
	сомалийцам (the Somalis)						остаетс я надеят	15

								ься (are left to hope)	
ситуация (situation)	будет ухудшаться я (will be worsening)	20							
эксперты (experts)					констатируют (state)	21			
Circumstances	в результате сильнейшей за последние 60 лет засухи (as a result of the strongest in the last 60 years drought)								11

Table 24. Case study 2.1 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 5B).

Verbal processes are, thus, associated with the participants of the meeting. These are used to express a range of views on the matter where the participants are represented as sayers. For example:

/генератор ФАО Жак Диуф **подчеркнул**/ (line 8).

Literally: FAO Director General Jacques Diouf **stressed**

/участники совещания **указывали**/ (line 11).

Literally: participants of the meeting **indicated**

/эксперты **констатируют**/ (line 21).

Literally: experts **state**

In addition to verbal process types, the analysed TT makes use of material and relational processes. These are used with the participants “сомалийцам” (the Somalis; line 16) as well as notions of death as an active participant:

/в результате сильнейшей за последние 60 лет засухи примерно 12 миллионам жителей этого региона **угрожает голодная смерть**/ (line 12).

Literally: as a result of the strongest in the last 60 years drought death from starvation **threatens** 12 millions residents of this region.

/По его мнению, **сомалийцам остается надеяться** только на конкретную помощь международного сообщества/ (line 15).

Literally: **the Somalis are** only **left to hope** for the specific help from the international community.

Such use of material processes in the TT constructs a negative representation of the events where the only outcome for those suffering in the region is starvation and death. Such negativity is further reinforced by the use of nominalisation with a material process type as an actor in the future tense:

/По их оценкам, **ситуация будет ухудшаться** ситуация **будет ухудшаться** как минимум до сезона дождей/ (line 20).

Literally: According to their estimates, **the situation will be worsening** at least until the rain season.

Choices of participants and processes – along with the use of themes as discussed earlier – reinforce the idea that the crisis in Somalia will only continue to deepen as it is a result of the climatic peculiarities of the region.

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the source text

As with the TT, the ST uses verbal process types to present opinions expressed by ministers and representatives of assistance agencies at the FAO meeting in Rome (Table 25). For example:

/governments, UN agencies and international organizations **urged** [...] **warned**/ (line 31).

said IFAD Vice President Yukiko Omura/ (line 51).

/WFP Deputy Executive Director Sheila Sisulu *said*/ (line 54).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	governments, UN agencies and international organizations				urged/ warned	31		
	IFAD Vice President Yukiko Omura				said	51		
	WFP Deputy Executive Director Sheila Sisulu				said	54		
	the underlying reason						is	66
	recommendations generated by the meeting	will guide	96					
Circumstances	in the face of future shocks							40
	in supporting livelihood resilience in drought prone areas							40

Table 25. Case study 2.1 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 5B).

Among other dominant process types used in the analysed ST, relational and material processes can also be identified. These refer to the support actions and measures to be taken to stop the crisis from deepening or occurring in the future. They are represented as actors and as being defined/identified. For example:

/the underlying reason for the region's vulnerability to such shocks *is*/ (line 66) – relational;

/Recommendations generated by the meeting *will guide* international response efforts and help prepare upcoming advocacy, fundraising and coordination events to support the affected population in the region/ (line 96) – material.

While the TT emphasises the need for immediate food assistance, focusing on the drought as the major cause of the famine, the ST stresses not only the need for immediate assistance but also for long-term investment. This is also achieved by using circumstance of location. For example:

/that involves both meeting pressing relief needs as well as addressing the root causes of the problem and strengthening the affected populations' resilience in the face of future shocks/ (line 40).

/which envisions investing more in supporting livelihood resilience in drought prone areas/ (line 40).

Stage 5. Modality

While the TT uses a modal adjunct “очевидно” (evidently; line 23), to emphasise the scope of the famine in Somalia and the need for emergency food assistance from the international community (Appendix 5B):

/Очевидно, что для преодоления продовольственного кризиса на Африканском Роге требуется экстренная помощь международного сообщества/ (line 23).

Literally: Evidently, in order to overcome the food crisis in the Horn of Africa emergency assistance of the international community is needed.

In the ST the use of modality, and specifically of modal verbs, can be identified as reinforcing the need to provide immediate action and to devise a long-term plan. For example:

/we should also go further and take steps to prevent future calamities/ (line 43) – quoting FAO Director General Jacques Diouf.

/To do so we must invest in the world's smallholder farmers/ (line 52) – quoting IFAD Vice President Yukiko Omura.

In this context, use of modality can also be identified as reinforcing the views of the participants of the meeting regarding the need for long-term investment. For example:

/Support for such activities should be a sustained, multi-year effort and be linked to improvements in basic services including education, health and clean water/ (line 43).

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

As illustrated in the analysis of the linguistic features of the analysed news texts of case study 2.1 TT constructs an ideology of representation different to that of its potential source. By means of linguistic choices in the use of themes, participants and processes as well as circumstance and modality it focuses on the immediate measures and omits any reference to long-term investment. Both in the ST and in the summary of the recommendations produced as a result of the FAO meeting, which can be viewed as intertext, the focus is on development and long-term assistance to the Horn of Africa as the main preventive measure.

Whilst the immediate measures are discussed at the FAO meeting, they are not viewed as an effective tool to avoid future reoccurrences of the crisis. By suggesting that immediate term measures, such as food aid, present a solution to the events in Somalia, the TT misrepresents the nature of the FAO meeting and its aim of drafting guidance as to potential future courses of action. As a result of the analysis of the discussed linguistic features of both the TT and the ST it is possible to suggest that the TT constructs a rather negative representation of the events. By means of choices of theme and circumstance, the drought as well as rising food prices are represented as root causes of the crisis. In contrast, the ST constructs an action-focused representation of the events by means of material and relational process types as well as the use of circumstance. Unlike in the TT, where circumstance is used to reinforce the idea that drought has served as a root cause of the famine, the ST uses circumstance to reinforce the importance of investment in and development of the region as the most effective preventive measure.

According to the “Oxfam Discussion paper” mentioned earlier, within the analysed context of instability in Somalia, Russia acts as an “in-kind” donor which provides aid in the form of resources such as food, medicine, equipment etc. as opposed to cash aid (Brezhneva and

Ukhova, 2013). It is, thus, possible to suggest that this could account for the focus of the Russian TT on the food aid as an aid measure. In addition, representation of climatic changes and market conditions as root causes of the crisis in Somalia shifts the focus away from the actual problems and issues faced by the region.

The analysis of case study 2.2 in this context will examine how the Russian TT reinforces the idea of the inevitability of the events in Somalia; how it omits any reference to the conflict and, instead, focuses on the natural climatic causes of the crisis in the region. Such representation fails to recognise that, in fact, inadequate governance and instability of a state can exacerbate the results of climatic changes, thereby producing detrimental effects on the livelihood of its nationals.

Case study 2.2 *Emergency Assistance to the Horn of Africa*

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

A Russian news text which appeared online in the Russian edition of the *Business World Journal* is analysed as a target text in this case study (Table 26). The analysed Russian news text provides a direct reference to the *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest* as it writes, “как сообщает “Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest”. The Russian text which appeared in the *Business World Journal* is a translation of the English news text from the *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest*. However, in adapting the source material it omits and substitutes information, shifts focus and meaning, and, as a result, misrepresents its source.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
15.09.2011	<i>Business World Journal</i>	“Восточная Африка: Продовольственный кризис”	Target text	Russian
		Literally: East Africa: Food Crisis		
28.07.2011	<i>Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest</i>	“Food Access Key as Horn of Africa Crisis Worsens, Say Agencies”	Source text	English

Table 26. News texts of Case study 2.2 (Appendix 6 A and B) in the context of instability in Somalia.

Stage 2. Context analysis

The context of the events of case study 2.2 closely coincides with that of the previous case study. The events which the *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest* presents, in fact, predate the FAO meeting in Rome, discussed in case study 2.1. However, the analysed Russian news text adapts and uses the source published online in July 2011 to produce a news text which appeared in September 2011 following the international emergency meeting organised by the FAO in August 2011.

The events discussed in both news texts of case study 2.2 relate to the famine in the Horn of Africa and the response from the international community, specifically to the official UN declaration of the famine in Somalia. UN representatives, aid agencies and experts created a dialogue around the causes of the famine and potential solutions to it. Discussion of the causes included difficulties of transporting food around the region and ineffective market mechanisms. In addition, discussions noted problems with infrastructure and, importantly, the ongoing conflict and political instability in the region were discussed.

It is undeniable that drought and failing rains partly contributed to the large-scale famine in Somalia. However, ongoing conflicts within the region increased their impact. Conflict between rebel groups and the government in Somalia was often discussed in the media reports on the famine as one of the root causes of the population's low resilience and difficulty adapting to climatic challenges.

One example of this can be seen in a news article from July 2011 entitled "Somali Rebels Deny Lifting Ban on Foreign Aid Groups". This appeared in the online version of *the Guardian* and emphasised the exacerbating effect of the conflict in the region:

Successive poor rainy seasons have caused a hunger crisis across the Horn of Africa, where 11 million people urgently need food aid. The situation is most acute in Somalia due to the ongoing conflict between pro-government forces and the al-Shabab rebels, as well as the Islamists' mistrust of outside help.

This news text published in *the Guardian* can be considered as intertext the context of the events discussed this far. As such it aids in the analysis, interpretation and evaluation of the constructed ideology of representation. *The Guardian* news text effectively illustrates the

presence and discussion of the conflict as one of the root causes of the acute situation in Somalia in July and August 2011.

In March 2014 the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) published a report on “Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability” in which the following was emphasised:

Large-scale violent conflict harms assets that facilitate adaptation, including infrastructure, institutions, natural resources, social capital, and livelihood opportunities (2014: 8).

The IPCC report (2014) warns against ignoring the impact of conflict in any region affected by the severe climatic conditions. It further states that such conflict decreases the prospects for developing and managing adaptation or improving resilience in that region. Analysis of the two news texts presented in the following paragraphs will illustrate how the ideology of representation constructed in a news text can potentially hinder adequate humanitarian assistance by misrepresenting the root causes of a crisis.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

Table 27 presents the list of the most significant themes of the analysed TT of case study 2.2 in the context of instability in Somalia. These include topical themes which refer to the key causes of the crisis in Somalia, to ways in which similar future emergencies may be prevented, and to the provision of information on the famine from representatives of some aid agencies.

Type	Themes		Line
Topical	marked	одновременно (at the same time)	26
	unmarked	ключевым направлением предотвращения гуманитарной катастрофы в регионе (key direction of preventing humanitarian disaster in the region) агентства по оказанию помощи (aid agencies)	4 - - 19

	должного передвижения соответствующих грузов (proper movement of the relevant goods)	23 -
	доступ к продовольствию (access to food)	40
	по мнению экспертов ФАО (according to the opinion of the FAO experts)	52 -
	правительственные экономисты ряда стран (government economists in several countries)	74 -
Textual	однако (however)	23
Interpersonal	none	

Table 27. Case study 2.2 TT significant themes (Appendix 6A).

Throughout the narrative, a reference to the source – *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest* – is provided and functions as a marked topical theme “как сообщает “Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest” (as *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest* informs; line 1). Potentially, to the reader this suggests a correspondence between the source and the target. However, as the analysis of the linguistic features will illustrate, the ideology of representation constructed in the TT is different to that of its source.

As a textual theme “однако” (however; line 23) can be identified. It refers to the transportation of food in the region as a cause of famine and reinforces the idea that these, in fact, are among the root causes of the crisis:

/Однако должного передвижения соответствующих грузов не обеспечивается,/ что отчасти связано с высокими транспортными расходами и удаленностью пострадавших районов/ (line 23).

Literally: However, proper movement of the relevant goods is not provided which is partly due to the high transport expenses and remoteness of the affected areas.

Use of a marked topical theme “одновременно” (at the same time; line 26) further emphasises inadequate functioning of markets as a cause of the famine:

/Одновременно сказывается и слабое функционирование местных рынков/ (line 26).

Literally: Simultaneously the impact of weak functioning markets is felt.

In the narrative of the analysed TT no interpersonal themes can be identified.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text

Similarly to the analysed TT, the following topical themes of the ST can be identified (Table 28). These refer to the key concerns and problems of the regions as well as to the causes of the crisis. Importantly, in contrast to the TT, topical themes of the ST include “conflict, as well as different climatic and agricultural conditions” (line 118) and “governments” (line 140). The use of such topical themes points to the existence and impact of political instability in the region. In addition, it reinforces the idea of government’s responsibility for preventing a crisis of the kind which took place in Somalia in July and August 2011.

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	at a global level	143
	allowing food to move freely in the region	85
	aid agencies	98
	malnutrition rates	105
	hungry people	119
	conflict, as well as different climatic and agricultural conditions	118
	-	
	a lack of physical infrastructure	127
	governments	140
Textual	meanwhile	91
	however	149
Interpersonal	normally	111

Table 28. Case study 2.2 ST significant themes (Appendix 6A).

Among other topical themes used in the narrative of the analysed ST the following marked topical theme can be identified – “at a global level” (line 143). It constructs a representation of climatic changes that will affect not only Somalia but a number of countries and regions:

/At a global level, the frequency of extreme weather events such as droughts, floods, and tropical storms is expected to increase as the levels of greenhouse gas in the atmosphere rise further in the years ahead/ (line 143).

The suggestion in the TT is that events faced by Somalia can occur elsewhere in the future. It is therefore of critical importance not only that preventative measures but also the resilience of the population are developed. In the TT, however, the focus is shifted onto Somalia. The global effects of climate change are represented as Somalia's inevitable future. In addition, a reference to the source is thematised.

In the ST, as a textual theme “meanwhile” (line 91) can be identified. It reinforces the need for the involvement of the international community and its assistance by means of keeping both international and cross-border trade open:

/Meanwhile, the head of the International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI) cautioned that/ countries need to keep international and cross-border trade open, as part of a package of short and long term measures/ (line 91).

Use of a textual theme “however” (line 149) emphasises the idea that the climate change in the region will aggravate the conditions in time. At this point, the need for the direct involvement of the government in planning and development is emphasised:

/However, “with climate change, this is going to get worse and worse.”/ Governments need to do more to make sure/ (line 149).

The interpersonal theme “normally” can be identified in the discussion of the estimated cereal production to reinforce the discrepancy between the required and the estimated amount of the food production. This serves to foreground the severity of the crisis:

/Normally, the figure would be closer to 40 percent, with regional cross border trade and sea commercial imports supplying the rest/ (line 111).

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

In the analysed TT predominantly verbal and material processes are used (Table 29).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	ООН (UN)				объявила (has declared)	2		
	агентства по оказанию помощи (aid agencies)				предупре ждают (warn)	3		
	должного передвижения соответствующ их грузов (proper movement of the relevant goods)	не обеспечив ается (is not provided)	24					
	различия погодно- климатических условий, общая ситуация в сельском хозяйстве, влияние конфл иктов между соперничающи ми группировками (Differences in weather and climate conditions, general situation	сказывают ся (have an effect)	43					

in the agriculture, influence of conflicts between rival factions)							
P. Келли (R. Kelly)				рекомендует (advises)	72		
правительственные экономисты ряда стран (government economists of a number of countries)	изучают (are studying)	77					
эксперты (experts)				утверждают (state)	84		
Circumstances	в условиях обострения продовольственного кризиса в Восточной Африке (in the conditions of the deteriorating food crisis in Eastern Africa)					1	

Table 29. Case study 2.2 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 6B).

Verbal processes of the TT are associated with such participants as aid agencies, their representatives and other experts whose perspectives are presented in the text and which are represented as sayers – “ООН *объявила*” (UN *has declared*; line 2), “агентства по оказанию помощи *предупреждают*” (aid agencies *warn*; line 3), “Р. Келли *рекомендует*” (R. Kelly *advises*; line 72) and “эксперты *утверждают*” (experts *state*; line 84).

Material processes are mainly associated with the use of inanimate actors. This servers to reinforce the idea of the negative effects of the market and climate conditions as well as eliminating the agency of the actual actors. For example:

/Однако **должного передвижения соответствующих грузов не обеспечивается** (line 24).

Literally: However, **proper movement of the relevant goods is not provided.**

/Сказываются различия погодно-климатических условий, общая ситуация в сельском хозяйстве, влияние конфликтов между соперничающими группировками/ (line 43).

Literally: **Differences in weather and climate conditions, general situation in the agriculture, influence of conflicts between rival factions have an effect.**

Importantly, the TT substitutes the participant “many governments” used in the ST for the phrase “government economists”. This places the focus on individual economists by limiting the involvement of governments of other countries:

TT:

/Правительственные экономисты ряда стран изучают возможности региональной торговой интеграции (в рамках таможенных или валютных союзов) в деле обеспечения лучшего взаимодействия между сельхозпроизводителями и рынком/ (line 77).

Literally: **Government economists of a number of countries are studying** possibilities of regional trade integration (in terms of customs or trade unions) in the case of providing an improved interaction between agricultural producers and the market.

ST:

/Many governments are currently **exploring** whether/ regional trade integration - customs or monetary unions – may represent a way to better link agricultural producers with markets/ (line 162).

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the source text

As with the TT, the ST uses verbal and material process types. The use of verbal process types is associated with a range of views expressed by aid agencies, their representatives and experts on the crisis in Somalia (Table 30).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	the UN				has declared	87		
	aid agencies				are warning	88		
	food security experts				explained	122		
	conflict, as well as different climatic and agricultural conditions						are	122
	governments		need to do	154				
	many governments	are exploring	162					
Circumstances		from deteriorating further						89
		with deaths of children under five exceeding 6 per 10,000 per day in some areas						111
		at a global level						147

Table 30. Case study 2.2 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 6B).

In contrast to the TT, participants in the ST include government and conflict. These are associated with material as well as mental and relational processes. Such use of participants contributes to an ideology of representation within which inadequate governance and instability are emphasised as causes of the crisis in the Horn of Africa. Examples of these are the following:

/Conflict, as well as different climatic and agricultural conditions, *are* amongst the factors affecting whether / (line 122) – relational;

/Many governments *are* currently *exploring* whether/ (line 162) – material.

By means of a circumstance of manner the ST suggests that food aid should be provided but that its effect will be limited to stopping the crisis from worsening. However, in the TT food aid is presented as the key to preventing the crisis:

ST:

key to preventing the humanitarian situation from deteriorating further (line 89).

TT:

ключевым направлением предотвращения гуманитарной катастрофы (line 4).

Literally: key direction of preventing humanitarian disaster.

When discussing malnutrition rates in the Horn of Africa, the TT omits the circumstance “with deaths of children under five exceeding 6 per 10,000 per day in some areas” (line 111). In the ST this circumstance emphasises the severity of the crisis.

In addition, the circumstance of location “at a global level” (line 147) used in the ST is omitted in the TT. In consequence, the focus is shifted from the potential impact of the climate changes onto the discussion of Somalia and its, presumably, inevitable fate.

Stage 5. Modality

As for the use of modality, a close correspondence between that of the TT and the ST can be observed (Appendix 6B). For example, in the discussion of possible measures for the transportation of food and the potential negative results these may have, modality of the ST is used in the following quote and is reiterated in the TT:

ST:

/While such bans may help secure the domestic food supply/ (line 99).

TT:

/Такие ограничения могут содействовать улучшению снабжения продуктами питания в стране/ (line 17).

Literally: Such restrictions may assist the improvement in the food supply in the country.

Such use of a modal verb “may” expresses a possibility that the bans discussed in both texts could improve the domestic food supply. In contrast, when used in the construction with “while” in the ST, it emphasises the fact that such bans will have negative impacts on the transportation of food in the area.

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation.

In contrast to the ST, the famine in the TT is not represented as a result of an ongoing conflict in the region, but as a natural disaster: as an outcome of the climatic changes. This is made most prominent in the final paragraphs of the TT where the discussion is focused on the climate change, and the responsibility which the government should take – as discussed in the ST – is omitted. Unlike the Russian TT, the English ST emphasises possible ways of preventing future disasters by suggesting that the government should take control of the situation. The TT chooses not to focus on the discussion of the conflict as one of the root causes of the crisis, unlike the intertext news article from *the Guardian* discussed earlier.

Through its choices of themes, participants and processes as well as circumstance the TT presents climate change as a one of the root causes of the famine in the Horn of Africa. In contrast the ST points out that the climate change poses “additional risks” (line 143, Appendix 6B). As discussed, through its choices of participants and processes the TT limits its representation of the level of government involvement necessary for overcoming the crisis. As a result, the ideology of representation constructed in the TT revolves around the issues of climate change, global warming and the inadequately functioning markets. Conflict and government involvement are not presented as central points of the discussion.

In contrast, the textual analysis shows that the ST emphasises the need for government involvement and suggests that, despite climate change, similar crises can be avoided.

The representations of reality constructed in the ST and reconstructed in translation can lead readers to different conclusions regarding the forms that humanitarian intervention should take. Shaw (2007: 351) argues that this applies to news texts which use historical frames to represent wars:

Historical fames [...] we often find in news media discourse can skew the way we perceive distant wars. This can have far-reaching implications for international humanitarian interventions within a cosmopolitan framework.

Following the analysis of the news texts of case study 2.2 it is possible to argue that news texts can have such an effect by foregrounding some causes of a crisis suffered by a region in need of humanitarian intervention while pushing others into the background. As discussed, causes of the crisis which the analysed TT foregrounds suggest that the crises could be solved through food aid and regulation to create a functioning market system. Conclusions which can be drawn from the ideology of representation constructed in the ST are, however, different. According to the ST, adequate governance in the region and conflict resolution are among the measures which may prevent a similar crisis in the future.

Last but not least, the analysed TT misrepresents the ST not only through the expressive choices mentioned above, but also by misrepresenting the time frame of the events. Published on the 15 September 2011, the TT retains the circumstance “в ближайшие два месяца” (in the nearest two months; line 8, Appendix 6B). This information was used in the ST which was published on the 28 July where such circumstance refers to the August and September. As it is left unchanged in the TT, the meaning communicated to the reader is that the famine will continue spreading in October and November. In the ST this appears as follows:

/Mark Bowden, the UN’s Humanitarian Coordinator for Somalia, cautioned that/ inaction would mean that famine could spread to all eight regions of southern Somalia within two months, due to poor harvests and infectious disease outbreaks/ (line 93, Appendix 6B).

Case study 2.3 Turkish Airlines Starts Flying to Somalia

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 2.3 consists of two news texts which present the details of the first European flight to the capital of Somalia (Table 31). The text analysed as a target in this case study is a Russian news text which was published on the website of the Russian broadsheet newspaper *Izvestia.ru*. This news text refers to the *BBC News* and provides a hyperlink to this source. Thus, this *BBC* news text is analysed as a source. Both news texts appeared online the day after the *Turkish Airlines* flight from Istanbul landed in Mogadishu. The analysed Russian news text is effectively a shorter and more concise summary of the events. The Russian news text summarises and adapts information presented in the source constructing an ideology of representation of the events different from that of the source.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
06.03.2012	<i>Izvestia.ru</i>	“В Сомали пришел крупный авиаперевозчик впервые за 20 лет гражданской войны”	Target text	Russian
		Literally: To Somalia a major aircraft came for the first time in 20 years of civil war.		
06.03.2012	<i>BBC News</i>	“Somalia: Turkish Airlines begins flights to Mogadishu”	Source text	English

Table 31. News texts of Case study 2.3 (Appendix 7 A and B) in the context of instability in Somalia.

Stage 2. Context analysis

Events presented in the analysed news texts fit into the context of instability in Somalia – the ongoing conflict and control of the region by the militant group Al Shabaab. In a case study commissioned by the Center for Strategic and International Studies (CSIS), Wise (2011: 1) defines Al Shabaab as “an al Qaeda-affiliated organization that has risen rapidly to prominence in the midst of Somalia’s decades-long anarchy”.

Analysing the development of al Shabaab, which rose as a result of poor governance, Wise (2011) examines transformations which this organisation has undergone over the years. Since 2008, according to Wise (2011), al Shabaab has been functioning as “a hybrid movement that has increasingly embraced transnational terrorism and attempted to portray itself as part of the al Qaeda-led global war against the West” (Wise, 2011: 1).

As a result of an ongoing conflict Somalia had been cut off from access to Europe and the rest of the world for many years. In the press release published on the official website of the *Turkish Airlines* the flight was described as the “*Turkish Airlines*’ first flight to Mogadishu, Somalia and the first service to the Somali capital by any European airline” (Turkish Airlines.com, 2014). Despite instability in the country’s security, the first *Turkish Airlines*’ flight signified the development of links between Somalia and the rest of the world, as well as opportunities of investment and development which such links could bring to the region.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

The significant themes of the TT are presented in Table 32. These topical themes structure the narrative around the arrival of the first European flight to the capital of Somalia and the officials and authorities involved. They include the marked topical theme “как передает BBC” (as BBC reports; line 5), which emphasises the source of the information. The use of a marked topical theme “впервые за 20 лет” (for the first time in 20 years; line 1) suggests the conditions of insecurity in the region by providing a time frame within which there were no flights to Somalia. In addition, by means of an unmarked topical theme “последняя” (the latter; line 13) which refers to the al Shabaab group an ideology of representation of the events discussed in the TT is constructed.

Type	Themes		Line
Topical	marked	впервые за 20 лет (for the first time in 20 years) как передает BBC (as BBC reports)	1 5

	unmarked	заместитель премьер-министра Турции Бекир Боздаг (Turkish deputy prime minister Bekir Bosdag) самолет (plane) последняя [боевая группировка “Аль-Шабааб”] (the latter [militant group Al-Shabaab])	3 - 8 13 -
Textual		также (also) с одной стороны (on the one hand)/ с другой (on the other)	6 10 -
Interpersonal		none	

Table 32. Case study 2.3 TT significant themes (Appendix 7A).

Discussing the security measures implemented by the authorities in Somalia in preparation for the arrival of the *Turkish Airlines* flight, the TT uses a textual theme “также” (also):

/Также на основных подъездах к воздушному порту появились дополнительные блокпосты/ (line 6).

Literally: Also at the main entrances to the airport additional roadblocks appeared.

This textual theme reinforces the emphasis which the TT places on the security measures taken by the Somali officials. Unlike in case study 2.1 and 2.2 where the impact of the ongoing conflict and instability in the region is underrepresented, the TT in case study 2.3 presents the ongoing conflict as a security hazard for the *Turkish Airlines* flight. The stage involving the interpretation and evaluation of the linguistic features of the two texts analysed within this case study will include a discussion of how such representation informs an ideology of representation constructed in the TT which differs from that of the ST.

As for the use of textual themes, the TT uses the following to present the conflict and the parties involved, namely the government and the al Shabaab group.

/С одной стороны, в этом африканском государстве имеется светское правительство,/ с другой — подразделение «Аль-Каиды», боевая группировка «Аль-Шабааб», исповедующая радикализированный вариант законов шариата/ (line 10).

Literally: On the one hand, in this African state there is secular government, on the other – a subdivision of al Qaeda, militant group al Shabaab professing a radicalised version of the Sharia law.

A thematic analysis of the TT identifies no interpersonal themes.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text

The themes of the ST (Table 33) correspond by and large to the themes of the analysed TT.

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	marked	none
	unmarked	Turkish Airlines 15 Turkey's Deputy Prime Minister Bekir Bosdag 17 Islamist militants 23 security 26 the start of the service 35 world leaders 37 Somali Foreign Minister Abdullahi Haji 50 [al-Shabab, the Islamist group] which joined al-Qaeda 58 last month -
Textual		although 24 but 60
Interpersonal	none	

Table 33. Case study 2.3 ST significant themes (Appendix 7A).

In the context of security risks and the ongoing conflict, the idea of the support of the international community and the positive prospects of the region are reinforced in the TT by means of an unmarked topical theme “world leaders” (line 37):

/World leaders have pledged to boost support for measures to fight piracy, terrorism and political stability in Somalia by substantially increasing international

funding for the African Union military operation in the country and working more closely together/ (line 37).

The use of textual themes “although” and “but” reinforce the idea that al Shabaab still exercises its control in the region which has an impact on the level of security there.

/although they have continued to stage attacks in the city/ (line 24).

/But the group still controls much of southern and central Somalia/ (line 60).

As in the TT, no interpersonal themes can be identified in the ST.

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

To present events discussed previously and refer to the actions of the rebel groups in the region, the TT uses material process types. These are used to present the arrival of the flight, to discuss the increased security measures and to describe the control exercised by the al Shabaab in some parts of southern Somalia (Table 34).

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	борт крупной коммерческой авиакомпании (an aircraft of a major commercial airline)	приземлился (landed)	1						
	сомалийские силовики (the Somali forces)	усилили (increased)	6						
	светское правительство (secular government)/ подразделени						is		10

	е «Аль-Каиды», боевая группировка «Аль-Шабааб» (a subdivision of al Qaeda, militant group al Shabaab)							
	последняя (the latter [al Shabaab])	контролирует (controls)	13					
Circumstances	в свете последних терактов (in the light of recent terror attacks)							5

Table 34. Case study 2.3 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 7B).

Such participants are represented as actors of the discussed events. For example:

/Впервые за 20 лет **борт крупной коммерческой авиакомпании приземлился** в аэропорту Могадиши, столицы раздираемого войной Сомали/ (line 1).

Literally: First time in 20 years **an aircraft of a major commercial airline landed** in Mogadishu airport, the capital of the war-torn Somalia.

/Как передает BBC, в свете последних терактов накануне прилета важного борта **сомалийские силовики усилили** меры безопасности в самом аэропорту/ (line 6).

Literally: As BBC reports, in the light of recent terror attacks the day before the arrival of the important flight **the Somali forces increased** security measures at the airport.

/Последняя де-факто **контролирует** юг страны/ (line 13).

Literally: **the latter [al Shabaab]** de facto **controls** the south of the country.

Relational processes can also be identified. In the following example the use of a relational process identifies the al Shabaab presence in the region as the power equal to that of the existing government:

/С одной стороны, в этом африканском государстве **имеется светское правительство**, с другой — **подразделение «Аль-Каиды», боевая группировка «Аль-Шабааб»**,/ исповедующая радикализированный вариант законов шариата/ (line 10).

Literally: On the one hand, in this African state there **is secular government**, on the other – a **subdivision of al Qaeda, militant group al Shabaab** professing a radicalised version of the Sharia law.

Analysis of dominant participants, processes types and circumstances of the source text

As with the TT the analysed ST uses material process types to discuss actions taken by the militant group in the region (Table 35). For example:

/although **they have continued to stage attacks** in the city/ (line 24).

However, unlike the TT, the ST also uses material process types to construct a rather positive representation of the event. To reinforce the development opportunities which the introduction of the service can bring to Somalia material processes are used in the TT. For example:

/We **will connect** the Somali people to the rest of the world/ (line 46).

/in the near future **Somalia will become** a stable place, a very normal country/ (line 47).

/the service **would improve** links between the international community and Somalia/ (line 49).

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	they	have continued to stage attacks	24						
	the Somali capital						was	33	
	we	will connect	46						
	Somalia	will become	47						
	the service	would improve	49						
	Mogadishu's international airport						was	55	
Circumstances		now/from neighbouring countries						54	

Table 35. Case study 2.3 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 7B).

Within the discourse of the positive developments for Somalia relational processes are also used to identify Somalia as it was perceived in the past. For example:

/the Somali capital **was** a no-go area/ (line 33).

/but for many years **Mogadishu's international airport was** out of action, controlled by rival militia groups/ (line 55).

Such use of a relational process in the past tense suggests an idea of the progress and current change occurring in both the political and social environment in the region.

The use of circumstances of location (time and place) in the ST reinforces the discourse of the progress. For example:

/Several private East African airlines, including Kenya-based African Express, now fly into Somalia from neighbouring countries/ (line 54).

As for the use of circumstance in the TT, it effectively reinforces the constructed ideology of representation in which Somalia is represented as a “no-go” area. The following

example illustrates how – by means of foregrounding a circumstance of location “в свете последних терактов” (in the light of recent terror attacks; line 5) – the TT emphasises the high security risks in Somalia. Importantly, by referring to the *BBC News* the report suggests that this is the context and the representation which the *BBC News* text constructs:

/Как передает BBC, в свете последних терактов накануне прилета важного борта сомалийские силовики усилили меры безопасности в самом аэропорту/ (line 5).

Literally: As BBC reports, in the light of recent terror attacks the day before the arrival of the important flight the Somali forces increased security measures at the airport.

Stage 5. Modality

No use of modality can be identified in the TT (see Appendix 7B).

As for the ST, the modal verb “should” is used to express probability. This is used to reinforce the representation of the arrival of the first European flight as the beginning of potential development of links between this region and the rest of the world. For example:

/The twice-weekly flights should make travel easier for Somali businessmen and members of the large diaspora/ (line 19).

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

As discussed in the structured analysis of this case study, the TT provides a short summary of the events and refers to the *BBC News* as its source. However, the ideology of representation which the TT constructs by means of its use of themes, participants and processes as well as circumstance is different to that of the ST.

Unlike in the two case studies previously analysed within the context of instability in Somalia, the TT of case study 2.3 foregrounds the notion of conflict. However, in this case the notion is used to reinforce the security threat posed by the persisting conflict to the *Turkish Airlines* flight as a first European flight to Somalia. In contrast to the discourse of change, progress and potential constructed in the source, the representation of events in the

TT is rather negative. This can be seen clearly from analysis of the themes, processes, participants and circumstances used in the TT.

Despite the fact that the Russian TT refers to the *BBC News* as the source, it seems to misrepresent that source by embedding its own ideology of representation of the discussed events.

5.2.3. Context 3. The Afghanistan War (2010 and 2012)

Following the events of 9/11 the U.S. announced a “war on terror”, following which the bombings in Afghanistan began. As Bird and Marshall (2011: 103) wrote, in December 2001:

the UN authorized the dispatch of the International Security Assistance Force (ISAF) agreed at Bonn. [...] While its initial deployment was only to Kabul, there were provisions in the Bonn agreement for this to expand beyond the city to other urban centres.

Initially created as a force against the Soviet threat by the Washington Treaty in 1949, the North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (NATO) has acted since then to ensure the sovereignty and security of its member states. It also works to contribute towards stability in regions affected by international crime and terrorism. Following the events of 9/11, under Article 5 of the Washington Treaty (according to which NATO acts if one of its member states is affected), the ISAF mission in Afghanistan began. It was aimed at providing training and support for the local government and army in the region. This was done to ensure that the region would not become a base for terrorist groups. After the withdrawal of troops scheduled for 2014, an assistance force is planned to help Afghan authorities and military build a functioning structure. As stated on the NATO official homepage (2013):

NATO’s primary objective in Afghanistan is to enable the Afghan government to provide effective security across the country and develop new Afghan security forces to ensure Afghanistan can never again become a safe haven for terrorists.

Afghanistan remains a burning issue in the global news as insider attacks, drug-use and corruption persist in the region. The fact that a number of countries – both NATO member

and partner states – are involved in the region draws attention to the region from a range of national and global media organisations. Apart from the ISAF operation, led under the NATO flag, the U.S. has its own operation in the region. The U.S. contribution to the NATO military forces is disproportionate to that of other member states involved. In the media this is often reported as the U.S.-led mission. This is particularly true of the target news text analysed in this section. Published online by the Russian media organisation, *RIA Novosti*, this news text discusses events in Afghanistan within a discourse that reinforces the view of the U.S. as a power-seeking nation which has been constructed in the media of the post-Soviet region.

In the region of Afghanistan, NATO and the Russian Federation share certain interests – including those of stability and security. The NATO-Russian Council has been created to direct communications regarding procedures and issues related to the region. Commenting on the relationship between the U.S. and the Russian Federation, Misdaq (2006) suggests that the instability in the region has been caused by the “superpower proxy wars” (between the USSR and the US) (2006: 196). Examining causes of political instability and instances of foreign interference in Afghanistan, the author suggests that:

it was considered as an opportunity for the West and especially the Americans to repay the Russians for their support of North Vietnam in the Vietnam War, a chance to dent the might of communism by making the occupation of Afghanistan politically and economically as expensive as possible. (Misdaq, 2006: 155)

Following the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979, the U.S. assisted Afghan groups in opposition by providing the resources required for warfare. Other countries in the region followed this lead, which in the end only reinforced the political conflict between the two superpowers – the U.S. and the USSR.

News texts analysed within case study 3.1 discuss U.S. war tactics in Afghanistan at the time of the appointment of a new ISAF commander General David Petraeus in 2010. Case study 3.2 discusses events surrounding the killings of civilians in Kandahar Province in March 2012 by a U.S. soldier. Case study 3.3 presents a discussion of the investigations led by the U.S. (March 2012) and allegations against the Afghan ex-governor Abu Bakr of corruption and organised terror attacks. All three case studies are analysed within the context of military intervention in Afghanistan and the ISAF and NATO-led mission.

Case study 3.1 The U.S. Military Campaign in Afghanistan

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 3.1 consists of two texts – a Russian target text and an English language source text. The analysed Russian news text, which appeared in *RIA Novosti* in July 2010, identifies the *USA Today* in the title as its source, and refers to it throughout the narrative (Table 36).

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
22.07.2010	<i>RIA Novosti</i>	“Эффективность тактики США в Афганистане вызывает сомнения – USA Today” Literally: Effectiveness of U.S. tactics in Afghanistan evokes doubts.	Target text	Russian
21.07.2010	<i>USA Today</i>	“Can Afghanistan be saved? As questions about U.S. effort mount, Petraeus steps into the breach”.	Source text	English

Table 36. News texts of Case study 3.1 (Appendix 8 A and B) in the context of Afghanistan.

Stage 2. Context analysis

News texts of case study 3.1 present and discuss the appointment of General David Petraeus as the new ISAF commander at a critical point in the development of the U.S.-led operation in Afghanistan. As discussed in both news texts, at the time of Petraeus' appointment the Taliban attacks in the region were continuing. This military opposition was in addition to a range of other issues that continued to exist and affected the region, among them corruption and cronyism, the existence of militant groups, a lack of support from the local population, and as emphasised by the ST – Pakistan's assistance of terrorist activity.

General David Petraeus was appointed by the U.S. President Obama in July 2010 to apply strategies which he had successfully implemented in Iraq. In the context of these events withdrawal of coalition forces was discussed, the reduction in the number of which was planned to start in July 2011. Gen. Petraeus would therefore face a challenging time in the development of the operation for both the U.S. and the coalition.

Support for the terrorist activity from countries such as Pakistan and Russia was an important factor hindering the potential success of the operation in the war in Afghanistan. Discussing the security crisis in Afghanistan and the role of Pakistan, Russia and Iran in this context, *Human Rights Watch* emphasises that:

The civil war in Afghanistan, a geopolitical battleground during the cold war, is once again being sponsored by outside parties: Pakistan, Iran, Russia, and other neighboring countries, with the United States and India working in other ways to influence the war's outcome. (2001: 3)

Although Russia might be seen to have an interest in the stability of the region, Russia's approval of the presence of ISAF forces on its doorstep and its control of the region is rather dubious. As Cordesman and Burke (2012) write in the context of the Center for Strategic and International Studies (CSIS) research:

Russia only has a marginal interest in Pakistan and sees Afghanistan largely in terms of containment. It has seen the US and ISAF presence in Afghanistan as both a threat and as a means of limiting the risk that instability in Afghanistan could spread north to Central Asia. It does not want a US presence so close to Russia or the Central Asian states, and has no reason to see the US and ISAF as providing a solution to the problems created by Afghanistan's one major and highly destructive export to Russia: drugs. (2012: 7)

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

As Table 37 illustrates, topical themes refer to some of the central issues discussed in the TT, including, for example, the question of the U.S. tactics in Afghanistan introduced in the title – “эффективность тактики США в Афганистане” (effectiveness of U.S. tactics

in Afghanistan; TT title); as well as the problems and issues which hinder the success of the U.S. campaign in Afghanistan such as those of corruption “коррупция и кумовство” (corruption and cronyism; line 26).

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	marked по данным американской газеты USA Today (according to the American newspaper USA Today)	1
	unmarked эффективность тактики США в Афганистане (effectiveness of U.S. tactics in Afghanistan) афганцы (Afghans) Америка (the U.S.) коррупция и кумовство (corruption and cronyism) “Силы пробуждения Анбара” (the Anbar Awakening forces) президент США Обама (U.S. President Obama) темпы вывода войск из Афганистана (the pace of the withdrawal of troops from Afghanistan) назначение Петреуса (appointment of Petraeus)	title - 10 10 26 69 76 81 - 94 -
Textual	кроме того (moreover)	30
Interpersonal	none	

Table 37. Case study 3.1 TT significant themes (Appendix 8A).

The narrative of the TT begins with the discussion of the failure of the U.S. efforts in Afghanistan and the loss of hope in the U.S.-led mission by the local population. The emphasis on a U.S. newspaper as a source is given by means of a marked topical theme “по данным американской газеты USA Today” (according to the American newspaper USA Today; line 1).

The narrative progresses with the discussion of the appointment of General David Petraeus and examines issues which the newly appointed leader is yet to face in Afghanistan. The analysed TT concludes with a positive representation of Obama’s appointment of General David Petraeus by some of the U.S. military representatives.

Throughout the narrative, the TT does not use interpersonal themes. However, the use of textual themes can be identified. For example, in order to emphasise the fact that the Afghan local population will likely be unable to take charge of its own security and development of the state, the textual theme – “*кроме того*” (moreover; line 30) is introduced:

/Кроме того, по мнению сенаторов, афганцы могут оказаться не готовы взять на себя обеспечение собственной безопасности, когда американские войска уйдут в 2011 году из Афганистана в соответствии с распоряжением президента Барака Обамы/ (line 30).

Literally: *Moreover*, according to the senators, Afghans can turn out not ready to take over provision of their own security, when American troops leave in 2011 year from Afghanistan in accordance with the decree of President Barack Obama.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text

The main themes identified in the ST are presented in Table 38.

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	into this situation	113
	Taliban fighters	95
	the United States	98
	the Afghanistan war	105
	a resurgent Taliban	121
	corruption and cronyism	123
	rules of engagement	128
	the pace of the withdrawal	222
	Pakistan	228
	Pakistan’s intelligence services	232
	coalition forces	261
Textual	but	156
	though	211

	as a result	261
Interpersonal	Can Afghanistan be saved?	title

Table 38. Case study 3.1 ST significant themes (Appendix 8A).

In contrast to the TT, the ST discusses in detail those critical issues present in Afghanistan that would make the success of the operation more difficult. These are introduced by such unmarked topical themes as “a resurgent Taliban” (line 121), “corruption and cronyism” (line 123), “rules of engagement” (line 128) and also “Pakistan” (line 230). A marked topical theme “into this situation” (line 113) reinforces the difficulty of the conditions in which Gen. Petraeus takes charge.

Unlike the TT, the ST discusses these issues in detail and focuses on corruption and support for the terrorists from Pakistan as two main problems. Whilst the TT thematises the issue of corruption, “Pakistan” is not thematised, and, as a result, is not emphasised as one of the central factors hindering the success of the coalition in the Afghanistan war. In the ST the issue of Pakistan’s involvement with and assistance for insurgent groups can be identified as an unmarked topical theme in multiple cases. For example:

/**Pakistan** must stop the flow of weapons and terrorists from jihadist safe havens within its borders/ (line 228).

/**Pakistan’s intelligence services** helped the Taliban come to power in Afghanistan in the 1990s/ (line 232).

Textual themes used in the ST reinforce the following ideas: that corruption exists in Afghanistan and is one of the factors hindering the success of the operation – “but” (line 156); that success of the operation is more visible as residents are starting to support the coalition – “though” (line 211); and that increased effort by and spending on behalf of the Afghan government is having positive results for the coalition as well as for the local Afghan police – “as a result” (line 261):

/Karzai has denied such allegations,/ but Khalid Pashtoon, member of the Afghan legislature from Kandahar province, says/ it is happening/ (line 156).

/Though militants still mount attacks,/ the residents are starting to realize the coalition is a better ally than the Islamists,/ Newman says/ (line 211).

/As a result, coalition forces believe/ they can meet a goal of 243,000 police and soldiers by Oct. 31,/ Breazile says/ (line 261).

There is one instance of use of an interpersonal theme in the ST, namely in the title of the analysed news text – “Can Afghanistan be saved?”. In the context of the clauses which follow within the title it both asks the question and answers it:

/Can Afghanistan be saved? As questions about U.S. effort amount, Petraeus steps into the breach/ (ST title).

Such use of an interpersonal theme reinforces an ideology of representation constructed in the ST. According to this a range of factors and circumstances exist in Afghanistan which can hinder success of the operation. Yet the appointment of General Petraeus gives hope for such success. Such an ideology of representation is not only constructed by means of choices of themes, but also through the use of participants, processes, circumstance and modality, as will be analysed in the following paragraphs.

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

Among dominant participants of the analysed TT the following can be identified: “афганцы” (Afghans), “Америка” (the U.S.), “талибы” (the Talibs), “Петреус” (Petraeus), “Карзай” (Karzai) and “Обама” (Obama). Also as participants nominalisations are used. Examples of these are: “тактика США” (U.S. tactics), “правила применения оружия” (rules of engagement) and “вывод войск” (withdrawal). These are mainly associated with mental, material and verbal process types, as shown in Table 39.

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	афганцы (Afghans)		недовольны (are not happy)	1				
	Америка (America)		принесла (brought)	3				
	который [усиливающийся Талибан] (which [the increasing Taliban])	действует (acts)	24					
	они [старейшины] (they [the elders])		не знают (do not know)	61				
	многие афганцы (many Afghans)		уверены (are sure)	80				
	талибы (the Talibs)	дождутся я/ начнут (will wait/ will start)	80					
Circumstances	вместо мира и развития (instead of peace and development)							3

Table 39. Case study 3.1 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 8B).

The idea that the local population will most likely be unable to take responsibility for the development of the state or be actively involved in it, is emphasised by means of the textual theme. As previously discussed, the participant “старейшины” (the elders; line 60) refers to the population of Afghanistan and is used with a mental process. Examples of the use of mental process types with participants associated with the residents of Afghanistan are the following:

/По данным американской газеты USA Today, **афганцы недовольны** тем/ (line 1).

Literally: According to an American newspaper USA Today, **Afghans are not happy** that.

/Многие афганцы уверены/ (line 80).

Literally: **Many Afghans are sure** that.

/потому что **они** [старейшины] **не знают**/ (line 61).

Literally: because they [the elders] do not know.

In turn, “the Talibs” are represented as active participants as they are used with material process types. For example:

/талибы **дождутся** ухода американцев, а затем **начнут** мощное наступление/ (line 80).

Literally: **the Talibs will wait** till Americans leave and then **will start** a major offensive.

/который [усиливающийся Талибан] **действует** в стране, намного более обширной, чем Ирак, получая при этом помощь от террористических группировок Пакистана/ (line 24).

Literally: **which [the increasing Taliban] acts** in the country way bigger than Iraq herewith receiving assistance from terrorist groups of Pakistan.

As for the verbal process types these are used with participants referring to authorities such as “Petraeus”, “Obama” and “Karzai”. As opposed to the Taliban’s actions, such use of verbal process types suggests less power and ability to act on behalf of the authorities. As a result, the Taliban is represented as an aggressor and the only active participant. Yet, there

is an instance in which the U.S. is used as a participant associated with a material process. In this case, however, it is used to suggest the negative impact of the U.S. operation on Afghanistan and its residents. It is also further reinforced by the use of circumstance of manner in the same clause – “вместо мира и развития”:

/а вместо мира и развития [Америка] **принесла** в Афганистан только разрушения и войну/ (line 3).

Literally: and instead of peace and development brought only destruction and war to Afghanistan.

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the source text

Similarly to the participants mentioned in the TT, the following participants can be identified as dominant in the ST – “the Taliban”, “U.S.”, “coalition”, “Afghans”, “Petraeus” and “Karzai” presented in Table 40. Importantly, “Pakistan” is used as a participant in the ST. The TT does mention Pakistan but it is not used as a participant, and a result, the idea of Pakistan as an active participant hindering success of the operation is not reinforced.

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verb al	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	Taliban fighters	burned	96						
	we			consider	103				
	Gen. David Petraeus, the counterinsurgency expert	steps/spear headed	115						
	people							are ready to fight	193

	the coalition	pushed out/ is keeping out	209					
Taliban forces	had ruled	210						
Afghan troops	forced out	211						
Pakistan	fails to step up	230						
Pakistan	is trying to play	233						
the Afghan government	boosted	262						
coalition forces			believe	264				
Circumstances	from jihadist safe heavens within its borders							231
	in the border areas of Pakistan							236
	until recently							258
	during the past year							263

Table 40. Case study 3.1 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 8B).

Unlike in the TT, the ST uses these participants with quite a different range of process types to construct a rather different ideology of representation of the discussed events. For example, the U.S. and the coalition are associated with material and mental processes. For example:

/the coalition **pushed** the Taliban **out** of safe havens there and **is keeping** insurgents **out/** (line 209).

/As a result, **coalition forces believe/** (line 264).

Participants referring to Afghan residents are used not only with mental processes, but also material and relational:

/Afghan troops forced them out in a two-week battle, the largest operation since the invasion in 2001/ (line 211).

/People are ready to fight them/ (line 193).

/We consider America a failed state/ (line 103).

/This year, the Afghan government boosted monthly pay for police and soldiers to \$165, up from \$120/ (line 262).

Similarly to the TT, “the Taliban” is mentioned in the ST with material process types. However, “Pakistan” is also used with material processes, which reinforces the idea that Pakistan’s assistance is, partially, a reason behind the Taliban’s activity. The following are examples of such use of material processes:

/Taliban fighters burned everything standing in this dusty village on the Shomali Plain/ (line 96).

/Taliban forces had ruled the city of 40,000 with impunity until U.S. Marines and/ (line 210).

/Pakistan fails to step up efforts against militants/ (line 230).

/Pakistan is still trying to play a political game with the international community/ (line 233).

As for the use of verbal processes these can be identified in relation to the authorities in this context, as in the TT. These are used with such participants such as “Petraeus” and “Karzai”. However, unlike in the TT, the participant “Petraeus” is also used with a material process, which reinforces the idea that General David Petraeus’ appointment as a new ISAF commander has the potential to bring success to the operation:

/Into this situation **steps** Gen. David Petraeus, the counterinsurgency expert/ who **spearheaded** the dramatic drop in militancy in Iraq and the stabilizing of its government/ (line 115).

In addition, Pakistan's involvement in supporting terrorist groups is reinforced in circumstances of location. For example:

/Karzai complains that/ Pakistan must stop the flow of weapons and terrorists from jihadist safe heavens within its borders/ (line 231).

/and many of the terrorist groups operating in Afghanistan have their leadership located in the border areas of Pakistan, according to the International Security Assistance Force, the U.S.-led coalition that oversees Afghan military operations/ (line 236).

To suggest that there is a degree of progress and potential success in the operation, circumstance of time is used in the following cases:

/until recently, the coalition lacked the trainers and resources to build effective fighting units/ (line 258).

/and it nearly doubled the number of coalition trainers during the past year to more than 3,100/ (line 263).

Stage 5. Modality

As for the use of modality, it is used more widely in the ST compared to the TT. In the TT a prominent case of the use of modality is the following (Appendix 8B):

/и назначение Петреуса может изменить ход войны в Афганистане/ (line 95).

Literally: and appointment of Petraeus could change the course of the war in Afghanistan.

The modal verb “could” in this case reinforces the possibility of success for the U.S. and the coalition in Afghanistan. In the ST, a relational process type is used instead – “has the potential” (line 269) – to convey a similar idea. The use of modality in the ST emphasises Pakistan’s involvement and reinforces the idea that a change in its actions is necessary for the success of the coalition. The modal verb “must” expresses the obligations of Pakistan as seen by the U.S. and the coalition – “Pakistan must stop” (line 231) and “Pakistan must take stronger actions” (line 239). In the context of the discussion of various factors hindering the success of the coalition a modal verb “may” is used to express a possibility that time is one of the factors affecting the likelihood of success:

/Time may not be on the coalition’s side/ (line 218).

“May” is used in the following cases to examine various possible options available for constructing a successful military strategy in Afghanistan:

/Petraeus may seek to expand on them/ (line 206).

/Self-defense groups, sometimes referred to as militias, may be part of that strategy/ (line 243).

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

Case study 3.1 presents an effective example of the ideologically-constructed representation by means of translation in a political news text. Reporting on the U.S. tactics in the Afghanistan war and discussing the appointment of the new NATO commander, the TT refers heavily to its source – *USA Today*. It seems to report on the information in the source, transferring this to the readers.

The choice of topical themes of the TT is similar to that of the ST. However, certain themes e.g. “Pakistan”, are omitted. In the context of the discussed events, Russia’s interest in Pakistan as a factor hindering the U.S. success is not prominent. This can be explained, as discussed at the stage of the context analysis of this case study, by Russia’s aversion to having U.S. forces on its doorstep, taking control of the area. In addition, the lack of emphasis on Pakistan in the TT, could also be the result of Russia’s own assistance of certain militant groups in Afghanistan.

Equally, in its choice of dominant participants and process types, the TT places the emphasis on the inability of the Afghan residents to take charge of the region and its security. In addition, the effectiveness of the U.S. tactics is questioned. The representation in the TT is not achieved by the use of explicit negatively charged expressions. Instead, it is possible to suggest that bias is constructed through the choice of certain topical themes and the omission of others. Examples of this would include the omission of “Pakistan”, as well as the choice of process types, e.g. mental (as opposed to material used in the ST) to represent Afghan residents as inactive, reluctant and unable to take responsibility.

Van Dijk (1998) rightly points out that bias is not necessarily formed by means of “prominent expressions”. The author suggests that whilst readers who feel certain ambiguity towards minority groups might not form biased perception through such “prominent expressions”, they “may, however, be unable to detect more subtle forms of semantic ethnic bias in news reporting [...]” (Van Dijk, 1998: 233). Following the analysis of the discussed news texts, it is possible to suggest that such means of construction of bias apply to representation not only of ethnic minority groups but any groups involved in the context of conflict and instability. This is well illustrated by the choice of mental process types in the TT to present and discuss the local Afghan population as a group involved in the discussed military conflict.

Case study 3.2 Killings of Civilians in Kandahar Province

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

News texts organised as case study 3.2 analysed in this section narrate and discuss instances of political instability and military intervention in the context of Afghanistan. Table 41 provides an overview of the texts selected for discussion in this section.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
26.03.2012	<i>RIA Novosti</i>	“Среди жертв сержанта Бейлса в Афганистане была беременная женщина” BT: Among the victims of Sgt.	Target text	Russian

		Bales in Afghanistan there was a pregnant woman		
26.03.2012	<i>International Herald Tribune/The Global Edition of the New York Times</i>	“Paying a Price Amid the Fog of War”	Source text 1 (potential)	English
26.03.2012	<i>The New York Times</i>	“3 NATO Soldiers Killed by Afghan Security Officers”	Source text 2 (potential)	English

Table 41. News texts of Case study 3.2 (Appendix 9 A and B) in the context of Afghanistan.

As illustrated in Table 41, the analysed case study consists of three texts: one target text in Russian and two potential source texts in English. The three texts were published in the context of the 2012 March events in Afghanistan.

The Russian news text analysed in this case study as a target text in relation to the other two news texts provides a reference to a potential source. It claims *The New York Times* publication as its source. However, it fails to suggest an exact news text or report, which would allow the location of a specific, definite source. As a result, two news texts identified by a reference and a time frame provided in the target text are examined as two potential sources. It is possible that both texts might have become sources of the Russian news text, which has borrowed and adapted the content to create its own framework of narrative. This point goes back to the question and the role of translation in news translation.

Stage 2. Context analysis

The news text analysed in this section belongs to the context of the closing stages of the NATO and the U.S. involvement in the region of Afghanistan. NATO forces, which now have been present in the region for over a decade, are failing to reach the goal of establishing a strong political and institutional structure able to prevent settlement and activity of terrorist groups in the region. Being the largest contributor to NATO forces, the U.S. is often represented in the Russian media as a facilitator of the International Security Assistance Force (ISAF) mission. Reinforcing existing stereotypes, which are based on previous and current socio-political discourses, American soldiers are often identified with the U.S. nation and their actions are interpreted as representing U.S. foreign policy. This is widely reflected in the constructed ideology of representation of the target news text analysed in this section.

In March 2012 a U.S. army Sgt. Robert Bales killed civilians in a village in Kandahar Province. The three news texts which are analysed here discuss and represent the March events in different ways. The two main issues, which are addressed in the narratives of the three texts are, first, the reasons for the discrepancy in the number of victims and, second, the ambiguous nature of the U.S. payments to the families of the victims.

As relevant intertextual data, an important article is that of *The New York Times*: “U.S. Pays Families of Afghan Victims in Massacre by Soldier” published online on the 25 March 2012 (prior to the publication of the news texts analysed in this case study). This news text introduces the issue of payments for the first time and implicitly confirms that the payments made to the Afghan families are, in fact, a form of compensation made by the U.S.:

An American official confirmed on Sunday that payments had been made to victims but refused to discuss specifics. Compensation payments are kept private as a matter of American policy, the official said, adding that it was up to the recipients to decide whether to talk about what they were given. (*The New York Times*, 2012)

In the news texts which appeared online after the 26 March 2012 the issue of payments is viewed as compensation by some and assistance by others. In ST1 and ST2 the issue of

payments is discussed more as compensation than is the case in the TT and can thus be seen as misrepresenting the analysed potential sources. However, the way in which it is discussed in comparison to the mentioned piece of intertext is a fair representation of the U.S. practice of payments to its victims.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

The first text under analysis is a Russian news text for which the thematic structure is presented in Table 42.

Type	Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	изначально (initially) ранее на этой неделе (earlier this week) согласно нашим данным (according to our data) согласно военному праву США (according to the U.S. military law) как отмечается в сообщении (as noted in the message)	12 14 22 26 - 26 -
	unmarked	неродившийся ребенок (the unborn child) Бейлс (Bales) американцы (Americans) другие афганские чиновники (other Afghan officials) выплаты (payments)	2 6 16 20 35
Textual	однако (however)	14	
Interpersonal	none		

Table 42. Case study 3.2 TT significant themes (Appendix 9A).

As illustrated in Table 42, the discussion and the development of the narrative of the Russian news text is first based on the themes referring to the question of the unborn child and the involvement of Sgt Robert Bales in the discussed events. Then the narrative switches to the contrast between what was reported by means of a marked topical theme “изначально” (initially; line 12) and what was revealed in later stages of the investigation,

when Americans as well as Afghan officials were involved – unmarked topical themes “американцы” (Americans; line 16) and “другие афганские чиновники” (other Afghan officials; line 20).

At this point the Russian news text, provides a certain perspective on the payments by switching the narrative to a new development by means of a textual theme “однако” (however; line 14).

Marked themes of the TT are “изначально” (initially; line 12) and “ранее на этой неделе” (earlier this week; line 14), where the emphasis is on the time and the confusion over the number of victims. Other marked topical themes of the TT are “согласно нашим данным” (according to our data; line 22) and “согласно военному праву США” (according to the U.S. military law; line 26), which emphasise the sources of the information and the differences in the information provided by these sources.

These are also marked topical themes which emphasise the circumstances of the events. These present the Afghan investigations of sixteen victims in contrast to the rulings of the U.S. law, according to which an unborn child is considered as another victim.

The marked topical theme “как отмечается в сообщении” (as noted in the message; line 26) is an example of how sources of the information, time and location of the discussed events are emphasised and is particularly characteristic of the analysed news texts in this thesis.

Thematic structure analysis of source text 1

To compare the way in which information is structured and presented in the English ST 1, its thematic structure is examined. This is presented in Table 43.

Type	Themes	Line
Topical	marked	none
	unmarked	the United States the families her unborn baby

	Sergeant Bales	62
	payments by the U.S. government or the military	66
	the army	80
	the U.S. government	96
	war	107
	the compensation	118
Textual	in any event	64
Interpersonal	call/ do not call	40
	of course	64

Table 43. Case study 3.2 ST1 significant themes (Appendix 9A).

ST1 is embedded in a discourse of precedent practices of payments, made by the U.S. government and the military, in cases where civilians have become victims to circumstances and/or casualties of military or war-related events. Examples of its topical themes include “payments by the U.S. government or the military” (line 66), “the U.S. government” (line 96) and “the compensation” (line 118). ST1 starts its narrative with a speculation on the topic of naming and the question of the victims and payments.

The narrative of ST 1 suggests in its opening line that to call the U.S. policy compensation is a matter of choice. Structurally, this is done be means of introducing an interpersonal theme in a form of opposition – “call” and “do not call” (line 40). Following an introduction to the narrative, a range of topical themes can be identified, such as “the United States” (line 42), “the families” (line 44), “her unborn baby” (line 61) and “Sergeant Bales” (line 66). At this point in the narrative, the events of the killings are presented and outlined, discussing the circumstances, facts and parties involved.

The narrative then diverts from the events and its victims, placing its emphasis on the discussion of payments and the actions of the U.S. army and government in similar situations. This is done by means of a textual theme “in any event” (line 64), which adds emphasis to the expression, and an interpersonal theme “of course” (line 64) which contributes speculation regarding the question of compensation by the U.S.

The narrative evolves and switches in its thematic pattern from the individual cases of victims and payments to the discourse of “war” and “combatants” (line 107). The contrast created by juxtaposing topical themes related to payments with topical themes of “war”

(line 107) and “combatants” (line 107) seems to suggest that victims can be seen as a natural part of the process of war.

Thematic structure analysis of source text 2

The thematic structure of the third text under analysis, ST2, illustrates yet a different view of the discussed events. It embeds the discussion of the events of March 2012 in the Kandahar province into the discourse of NATO soldiers falling victims to the circumstances of the events in the region. Table 44 presents significant themes in the narrative of the ST2.

Type		Themes	Line
Topical	marked	early in the day	155
		at this time	159
	unmarked	three NATO soldiers	120
		the shootings	126
		two of its soldiers	129
		an ISAF press release	133
		Afghan officials	134
		Afghan local police forces	136
		the program	138
		Karilyn Bales, the wife [...] / she	143
		confusion	153
Textual		meanwhile	141
Interpersonal		none	

Table 44. Case study 3.2 ST2 significant themes (Appendix 9A).

Topical themes, which introduce the narrative of the ST2, are the “three NATO soldiers” (line 120), “the shootings” (line 126) and “two of its soldiers” (line 129). These are examples of topical themes foregrounding events of the killings, the victims of which have been NATO soldiers. This is further supported by providing a reference to the sources – “an ISAF press release” and “Afghan officials” (line 133/134). This thematic pattern in the first lines of ST 2 creates a discourse of victims, which applies to both the U.S. and Afghan

sides of the conflict. In the first case, these are soldiers who suffer as victims, and in the case of Afghan population, these are civilians.

A textual theme “meanwhile” (line 141) is introduced into the narrative to create a contrast between the civilians killed in Afghanistan and Sgt. Bales’ wife and her understanding of the events – topical themes “Karilyn Bales, the wife [...]”, “she” (line 143).

The narrative turns to the discussion of the events of the killings. It further blurs the line between what actually happened and what is known to the investigators and the press. The discussion continues by comparing what was initially known with how this information has further changed. This can be seen from the choices of marked topical themes such as “early in the day” (line 155) and “at this time” (line 159).

Unlike in the TT, where by use of marked themes the difference in the number of victims is emphasised, the marked themes in ST2 – “early in the day” (line 155) and “at this time” (line 159) – emphasise that both Afghan police officials and the U.S. investigators agree on the number of victims.

Stage 4. Dominant participants, processes and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

In the analysed target text, the central actors and aggressors are the U.S. forces, the representative of which is Sgt Bales. The target text mainly refers to the U.S. military and government by means of such lexical choices as “американец” (American; line 9) and “убийца” (murderer; line 28) used with material processes (Table 45). The result is a parallel being drawn between the actions of the U.S. army soldier Sgt Robert Bales and the actions and policy of the U.S. government and the nation in general.

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participant									
	неподившийся ребенок (an unborn child)							был (was)	1

	Бейлс (Bales)	вышел (left)/ направился (headed)/ расстрелив ал (was shooting)								6	
	местных жителей,/ которые (local residents who)	спали (were sleeping [asleep])								6	
	американец (American)	вернулся (returned)/ направился (headed)/ совершил (committed)								9	
	убийца (murderer)			знал (knew)						28	
Circumstances		среди жертв сержанта американской армии Роберта Бейлса (among victims of the U.S. army sergeant Robert Bales)									1
		согласно военному праву США (according to the U.S. military law)									2
		вопреки официальной политике Пентагона (against the official policy of the Pentagon)									32

Table 45. Case study 3.2 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances
(Appendix 9B).

Material processes are used to describe the actions and movements of the soldier around the village. These are presented in succession from the point when Bales left his base to the moment when the civilians were killed. Such successive use of material processes intensifies the presentation of events and creates the impression that the events described are the facts. In addition, by means of material process types, Sgt Bales is represented as an actor, whilst local residents are the affected party or the victims of his actions. The following are examples, which illustrate this:

/Бейлс, по данным следствия, **вышел** со своей базы, **направился** в одну из близлежащих деревень и, врываясь в дома **местных жителей**,/ **которые** тогда **спали**,/ **расстреливал** их/ (line 6).

Literally: **Bales**, according to the investigation data, **left** his base, **headed** to one of the nearby villages and, breaking into the houses of the **local residents**, **who** then **were** [asleep] (**sleeping**), **was shooting** them.

/Затем **американец вернулся** в расположение части, а через некоторое время **направился** в другую деревню, где также **совершил** убийства/ (line 8).

Literally: Then **the American returned** to the base, and after some time **headed** to another village, where he also **committed** murder.

The central issue in the discussion of the TT is the question of whether there was an unborn child among the killed. The following example illustrates the way in which the use of the relational process type “was” implicitly solves the uncertainty of the question.

/Среди жертв сержанта американской армии Роберта Бейлса, расстрелявшего мирных афганцев в начале марта, **был неродившийся ребенок**,/ **который, согласно военному праву США**, считается еще одной, 17-й жертвой, говорится в сообщении, опубликованном в понедельник на сайте издания New York Times/ (line 1).

Literally: Among victims of the U.S. army sergeant Robert Bales, who shot Afghan civilians at the beginning of March, there **was an unborn child**, **which, according to the U.S. military law** is considered another [victim], the 17th victim, is said in the message published on Monday on the New York Times website.

In this clause the use of circumstance “согласно военному праву США” (according to the U.S. military law; line 2) reinforces the idea that there was, in fact, an unborn child.

The TT uses circumstance of location “среди жертв сержанта американской армии Роберта Бейлса” (among victims of the U.S. army sergeant Robert Bales; line 1) and circumstance of manner “вопреки официальной политике Пентагона” (against the

official policy of the Pentagon; line 32) to reinforce the representation of Sgt. Bales as an aggressor and to present the actions of the U.S. government and military as inconsistent.

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of source text 1

From the examples presented below it is evident that the focus in ST1 is on individual cases of casualties. The following are examples presented in the text of victims of various military events, in which the U.S. have been involved in the past:

/Thus, when a Japanese fishing boat *was exposed* to radiation during the testing of an atomic bomb/ (line 114).

/or an Iranian airliner *was* mistakenly *shot down* by a U.S. warship/ (line 115).

In each of the clauses presented above the victims of the events are represented through the use of both passive constructions and material processes (Table 46).

	Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relation al	Line
Participants	the United States	made payments							43
	they						were		92
	a Japanese fishing boat	was exposed							114
	an Iranian airliner	was shot down							115
	the United States					authorized	101		

Circumstances	in wartime and in combat zones	66
	in peacetime	113
	out of compassion for the victims	85

Table 46. Case study 3.2 ST1 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 9B).

Other participants used in the ST1 relate to war and terrorism. These are used with relational processes to reinforce the discourse of terrorism and present such descriptions as facts. For example:

/They were terrorists/ (line 92).

In the discourse of war and in the individual cases of victims of the discussed events another group of participants refers to the U.S. government. These are used with material and verbal processes to present the U.S. government as being actively involved in the practice of payments to victims of military conflicts and their families. For example:

/The United States made payments last weekend to Afghan families/ (line 43) – material process.

/The United States authorized \$198 million for the Filipino Veterans Equity Compensation Fund to make direct cash payments to some 18,000 Filipino veterans/ (line 101) – verbal process.

Similarly to the process types used in the TT, ST1 uses material and relational processes. These are, however, mainly associated with either the affected party (both victims and “terrorists”) or the US as an actor. The US government and the military are represented here as the main actor making payments – assisting the families of those killed in the course of a conflict.

The complexity of the issues of payments is reinforced by the circumstance of location in the following clause:

In any event, of course, the issue of payments is a sensitive one,/ and it's made all the more thorny in wartime and in combat zones/ (line 65).

The use of circumstance in ST1 supports the discourse of war and the discussion of payments either as assistance or compensation. The following are examples of the use of circumstance used in ST1: circumstance of location “in peacetime” and circumstance of manner “by military negligence” (line 113). Similarly, the use of circumstance of manner in ST1 emphasises a degree of regret expressed by the U.S. authorities: “out of compassion for the victims” (line 58).

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of source text 2

Analysed as the second potential source of the Russian news text published on the *RIA Novosti* website, the ST2 shows a different pattern in its choice of dominant participants and processes (Table 47).

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relatio nal	Line
Participants								
Participants	three NATO soldiers	were shot						121
	the Afghan National Army soldier	turned						125
	the shootings	took place						127
	Afghan local police forces						are	137
	the program						has been	139
	many of the local policemen						were	140
	the killings							157

Circumstances	in an attack	131
	under a program designed for the defense of their home communities	139

Table 47. Case study 3.2 ST2 Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 9B).

Unlike the previous two texts, which present the Afghans and other local civilians as victims, ST2 presents the U.S. and NATO soldiers as such. There are participants which are represented as acted upon and are used with material processes. The Afghan military are represented as an acting party whilst the U.S. and NATO soldiers are presented as the affected party, as the victims of the events. For example:

/**Three NATO soldiers were shot** to death on Monday in two separate confrontations involving Afghan security forces/ (line 121).

/**an Afghan National Army soldier turned** his weapon on British soldiers, killing two of them before being shot to death/ (line 125).

In addition, to shift the agency from Sgt Robert Bales as an active participant, a range of nominalisations are used. These include “the shootings” (line 127), “the killings” (line 157) and “the program” (line 139). These are used with material process types and represented as active participants to remove the agency from the actual actor of the events.

As is the case in the two previously analysed news texts, it uses relational processes to create an impression of factuality. In this case these are used to identify and describe the Afghan police as those with a criminal past:

/**Afghan local police forces are**, in general, armed militiamen/ who are trained by American Special Operations troops and deputized as police officers under a program designed for the defence of their home communities./ The program has been controversial/ because **many of the local policemen were** former Taliban or criminal elements seeking to exercise control over their areas/ (line 137).

Similarly to the two previously discussed news texts, ST2 makes wide use of material and relational process types. These are, however, used in relation to a different set of participants. ST1 and ST2 weaken the representation of Sgt Bales as an active participant

and the aggressor by introducing a range of other active participants, as discussed in the examples above.

In ST2, the circumstances of location also reinforces the representation. “In an attack” (line 131) and “under a program designed for the defense of their home communities” (line 139) contribute to constructing the representation of the NATO soldiers as victims. In turn, Afghan police forces are represented as individuals to whom support by means of a programme has been offered, but who instead choose to pursue criminal activity.

Stage 5. Modality

In the analysed news texts, modality contributes to the expression of uncertainty and ambiguity. For example, in the analysed TT a statement is made whereby, according to the U.S. law an unborn child “can be” considered a victim. In this statement the use of a modal verb expressing possibility adds to the confusion in the number of victims (Appendix 9B):

/Как отмечается в сообщении, согласно военному праву США, неродившегося ребенка можно считать жертвой,/ невзирая на то, знал ли убийца,/ что его жертва беременна,/ или нет,/ и несмотря на то, хотел ли он преднамеренно убить плод, или нет/ (line 27).

Literally: As noted in the message, according to the U.S. military law, the unborn child can be considered a victim, disregarding whether the murderer knew that his victim was pregnant or not, and disregarding whether he intentionally wanted to kill the fetus or not.

ST 1 demonstrates a wider use of expressions of modality, when compared to the TT. In addition to the discussion of the number of victims, there are also modal adjuncts used in the discussion of the question of payments –“of course” (line 65), “certainly” (line 67). These reinforce the idea that, in the context of conflict and deaths, it is not easy for the U.S. government to make decisions regarding payments.

ST2 uses modality to emphasise ambiguity regarding the number of victims in “could be accounted for” (line 158).

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

The news texts analysed in this case study discuss one central issue around which the narrative of each of the three news texts revolves. The three analysed news texts discuss

the March 2012 events in Afghanistan. The killings of local residents in Afghanistan by a U.S. army Sgt Robert Bales are examined to a different degree in each of the three news texts, constructing different perspectives on the discussed issues.

From the analysis of the linguistic choices in thematic structure, participants and process types of the analysed TT, ST1 and ST2 it is evident that each of the texts constructs its distinct ideology of representation. In the TT, the existence of the 17th victims is presented as a fact and Sgt. Bales is identified with the U.S. nation and the actions of its government. The perspective presented and the ideology of representation constructed in the TT, which appeared in *RIA Novosti*, contrasts to that of ST1 ST2.

The ideology of representation is similar in ST1 and ST2 as both texts have been produced within one socio-political context by one publication – *The New York Times*. Both discuss compensation of made by the U.S. government in the context of conflict in the light of assistance and suggest various perspectives on how such assistance may be perceived.

Case study 3.3 U.S. Investigations: the Case of Afghan Ex-governor Abu Bakr

Stage 1. Case study structure analysis

Case study 3.3 consists of two news texts, where the Russian news text is analysed as a target as it provides a reference to its source – *The Wall Street Journal* (Table 48). The Russian news text analysed within this case study is a translation of an earlier version of *The Wall Street Journal* news text. The news text available for the analysis was updated on 1 April 2012, whereas the analysed target text was published on 30 March 2012. Analysis is possible due to the fact that the source text specifically indicates corrections made to the text. At the end of the text (Appendix 10A) a section with “Corrections and Amplifications” is provided. It includes information about two more victims who died in a suicide attack in Afghanistan discussed in the ST.

Date	Source	Title	Relation	Language
30.03.2012	<i>Lenta.ru</i>	“США потребуют наказать афганского экс-губернатора за убийство американцев”	Target text	Russian

		Literally: USA will demand to punish Afghan ex-governor for the murder of Americans.		
01.04.2012 (with corrections)	<i>The Wall Street Journal</i>	“U.S. Blames Senior Afghan in Deaths”	Source text	English

Table 48. News texts of Case study 3.3 (Appendix 10 A and B) in the context of Afghanistan.

Stage 2. Context analysis

In 2007 Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr, a former commander of an insurgent group affiliated with Hezb-i-Islami, was appointed as a governor by the President Hamid Karzai. Following numerous allegations of corruption, as well as terror attacks organised by Abu Bakr, U.S. investigators opened a case against the governor. President Hamid Karzai removed Abu Bakr from his post but failed to pursue a case against him.

Corruption in Afghanistan is one of the central issues hindering both its development and the success of the ISAF operation. In December 2012, the United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC) published a summary of findings on corruption in Afghanistan, where it stated that:

In 2012, as in 2009, the population of Afghanistan considered corruption, together with insecurity and unemployment, to be one of the principal challenges facing their country, ahead even of poverty, external influence and the performance of the Government. (2012: 3)

In this context relations between the U.S. and the Afghan government were also affected by previous events, as, for example, discussed in case study 3.2 when the U.S. sergeant Robert Bales killed civilians in Kandahar Province in March 2012. These and other events increased tensions between the U.S. and the Afghan government. Corruption and cronyism among Afghan governors and administration affected law enforcement mechanisms.

Stage 3. Thematic structure analysis

Thematic structure analysis of the target text

The main themes in the TT are presented in Table 49.

Type	Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	ранее (earlier)	11
	unmarked	США (the U.S)	1
		экс-губернатор Гулам Кавис Абу Бакр (ex-governor Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr)	5
		Карзай (Karzai)	-
		новые обвинения в адрес бывшего афганского губернатора (new allegations against Afghan ex-governor)	16
		недовольство присутствием американских войск (disapproval of the presence of the U.S. forces)	24
		в США (in the U.S.)	-
			-
			-
			27
			-
			-
			30
Textual	besides	9	
Interpersonal	none		

Table 49. Case study 3.3 TT significant themes (Appendix 10A).

The unmarked topical themes refer to the U.S. allegations about the Afghan ex-governor Abu Bakr. The topical theme “новые обвинения в адрес бывшего афганского губернатора” (new allegations against Afghan ex-governor; line 24) reinforces the idea that the U.S. had accused the Afghan governor of crimes in the past. This is also reinforced by the use of a marked topical theme “ранее” (earlier; line 11):

/Ранее США уже обвиняли Абу Бакра в различных преступлениях, в том числе в коррупции и вымогательстве/ (line 11).

Literally: Earlier the U.S. have already accused Abu Bakr of various crimes including corruption and extortion.

The TT effectively creates a sense of opposition between the U.S. and the Afghan sides. It first introduces the idea of “new allegations” from the U.S. side and then by means of the unmarked topical theme “недовольство присутствием американских войск” (disapproval of the presence of the U.S. forces; line 27) reinforces the idea that neither the U.S. presence in Afghanistan nor its interference are welcomed by the Afghans.

Discussing the U.S. allegations that the Afghan governor was responsible for organising a suicide attack in May 2009, the TT uses the textual theme “кроме того” (besides; line 9) to intensify the fact that allegations have also been made regarding the planned murder of the U.S., French and UK ambassadors. The TT focuses on three main areas: discussion of allegations from the U.S. side, the deteriorating relationship between the U.S. and Afghan government and locals, and in particular the disapproval of the U.S. presence in the region.

No interpersonal themes can be identified in the analysed TT.

Thematic structure analysis of the source text

The thematic structure of the ST is presented in Table 50.

Type		Themes	Line	
Topical	marked	appointed as governor by Mr. Karzai in 2007, Mr. Abu Bakr	61 -	
	unmarked	evidence	37	
		U.S. officials	43	
		U.S. investigators	75	
		a suicide bomber	92	
		the Afghan government	126	
		witnesses	129	
		wiretaps	142	
Textual		but	126	
		meanwhile	129	
Interpersonal		by coincidence	83	

Table 50. Case study 3.3 ST significant themes (Appendix 10A).

The unmarked topical themes of the ST include: “evidence” (line 37), “U.S. investigators” (line 75) and “witnesses” (line 129). These are themes which introduce the discourse of the

reasons behind the allegations made against the Afghan ex-governor. Such themes refer to the details of the allegations and the discussion of these. Unlike the Russian TT, the ST focuses on the evidence available to the investigators, the issue of corruption as well as the inability of Karzai's government to enforce Afghan law.

The use of the following marked topical theme emphasises the fact that it was President Hamid Karzai himself who appointed Abu Bakr as a governor of the Kapisa province:

/Appointed as governor by Mr. Karzai in 2007, Mr. Abu Bakr is a former mujahedeen commander affiliated with the Hezb-i-Islami movement founded by warlord Gulbuddin Hekmatyar/ (line 61).

When discussing the suicide attack on the U.S. convoy, the victim of which was intended to be the U.S. Provincial Reconstruction Team (PRT) commander for Kapisa, the ST introduces an interpersonal theme – “by coincidence” (line 83) to emphasise the fact that the arrangement was aimed at the PRT commander and the attack of the convoy was the result of an error.

/By coincidence, the convoy of Col. Stratton, commander of the PRT in neighboring Panjshir province, was traveling that morning on the same road/ (line 83).

To reinforce the idea that the Afghan government is failing to enforce Afghan law using the mechanisms in place, the ST uses a textual theme – “but”:

/But the Afghan government has repeatedly rejected American calls to prosecute the former governor/ (line 126).

In the same way, the textual theme “meanwhile” (line 129) is used to emphasise the unlawful actions of Karzai's government at the time when the U.S. were conducting investigations:

/Witnesses, meanwhile, were pressured by Mr. Abu Bakr's associates to change their statements/ (line 129).

Stage 4. Dominant processes, participants and circumstances analysis

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the target text

The dominant participants in the TT (Table 51) include: “США” (the U.S; line 1/11) and “экс-губернатор Гулам Кавис Абу Бакр” (ex-governor Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr; line 5). These are associated with material, verbal and mental process types to discuss the circumstances in which the U.S. investigators are conducting investigations and accusing Abu Bakr of planned terror attacks. In turn, Abu Bakr is presented as denying such allegations.

President Karzai and his administration are also included as participants: “администрация президента Афганистана Хамида Карзая” (administration of President of Afghanistan Hamid Karzai; line 13) and “Карзай” (Karzai; line 16). These are associated with verbal and material process types which construct a representation of Karzai’s government as both acting independently and expressing their own views on the U.S. allegations.

Process Types	Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relational	Line
Participants	США (the U.S.)				требуют (demand)/ обвиняли (accused)			1/11
	экс-губернатор Гулам Кавис Абу Бакр (ex-governor Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr)	организовал (organised)						5
	администрация президента Афганистана Хамида Карзая (administration of President of Afghanistan Hamid Karzai)				отказывалась (refused)			13

on of President of Afghanistan Hamid Karzai)								
Карзай (Karzai)	назначи л (appointe d)							16
Circumstances	на фоне отношений Вашингтона и Кабула (on the background of complications in relations between Washington and Kabul)							24

Table 51. Case study 3.3 TT Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 10B).

To reinforce the idea that the intensity of the U.S. allegations may be caused by the relations between the U.S. and Afghan government, the following use of circumstance of location can be identified:

/Новые обвинения в адрес бывшего афганского губернатора прозвучали на фоне отношений Вашингтона и Кабула/ (line 24).

Literally: New allegations against Afghan ex-governor sounded on the background of complications in relations between Washington and Kabul.

Analysis of dominant participants, process types and circumstances of the source text

As with the TT, the ST includes “Mr. Karzai” (line 40) and “Mr. Abu Bakr” (line 50) as participants. However, unlike the TT, the ST presents President Karzai’s involvement in greater detail through wider use of the participant “Karzai” and related material as well as verbal process types associated with it (Table 52).

Process Types		Material	Line	Mental	Line	Verbal	Line	Relati onal	Line
Partici	American officials	are pressing							33

	evidence					is lacking	37
Mr. Karzai	appointed/ removed						40
U.S. officials				say			43
U.S. investigators				allege			49
Mr. Abu Bakr	ordered						50
the report				alleges			56
witnesses	were pressured						131

	wiretaps					aren't admissible	144
Circumstances	in February 2010						121
	in August 2010						126
	in acts of extortion and corruption						57
	due to lack of evidence						133

Table 52. Case study 3.3 ST Dominant participants, processes and circumstances (Appendix 10B).

Similarly to the TT, participants of the ST include those which refer to “the U.S”. These are, however, more specific in comparison to a more general “the U.S.” in the TT. They are: “American officials” (line 33), “U.S. officials” (line 43) and “U.S. investigators” (line 49). As the most frequently used participants these are associated with a range of process types including verbal, mental, material and relational with predominant use of verbal and mental processes. This reflects the context of the allegations and, to a degree, suggests the inability of the U.S. government to convince the Afghans to pursue the Abu Bakr case. For example:

/American officials are pressing the Afghan government to prosecute a former governor for what U.S. investigators say is involvement in the killings of an

American lieutenant colonel and a U.S. servicewoman, as well as other alleged crimes/ (line 33).

In addition, participants associated with the evidence for the allegations are widely used. These include “evidence” (line 37), “the report” (line 56), “witnesses” (line 131) and “wiretaps” (line 144). By means of the use of circumstance of location in the following case the ST reinforces the legitimacy of the accusation against Abu Bakr:

/he was involved in acts of extortion and corruption/ (line 57).

To emphasise the idea that Karzai’s suspension of Abu Bakr from his governor’s post is controversial and to provide a time frame for his actions, the circumstances of time “in February 2010” (line 121) and then “in August 2010” (line 126) are used. The controversy regarding the actions of the Afghan government is reinforced by the use of the circumstance of cause “due to lack of evidence” in the following case:

/the case was shut down last year due to lack of evidence/ (line 133).

Stage 5. Modality

There are no significant uses of modality in either the TT or the ST. (Appendix 10B).

Stage 6. Interpretation of results and evaluation

Based on the analysis of the linguistic features discussed in case study 3.3 it is possible to suggest the following. Despite the fact that the TT refers to a particular source – *The Wall Street Journal* – and discusses the same issues regarding the U.S. allegations against the Afghan ex-governor Abu Bakr, it constructs quite a different ideology of representation of the discussed events. The TT places the emphasis on the opposition between the allegations from the U.S. side and the disapproval of the U.S. presence in Afghanistan from the Afghan side. In addition, corruption and cronyism involving Afghan governors or administrators are not mentioned in the TT. In contrast, corruption is discussed in the ST, which focuses on evidence from witnesses and wiretaps as well as multiple instances of such activity by Abu Bakr. In addition, the ST extensively discusses the refusal of President Karzai’s government to pursue the Abu Bakr case. As a result, the ideology of representation constructed in the Russian TT, in contrast to its source, is of the constant

frictions between the U.S. and the Afghan government and continuous allegations from the U.S. side against the Afghan officials.

5.3. Discussion and Conclusions

In this chapter, the analysis of twenty news texts across three broad contexts of conflict and intervention has been presented. The case studies presented illustrated the application of the six stages of the SFL-based analytical model and its analytical categories, namely thematic and transitivity structures, modality and context. From the analysis presented above and the collected linguistic evidence it is possible to draw some conclusions about the level of equivalence of constructed representations between a target and its source (or potential source). This equivalence includes considerations of the differences in constructed ideological frameworks and the meanings potentially communicated to the reader of the analysed news texts. Among the modifications and transformations in news translation identified by Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) discussed in the previous chapters, all of the following could be identified: change of title, elimination as well as addition of content, summary of the content of the source and changes in the order in which the information is presented. This contributed to the complexity in the analysis of news texts. As a result evaluations of constructed ideology of representation were made on the level of text rather than in terms of individual linguistic choices. The presented case studies include target texts which are effective pieces of news writing. In addition, they provide illustrations of misrepresentations derived from “ideologically-based” translation. The differences in ideological representation can be seen to relate to differences in socio-political backgrounds – in this case – the U.S. and the Russian Federation which and the national interests of these states.

In the case of the context of the South-Ossetian conflict, the TTs omit the concern and disapproval expressed by the international community. The discussion of Russia’s aggression in the Georgian territory is also omitted as are any political aspects relating to the conflict. In the TTs of this context the U.S. is represented as active and interfering in the affairs of the region by delivering aid. Russia’s disapproval of Georgia’s potential NATO membership is made evident by the misrepresentation of both the NATO Secretary General and his statement regarding Georgia’s potential membership. In the case study which presents a translation of *The Financial Times*, the TT moves the focus away from Russia’s aggression and interference by shifting the agency and using nominalisations. All

the expressive choices highlighted in the analysis both construct and reinforce a particular ideology in each of the analysed news texts.

In the context of the drought and instability in Somalia, the Russian news texts often misrepresent their sources by shifting the focus of the discussion. For instance, they discuss climate conditions in the Horn of Africa while omitting any of the issues discussed in the ST, including the importance of the long-term measures, investment in the region as well as the responsibility of the government. It is possible to suggest that by focusing on climate and the natural environment of the region as inevitable conditions, the TTs in this context reach conclusions regarding necessary measures and policies which are different to those suggested in the STs. The focus on the food aid or “in-kind” aid rather than financial investment justifies and reflects the humanitarian policies and approaches of Russia’s government. Representations which the Russian TTs construct can often be seen as negative. An example of this are the reports related to the *Turkish Airlines* flight where the focus is on the threat of violence in the region, the conflict and its instability. In direct contrast to the report of the TT, the source (which this TT refers to), discusses the first flight to Mogadishu as a source of potential development and opportunities for the region.

News texts from the third context construct different representations of victims and aggressors in each particular case. Within one case study a U.S. soldier is represented as an aggressor and the representative of the nation, whilst in one of the STs of the same case study, coalition forces in Afghanistan – NATO soldiers – are discussed as victims. Such evidence of constructed representations reinforces the fact that each particular news text constructs an ideology of representation within the ideological framework to which it belongs. As a result, sources are often misrepresented – a fact that is not evident to the reader. Chapter 6 presents further discussion in the context of news translation, examining the theoretical, methodological and empirical contributions of the research presented in this thesis.

Chapter 6. Findings and Discussion

6.1 Introduction

This chapter aims to provide a critical commentary as to the implications of the conducted research presented in this thesis. Specifically, this commentary will start with a discussion of the importance of the research in the context of news translation analysis and related studies. It will then provide an overview of the theoretical, methodological and empirical contributions that the research makes to the field. Following on from this will be a discussion of the findings of the research, suggesting areas of future investigation that might be explored. Discussion of the findings will lead to a reflection on my own development as a researcher.

Translation is an integral part of the process of news production as it mediates and transforms news content across contexts and languages. This thesis has critically examined issues related to the relationship between source and target in the translation of news texts, exploring the definition of “news translation”. In this research, the definition of “news translation” used has been constructed both from existing research in the area of news translation (Valdeón 2008; Bielsa and Bassnett 2009; Baker 2010; Conway 2010 and Van Doorslaer 2010) as well through the increased understanding of the process of translation developed by analysing news texts in this thesis. As such, “news translation” is defined as a process of writing and rewriting of news content which involves incorporation of stylistically and structurally varied information and content from a range of sources recontextualised and reproduced for a new target audience. The complexity of this process of news translation means that the role of the translator cannot be defined within the traditional notion of “translation”. It is the journalist and the translator who creates and recreates news content and transfers it across languages, cultures and contexts. As Van Doorslaer rightly points out it is the “journalist-translator” who is “the crucial actor in this process of meaning-making or meaning-remaking” (2010: 11). The complexity and significance of the role of the journalist-translator in the process of news making suggests that more attention and more training should be given to professionals in this area. This point will be addressed in more detail in a later section of this chapter, dealing with the empirical contributions made by this research.

To briefly outline the contributions of this research (to be expanded on in later sections), research presented in this thesis has investigated questions which have been problematic in the area of news translation. It has contributed to Translation Studies not only by presenting a position which can be taken with regard to questions about the relationship between source and target in news translation or translation between different contexts and ideological frameworks, but also by offering a framework within which this position can be applied. It has illustrated the applicability of a six-stage model based on the SFL theory, developing this model and applying it to the translation analysis of Russian and English language news texts. It has also contributed to an understanding of the ways in which the meaning of news content can potentially be misrepresented, demonstrating how such misrepresentations can affect the public understanding of conflicts and the representations of other nations, political or military groups and their actions. It has suggested that such public understanding can have a serious impact on the shaping and reception of policy.

Chapter 1 of the research has presented the background for and the context of the research questions being asked. It has focused on the issues of globalisation, media and conflict, examining the ways in which these might transform news content. In addition, it has presented an overview of the research including the methodology, data and organisation of the study.

Chapter 2 has discussed practices and strategies in news translation, examining a news text as a political text in the context of political and military conflict and intervention. This chapter has also examined a number of important characteristics of news translation including the challenges posed to the process by the issue of intertextuality. Chapter 2 has presented the problem of source and target relationship in news translation, discussing the understanding of equivalence with regard to this problem.

Chapter 3 has presented the theory of SFL. This has involved the examination of language as a social semiotic system (particularly relevant in the language of media) and critical linguistics as the basis for SFL. Chapter 3 has also provided a detailed overview of the key categories and components of the Systemic Functional theory as well as a discussion of the existing applications of SFL in translation analysis.

Chapter 4 has addressed methodological aspects of the research. Specifically, it has looked at the application of the SFL-based model to the analysis of news texts translation. As such

it has presented the methodological considerations and analytical categories considered relevant to the use of the SFL model in this context. Chapter 4 has provided a description of the methods used for data selection and collection in this research. Examples have been given regarding the application of the analytical categories to the data. This exemplification has involved providing illustrations of such applications through examples from the data. Chapter 4 has also presented the six stages of the SFL-based model adopted for the analysis of news texts translations, in relation to both their actual and potential sources. The six stages include the following: case study structure analysis, context analysis, thematic structure analysis, transitivity structure analysis, modality and interpretation of results and evaluation of the constructed ideology.

Chapter 5 has presented a data analysis, discussion and evaluation of the findings. In this chapter, the data has been presented in the form of case studies, organised by context under one of the following three headings:

1. The context of the South-Ossetian conflict – military intervention and war in Georgia (2008-2009).
2. The context of instability in Somalia – famine, humanitarian intervention and political unrest (2011-2012).
3. The context of Afghanistan – military intervention, war and political instability (2010 and 2012).

This final chapter, Chapter 6, concludes the study by presenting a critical reflection on the theoretical, methodological and empirical contributions offered by the research presented in this thesis. It also discusses possible directions for further research as well as limitations of the study.

This thesis has presented research on the translation of news texts in the context of political and military conflict and intervention. In the course of this research the following questions have been addressed.

With regard to the analysis of news texts:

- Given that features of news texts such as intertextuality present problems with regard to identifying a source for any given target text, can potential sources be

identified? How can the analysis of “potential” sources contribute to the understanding of the analysed target news texts?

- In translated news texts, how can equivalence be assessed at the level of the overall representation (“equivalence in representation”) rather than at that of word or sentence level?
- Given the complex relationship between source and target news texts, how does assessment of the equivalence between the target and its potential sources contribute to the evaluation of the representation constructed in such texts?

With regard to the applicability of SFL:

- Can the SFL theory be applied to the analysis of translated news texts and their potential sources so as to assess “equivalence in representation”?
- Can an SFL-based model with a range of components (including thematic structure, transitivity structure, modality and context) account for differences in the constructed ideology of representation in news texts in political and military context?

The following sections of this chapter are aimed at discussing the ways in which these questions have been explored in this research. Rather than going into detail regarding the answers – which have been covered in previous chapters of this research – these sections outline the contributions resulting both from the specific answers and from the research in general. This is done by looking at theoretical, methodological and empirical contributions of the research and the relationship of those contributions to the existing research in the area of news translation.

6.2. Theoretical contributions

As a contextual background for the study presented in this thesis, the literature review has provided an interdisciplinary discussion of the processes of globalisation and media practices where, by means of translation and rewriting of news content, information is transferred between different socio-political environments and settings. Study of the role of language within this transfer of information is of vital importance. Rapid technological developments and processes of globalisation have affected not only the ways in which information is transferred but the context of that transfer. Changes in the characteristics of

the context for translation include reductions in the time and space (textually), constraints imposed by the editorial requirements and practices, an increasing variety of sources used and of readers viewing the text, increasing access of readers to information and a consequent demand for turnaround of content from readers and editors. The major impact of such characteristics on the production of news texts for target audiences is in the limited amount of time and a high density of sources and information that a journalist-translator works with. As Conway rightly points out “interpretation in the broader sense describes much of what journalists do” (2010: 187).

In such a context of instantaneous transfer of information, a journalist-translator often recreates news content from a range of varied sources. Within the analysis of target news texts, analysis of such sources could provide clues as to the ways in which news content is reconstructed and recontextualised by a journalist-translator. Bielsa and Bassnett (2009) question the necessity of identifying sources in order to analyse target news texts, primarily focusing on target news texts as final products. Similarly, Baker (2010) is more concerned with the recontextualised product, the result of the process of “re-framing”. The research presented in this thesis illustrates how by identifying “potential” sources, it is possible to evaluate “constructed ideology of representation” in translated news texts revealing and exploring the ability of translators to misrepresent those sources.

At this point it is useful to look at the terms being used, as they reflect much of the aims of the research being presented. The term “potential” news source recognises the fact that more than one source can often be identified for a news text in question. In the course of the research, where no particular source could be identified the source was described as “potential”, acknowledging that more than one source may have been used. The second term – “constructed ideology of representation” – is based on the notion of “representation” and “construction of reality”. Following Baker (2010) it would have been possible to apply the narrative framework to the analysis of news texts and use the term “frame” or “framing” as it accounts for the representation constructed and reconstructed in a news text as final product. However, “framing” is synonymous with the process of making conscious decisions (as a result of which a news story is “framed”), whilst “constructed ideology of representation” aims to shift the focus from the process and possible translator’s motivations to the news text as a representation of the ideological context, reproduced consciously or unconsciously.

SFL provides resources for analysing such representations outlined above on a range of levels where analysis is not subjectively limited to some lexical items or grammatical structures and where evaluation of such items is not seen through the lens of the journalist's motivations but looks at a broader socio-political context. As a term, "constructed ideology of representation" recognises the three following strands of meaning construction in a news text: (1) understanding of meaning and language as a social semiotic system which can be constructed; (2) ideological frameworks and socio-political settings in which this meaning is formed and presented; and (3) representation in its broad sense that accounts for understanding of events as being represented rather than reflecting reality.

At this point it may be useful to examine why an SFL framework was used in the research, rather than a Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA). As outlined by Fairclough (1995) CDA can provide interpretations of constructed representations and institutional as well as discourse processes that motivate such representations. However, unlike the SFL-based analysis as developed in this thesis, CDA is selective, focusing only on those lexical items and grammatical structures which have been (subjectively) deemed to be salient. This limitation (within the context of this research) is well demonstrated by Valdeón (2009: 68) who refers to Fairclough's (2001) model of CDA focusing on a set of questions which are "strictly relevant" to the analysis of lexical items. These questions primarily focus on the ideological significance and the value of individual lexical items. CDA is more concerned with "concrete lexical items", according to Valdeón (2009: 68). SFL, in contrast, works with the majority of the lexical items and grammatical structures of a news texts and aims to interpret these as a cumulative effect. In this way it seeks to examine the "representation of reality" of the context in which the translation is produced. As such the SFL model is eminently more suitable than that of CDA to the questions explored in this research and to its overall aims.

As part of this research a six-stage model of the SFL analysis framework has been developed. This model facilitates the study of the ways in which choices of lexicogrammar provide evidence of the constructed ideology of representation in translated news texts, reflecting and reinforcing existing ideological bias. As demonstrated in the literature review, the applications of SFL in Translation Studies to date have been shown to be somewhat fragmented in their approaches, providing evaluations and findings limited to a set of lexical items or structures. Such applications can be found in the work of Mason

(2010) and Baker (2011) who examine lexical and structural choices, Munday (2004) studying choices of modality and House (2006) and Pérez (2007) analysing transitivity, register and context. The limitation of such studies in the context of the research presented in this thesis is that previous studies have been limited to particular lexical items or structural elements. Such fragmented application of SFL categories would not be suitable in the case of the research presented in this thesis as it aims to provide representation constructed on the level of text. This does not include a limited set of lexical items or structural characteristics but examines lexico-grammar of the whole text. The following section critically discusses the effectiveness of the developed model and the methodological approach underpinning it.

6.3. Methodological contributions

As discussed previously, one of the main requirements identified by this research is the ability to interpret and evaluate the linguistic choices made in relation to a particular socio-political context. It has been argued that this can most effectively be done through analysis of a varied range of lexical and grammatical structures of a news text, which in turn has led to the identification of the SFL model as the most suitable theoretical foundation on which to base this work. However, it is also the very density and complexity of analysis which results from the application of SFL theory to a wide range of linguistic units which poses challenges and raises limitations. The depth of the analysis which the theory suggests is often neither relevant, nor practical in the analysis of news texts and their sources. Examples of these issues may be seen in the analysis of mood structures within the model, or its differentiation between positive and negative processes as a part of the transitivity structure. The difficulty has arisen predominantly in terms of applying a range of such components that was not systematised or limited to specific categories. The aims of this research, in terms of the questions to be addressed, required that a range of categories and linguistic units be analysed in a practical way that is applicable to the analysis of lengthy news pieces within three different contexts. For this purpose a six-stage model of analysis was developed. Based on SFL categories, this model includes a range of categories from within the areas of thematic and transitivity structures and modality that can be analysed in a systematised way. The model is based around the notion of context as the analysis starts with the discussion of context and progresses towards the analysis of identified linguistics categories, concluding with the interpretation of these categories in context. The following stages of the model were identified:

- Stage 1. Case study structure analysis.
- Stage 2. Context analysis.
- Stage 3. Thematic analysis.
- Stage 4. Transitivity analysis.
- Stage 5. Modality.
- Stage 6. Interpretation and evaluation of the constructed ideology of representation.

The application of the SFL-based model in this research has demonstrated that by means of analysing lexico-grammatical choices of a target news text in comparison to its source text specific ideologies of representation can be analysed, interpreted and evaluated in a given socio-political context.

In addition to the complexity of the SFL model and its practical applicability to the analysis of news texts, potential issues with applying the model to the Russian language news texts were identified. Baker has argued (2011) that the application of certain thematic elements to languages other than English, such as, for example, Spanish, Portuguese or German is not effective due to the different syntax of these languages as compared to English. While differences in syntax are clearly present, it was found in the process of applying the SFL-based model to the Russian language news texts that potential issues with syntax were actually not significant. Despite the differences in syntax, analysis of themes and thematic structures was successfully and effectively applied to the Russian language news texts. This is principally because whilst in Russian syntactic structures may vary the word order follows the SVO model consistently and in line with that of English. As will be suggested in discussions of further research possibilities, the successful application of the six-stage SFL-based model to analysis of Russian texts raises the possibility of the analysis of other language pairs. Such analysis would allow not only for raising awareness of misrepresentations and inappropriately “constructed ideology of representation” but would also facilitate comparison of such across different language contexts, revealing the extent to which such takes place in those contexts.

6.4. Empirical contributions

Empirical contributions of the research presented in this thesis can be examined in two ways. The first concerns national interests and the effects of the representations upon them, in terms of the realities and contexts constructed in the analysed news texts. The second is with regard to the importance of raising awareness of the processes of news translation. This also includes the need to understand the complexity of the journalistic translation and news writing so as to raise awareness of the need for training that both recognises the role of a journalist-translator and provides those taking on this role with the necessary skills.

The analytical model adopted and adapted for this research has provided linguistic evidence which identifies the constructed ideology of representation in the political news texts of Russian, British and U.S. online news media. It has highlighted the differences in the ideological frameworks constructed and communicated by these media sources. For each of the three analysed contexts of political and military conflict, instability or intervention the analysis has demonstrated how by means of linguistic choices representations of national realities are constructed. It has also shown, through examples, how these constructions may misrepresent that presented in the original source material, or in terms of the actual events being reported.

In the case of the South-Ossetian conflict, the analysis of the target news texts written for a Russian-speaking audience in the post-Soviet area constructs the following representation of reality. The focus of these news texts is on the interference of the U.S. in the region through its attempts to assist Georgia's civilians. The Russian move into Georgia is neither presented as a military action nor as an act of aggression. The target news texts analysed in the set of case studies dealing with the Georgian conflict emphasise the U.S. political interest in the region. Representations constructed in these news texts reinforce the idea that tensions between the U.S. and Russia continue to exist. This points to Russia's continual striving for domination in the region and the consequent long-lasting effects of this on the welfare of the residents there. However, ideologically motivated, such representation when not balanced by other sources can have a detrimental effect on the public and its understanding of political reality. Similar representations continue to be constructed in the Russian media today in relation to the war in the Eastern regions of Ukraine. Such news reporting can have effects not only on the public awareness of the political reality but on the actions that the same public takes to support or refute the rights

and responsibilities of the government. In addition, such news reporting may create representations which cause the public to view events and those acting in them in terms of stereotypes. An example of this may be seen in the depiction of the U.S. as striving for power in the region, which is often used as a cover-up for Russia's "need to take action" in the post-Soviet region.

In addition to political effects, representations constructed by the media can also have environmental, economic and socio-political effects, and can affect the ways in which policies are drawn. Examples of the economic and socio-political effects can be seen in the case of the South-Ossetian conflict, where the linguistic analysis of Western news texts reporting on the conflict in Afghanistan provides evidence of a tendency to focus on the details of the U.S. intervention. Russian news texts in the context of the Afghanistan war foreground failures of the U.S. and the damage its actions have brought to the local population. In contrast, the Russian news texts analysed in this context reinforce existing stereotypes of the violence of the U.S. and its strive for power in the region. Importantly, texts from the Western news media focus on corruption, cronyism and aid from Pakistan for terrorist groups in Afghanistan as sources of the socio-economic problems in the country. This not only suggests Russia's interest in Pakistan but also foregrounds the idea that similar socio-political problems such as corruption and cronyism are not unusual within the country's social structure. In the Russian media sources, on the other hand, such matters are not emphasised and are mentioned with minimum detail. By failing to point to the importance of Pakistan's involvement in the region as well as burning socio-political issues of corruption, the Russian media fails to present the public with the fragmented reality of the conflict. In failing to acknowledge the fact that corruption plays a significant role in Afghanistan's poor social and political conditions, the Russian media makes it difficult (if not impossible) for the public to make any connections or draw any comparisons between this situation and that within Russia itself.

The reinforcement of national interests and existing stereotypes can also be seen in news texts reporting on the contexts of Somalia and Afghanistan. As will be seen, such reinforcement of stereotypes may have a serious impact on the drawing up of policies and on the support that such receives from the public. In the news texts reporting on the context of Somalia in 2011, the Russian media tends to present natural causes as the reasons for the crisis. As a result of this the solutions which are reported not only misrepresent those actually suggested by aid agencies and other organisations, but are seriously inadequate in

relation to the problems outlined. The Russian news texts analysed in the case studies of this context represent the crisis as a result of a drought, as a natural disaster caused in part by the climatic changes and also through the peculiarities of the climate in the region. This is in contrast to the representation of the Western media (U.S. and British online sources) where the focus is on preventive measures which could be taken, outlining the responsibility the local government would need to take for this and the investment which would be required in order to avoid similar crises in the future. In this context, the Russian media has shifted the emphasis onto the natural causes and the inevitability of the crisis. Such representations are reflected in the policy implemented by the Russian Federation and its approach to aid, that is, its reluctance to provide cash aid. One potential consequence which could be viewed as resulting from such a representation of this crisis and the policy arising from it is that there is little public support for cash aid from the Russian public in similar situations (Brezhneva & Ukhova, 2013). Analysis of the case studies within the three selected contexts has illustrated how the U.S., British and Russian online news media construct representations of reality that often not only correspond to but reflect national interests, their policies and practices. Such analysis has also led to conclusions regarding the political, economic, social and environmental impacts that such representations can have on the sector of policy-making and society's democratic development. Given the wide ranging and significant potential impacts of such representations it would seem vital not only that more training is given to those in a position to construct them, raising awareness of the issues, but also that the public has more information about how such representations may be manipulative and misleading.

As discussed, the second aspect of the research – its interdisciplinary nature – contributes not only to the field of Translation Studies, but most importantly to journalistic practices in general and more specifically to both translation in the media and to the analysis of political discourse within that practise of translation. Issues raised in this chapter as well as throughout this thesis lead to the conclusion that certain things could be done in order to improve the transparency of the process of news translation and to improve public access to the information on which the translation is based. As pointed out earlier in this chapter, the role of a news translator is often that of a journalist-translator, someone who writes and rewrites news content, creating and recreating meaning (Valdeón 2008; Conway 2010 and Van Doorslaer 2010). The issues outlined in the previous paragraphs of this section, indicating the wide ranging impacts of translation, demonstrate the need for translator training that is incorporated into journalistic studies. The suggestion here is that rather than

this being taught as a part of a module that looks at an array of translation practices in a variety of professional contexts, it should be separated and, possibly, taught within a module on translation issues in the media. The discussion of the previous paragraphs would also suggest that the complexity of the role of news translator is not fully understood, or at least appreciated by those directly involved in the process. As such, there would seem to be a real need for training workshops on this topic for professionals involved in the creation of news content. It is important that the potential socio-political, economic and environmental impact of constructed representations in news texts is communicated both to the existing professionals in the field and to those looking at becoming professional translators and journalists. As for the general public, awareness of the covert translation practices and writing strategies needs to be raised. This could be done by engaging directly with the public through workshops, public lectures and seminars. This would best be supported through conducting further research in this area (as suggested in the latter sections of this chapter) which could then be made available and accessible to the public. In the context of the impact of translation and news writing on the construction of social reality, particularly in cases where sources are used, it might be advisable that a disclaimer is used. By disclaiming responsibility for the content of the sources and explicitly stating which sources have been consulted in the construction of the text, a translated news text might achieve higher transparency, if not objectivity. Research in the area of news translation and raising awareness of the public and professionals all contribute to the advancement and improvement of democracy within society and across societies.

6.5. Limitations of the study

Before proceeding with the recommendations and directions for further research which might seem to be a logical conclusion to the possible impacts of news writing, it is first necessary to register the limitations which this study has faced. This needs to be done both in order to be able to identify how these limitations can be addressed in future work and to recognise the impact that these limitations have had on this research. In terms of the research presented in this thesis, three strands of limitations can be identified. Specifically these are limitations in the scope of the analysed data, in the variety of news sources analysed and in the extratextual components of the selected data.

First, as to the scope of the selected data, a relatively limited number of news texts were identified and analysed. In total twenty news texts were allocated into case studies based on one of three discussed contexts of conflict. This limitation in the number of analysed texts was dictated by the need to conduct a detailed qualitative linguistic analysis of news texts at a range of levels rather than identify any quantitative characteristics. The rationale for such an analysis has been outlined in previous sections of this chapter, and previous chapters of this research. Whilst the number of analysed texts is sufficient for the purposes of the research presented in this thesis, a larger corpus would provide a broader picture of the ideological framework constructed in the online news media, particularly if analysed within one specific context.

Secondly, the focus of this study has been on the selection of news texts in specific contexts and time frames. As a result of this priority, across all selected texts a limited variety of news sources has been analysed. The principle result of this limitation is that no systematic or general conclusions can be made with regard to the practices and ideological frameworks within which these online news media work. That said, it should be noted from the research questions outlined previously, that such a general investigation into media practices was not a significant concern of this research.

Last but not least, the research is limited in terms of the analysis of the extratextual characteristics of the selected data. Such characteristics may include photographs, links, the presentation of the text on screen and other extra-textual materials. This limitation was dictated in large part by the access to the data. Specifically, the texts available for analysis through the nexus database, or through consulting media archives have often been stripped of any extratextual characteristics, being presented as pure text. Extra-textual material may be important to the representation constructed, in that it may add to the contextualisation of the information or provide a focus for it. That said, as before, the focus of this research as set out in the questions was to conduct a textual analysis. In addition, while this lack of extra-textual materials is a limitation in the presented research, such could be addressed in future work by selecting current data as it appears in the online news media in any selected current conflict or context of socio-political or economic instability of both a global and local impact. This leads us to the discussion of the suggestions for further research.

6.6. Recommendations and suggestions for further research

The study presented in this thesis forms the basis for further research in the area of news translation and political discourse analysis. The following section maps out suggestions for further research as well as reflecting on the researcher's personal and professional development in this area.

First of all, as to the methodology applied to the analysis of translated news texts, the six-stage SFL-model allows for a balanced yet detailed analysis of linguistic characteristics of a text in context. As for its applications to languages other than English, it has proved effective in the analysis of the Russian language news texts. As a result, it can be suggested that the application of the model could be tested on other languages and language-pairs to study the ways in which particular national interests are reinforced as well as to examine the ways in which public opinion is constructed through those languages.

In relation to the construction of public opinion, another area of investigation in news translation that could be explored is the response of the target audience to the representations constructed by means of lexico-grammatical choices in the text. The need for such a study – focused on the audiences' response to translated texts – is emphasised by Mason (2010). The author suggests the following:

Enquiry into the actual effects of translators' decision making on users of translations would add considerable support to the kinds of claims we wish to make about discourse and ideology in translation. (Mason, 2010: 95)

This direction of the research would inform understanding of how constructed ideology of representation influences readers' perceptions of conflicts and wars. It may reveal if, or how, such perceptions can potentially affect the process of decision-making, foreign policy and conflict management. The implications of such a strand of research would not only be sensitisation of the audience to the implications of translation in the news media, but also raising the awareness of those impacted by the perceptions of the audience (e.g. public organisations and figures) as to the role of translation.

As discussed at the end of the previous section, further research might also involve the analysis of extratextual content. Such analysis would require the study of the transformations such content undergoes in the process of translation and how it is affected by or affects the perception of text on screen. Such analysis could encompass extratextual materials such as photographs, links, the presentation of the text on screen, the frequency with which the text is updated and how such updates influence the construction of a news text and its meaning.

These suggestions are the principal recommendations among the many possible directions that this research can take in the area of Translation Studies combining the research methods offered by Journalistic and Political Studies. They have been selected primarily for the impact they might have, but also for their proximity to the research that has been conducted and laid out in this thesis. As such, they are suggestions for research which might build from or expand on that discussed in this paper.

This is the logical point at which to outline the ways in which the conducted research has helped me develop as a researcher. Previous discussions of the work carried out as part of this research should have made it clear how much I have developed as a researcher. Specifically, in terms of the skills gained, the research helped me to work both independently and as part of a team of researchers within the related area of knowledge; analysing critically and solving problems; planning, organising and carrying out independent research as well as communicating complex ideas to different audiences – from researchers in the related field to member of the public and students. In the course of the conducted research I have also gained confidence in teaching a module on Translation Issues in the Media which directly dealt with the issues raised and examined in this thesis. Finally, conducted research gave rise to external recommendations as well as opening up an opportunity for developing specific sections of the research into publications.

On the final note, the research carried out has opened up new questions and strands for future research. The foundations it has laid, on which other work may be built are: issues of constructing socio-political reality, discussing transparency of news sources and the ways in which public's views and opinions as well as policy-making might be affected, it has contributed theoretically, methodologically as well as empirically to the area of news translation analysis. It has developed a ground for giving rise to more research in this socially and politically significant area of Translation Studies.

APPENDIX 1.

1. Context of the South-Ossetian conflict (2008 - 2009):

Case study 1.1 *The U.S. Humanitarian Operation in Georgia Continues.*

RIA Novosti (18 August, 2008) ‘Пентагон намерен продолжать оказывать гуманитарную помощь Грузии’ (Literally: The Pentagon intends to continue to provide humanitarian assistance to Georgia).

Source: *U.S. Department of Defense: American Forces Press Service* (18 August, 2008) ‘\$2 Million Humanitarian Mission in Georgia to Continue’.

Case study 1.2 *The Security Threat from Russia and its Potential Isolation.*

EuroNews (19 September, 2008) ‘Делегация ООН прибыла в Южную Осетию’ (Literally: UN delegation arrived to South Ossetia).

Source 1: *U.S. Department of State Archive* (18 September, 2008) ‘Secretary Rice Addresses U.S.-Russia Relations At the German Marshall Fund’.

Source 2: *Agence France Presse* (18 September, 2008) ‘Gates Urges Caution in NATO Response to Russia’.

Case study 1.3 ‘Ukraine is Not Georgia’.

InoSMI.Ru (16 September, 2009) ‘В преддверии выборов Ющенко критикует Москву’ (Literally: Ahead of elections Yushchenko criticises Moscow).

Source: *The Financial Times* (14 September, 2009) ‘Yushchenko Hits at Moscow Ahead of Poll’.

2. Context of instability in Somalia (2011 - 2012):

Case study 2.1 *The FAO Call for Assistance*.

RIA Novosti (18 August, 2011) ‘ФАО призывает оказать срочную продовольственную помощь странам Африканского Рога’ (Literally: FAO calls for urgent food aid to the countries of the Horn of Africa).

Source: *FAO.org* (18 August, 2011) ‘Meeting on Horn of Africa calls for tackling root causes of famine’.

Case study 2.2 *Emergency Assistance to the Horn of Africa*.

Business World Journal (15 September, 2011) ‘Восточная Африка: Продовольственный кризис’ (Literally: East Africa: Food Crisis).

Source: *Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest* (28 July, 2011) ‘Food Access Key as Horn of Africa Crisis Worsens, Say Agencies’.

Case study 2.3 *Turkish Airlines Starts Flying to Somalia*.

Izvestia.ru (06 March, 2012) ‘В Сомали пришел крупный авиаперевозчик впервые за 20 лет гражданской войны’ (Literally: To Somalia a major aircraft came for the first time in 20 years of civil war).

Source: *BBC News* (06 March, 2012) ‘Somalia: Turkish Airlines begins flights to Mogadishu’.

3. Context of Afghanistan (2010 and 2012):

Case study 3.1 *The U.S. Military Campaign in Afghanistan*.

RIA Novosti (22 July, 2010) ‘Эффективность тактики США в Афганистане вызывает сомнения - USA Today’ (Literally: Effectiveness of U.S. tactics in Afghanistan evokes doubts).

Source: *USA Today* (21 July, 2010) ‘Can Afghanistan be saved? As questions about U.S. effort mount, Petraeus steps into the breach’.

Case study 3.2 *Killings of Civilians in Kandahar Province*.

RIA Novosti (26 March, 2012) ‘Среди жертв сержанта Бейлса в Афганистане была беременная женщина’ (Literally: Among the victims of Sgt. Bales in Afghanistan there was a pregnant woman).

Source 1: *International Herald Tribune/ The Global Edition of the New York Times* (26 March, 2012) ‘Paying a Price Amid the Fog of War’.

Source 2: *The New York Times* (26 March, 2012) ‘3 NATO Soldiers Killed by Afghan Security Officers’.

Case study 3.3 U.S. Investigations: the Case of Afghan Ex-governor Abu Bakr.

Lenta.ru (30 March, 2012) ‘США потребуют наказать афганского экс-губернатора за убийство американцев’ (Literally: USA will demand to punish Afghan ex-governor for the murder of Americans).

Source: *The Wall Street Journal* (01 April, 2012) (with corrections) U.S. Blames Senior Afghan in Deaths.

APPENDIX 2.

APPENDIX 2A. Case study 1.1 *The U.S. Humanitarian Operation in Georgia Continues.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: RIA Novosti (18 August, 2008)

Пентагон намерен продолжать оказывать гуманитарную помощь Грузии

ВАШИНГТОН, 18 авг - РИА Новости, Алексей Березин.

- 1 /Американское военное ведомство,/ которое уже доставило в Грузию гуманитарной /American military department/ which already delivered to Georgia humanitarian
- 2 помоши на два миллиона долларов,/ намерено продолжать гуманитарную операцию,/ aid of two million dollars,/ determined-is continue humanitarian operation/
- 3 заявил журналистам представитель Пентагона Брайан Уитман./ told journalists representative Pentagon-of Bryan Whitman/
- 4 /"Мы намерены продолжать помошь./ Мы делали это в выходные и продолжим на этой /We determined-are continue aid./ We did-ing this in weekend and continue-will on this
- 5 неделе"/, - сказал Уитман на брифинге в Пентагоне./ week/ said Whitman at briefing in Pentagon./

- 6 /Кроме гуманитарных грузов, доставленных по воздуху в Грузию, США разрешили /Besides humanitarian supplies, delivered by air to Georgia, USA allowed
- 7 грузинским властям воспользоваться "неприкосновенным запасом" США,/ который Georgian authorities use 'untouchable reserve' USA-of,/ which
- 8 хранится на случай чрезвычайных происшествий в Грузии и оценивается в 1,2 stored-is in case emergency accidents-of in Georgia and valued-is in 1.2
- 9 миллиона долларов./ million dollars./

- 10 /США доставили в Грузию предметы первой необходимости: одеяла, спальные мешки

/USA delivered to Georgia items first necessity-of: blankets, sleeping bags

11 и сотни раскладных кроватей, а также медикаменты, в том числе шприцы, иголки, нити
and hundreds beds-of, and also medicine, in that number syringes, needles, thread

12 для наложения швов, катетеры и перевязочный материал./
for overlay stitches-of , catheters and dressing material./

13 **/В настоящее время** в Чарльстоне (штат Южная Каролина) к вылету готовится
/In present time in Charleston (state South Carolina) for flight prepare-ing

14 транспортный самолет C-17 Globemaster III. / **Он** доставит в Грузию продукты питания./
transport plane C-17 Globemaster III. /**It** deliver-will to Georgia products food-of./

15 **/Кроме этого, гуманитарная помощь от США** поступает в Грузию **самолетами С-**
/Besides this, humanitarian aid from USA enters in Georgia **planes C-**

16 **130 Hercules**,/ **которые** вылетают из Германии./
130 Hercules,/ **which** fly from Germany./

17 **/В понедельник** в Грузию ожидается прибытие самолета **C-9 Nightingale c**
/On Monday to Georgia expected-is arrival plane-of **C-9 Nightingale with**

18 **гуманитарными грузами и С-17**,/ **который** доставит разгрузочную технику для
humanitarian supplies and C-17,/ **which** deliver-will unloading equipment for

19 облегчения распределения гуманитарной помощи./ **По словам Уитмана**, в
easening distribution-of humanitarian aid./ **By words Whitman-of**, in

20 гуманитарной операции на территории Грузии задействовано около 125 человек
humanitarian operation on territory Georgia-of involved-is around 125 people

21 военного персонала США./
military personnel-of USA./

22 **/Между тем,/ как отметил Уитман**,/ США рассматривает варианты отправки
/Between that,/ as noted Whitman,/ USA look-ing variants dispatch-of

23 военных кораблей к грузинским берегам для продолжения гуманитарной операции./ **В**
military ships to Georgian shores for continuing humanitarian operation./ **In**

24 **настоящее время** детали морской операции,/ **в соответствии с которой**
present time details marine operation-of,/ **in accordance with which**

25 американским военным кораблям должны быть открыт проход через турецкие воды,/

American military ships should be open passage through Turkish waters,/

26 прорабатываются Государственным департаментом./
worked-are-ing State department./

Literally:

The Pentagon intends to continue to provide humanitarian assistance to Georgia

Washington, 18 August – RIA Novosti, Aleksey Berezyn.

The U.S. military which has already delivered to Georgia humanitarian aid worth \$2 million, is determined to continue humanitarian operation, Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman told reporters.

'We are determined to continue the aid. We have been doing this over the weekend and will continue this week', said Whitman at the briefing in Pentagon.

Besides humanitarian supplies delivered by air to Georgia, the U.S. allowed Georgian authorities to use the U.S. 'untouchable reserve' which is stored in case of emergency in Georgia and is valued at \$1.2 million.

The U.S. have delivered to Georgia essential items: blankets, sleeping bags and hundreds of camp beds, but also medication, including syringes, needles, thread for sutures, catheters and dressings.

Currently in Charleston (state South Carolina) a transport aircraft C-17 Globemaster III is preparing for the flight. Besides, humanitarian aid from the U.S. arrives to Georgia by planes C-130 Hercules which fly from Germany.

On Monday to Georgia arrival of the plane C-9 Nightingale with humanitarian supplies and C-17, which will deliver unloading equipment to facilitate the distribution of humanitarian aid is expected. According to Whitman, about 125 U.S. military personnel are involved in the humanitarian operation on the territory of Georgia.

Meanwhile, as Whitman has noted, the U.S. are considering options of sending warships to Georgian shores to continue the humanitarian operation. Currently, details of the maritime operation, according to which a passage through Turkish waters should be open to the U.S. warships, are being worked out by the Department of State.

Source text: U.S. Department of Defense: American Forces Press Service (18 August, 2008)

\$2 Million Humanitarian Mission in Georgia to Continue

By John J. Kruzel
American Forces Press Service

27 WASHINGTON, Aug. 18, 2008 – **The U.S. military** has delivered \$2 million worth of
28 humanitarian aid to Georgia in an ongoing effort to relieve the war-torn former Soviet
29 republic/ that came under Russian attack 10 days ago./

30 **/In addition to 130 tons of airlifted cargo**, U.S. European Command has granted the
31 Georgian government in Tbilisi access to a \$1.2 million stockpile of disaster relief and
32 medical supplies stored in Georgia./

33 **/“We** are going to continue to flow in assistance,”/ **Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman**
34 said today./ **“We** have been over the weekend,/ **and we** will continue this week.”/
35 **/More than 700 pallets sent by the U.S.** have consisted of thousands of blankets, sheets,

36 sleeping bags, and hundreds of cots./ ***Another 40 pallets*** have contained medical supplies like
37 sutures, needles, syringes, catheters and gauze,/ Whitman said./

38 /***But despite the steady flow of supplies***, there remains a shortage of food, bedding, tents and
39 other supplies in Georgia,/ ***where*** an estimated 80,000 people are displaced, according to U.S.
40 Agency for International Development figures./

41 /“***There*** is a real need,/ ***and we***’re trying to fill that need and alleviate the suffering,”/
42 ***Whitman*** said./

43 /***Sustained flights by American C-17 Globemaster III aircraft departing from Charleston,***
44 ***S.C.***, will deliver food over the next several days,/ ***in addition*** to twice-daily deliveries by C-
45 130 Hercules planes leaving Germany with other supplies./

46 /***Meanwhile, a C-9 Nightingale*** is expected to land in Georgia today carrying humanitarian
47 aid,/ ***and a C-17*** will deliver a shipment of forklifts to aid distribution efforts./

48 /***Whitman*** said/ ***fewer than 125 U.S. military personnel*** are on the ground involved in the
49 relief mission./

50 /***Deliveries from U.S. aircraft*** are handed off to personnel from about 6 non-governmental
51 organizations responsible for delivering the supplies in Georgia,/ ***Whitman*** said./ ***There*** have
52 been no reports of significant problems with distribution,/ ***he*** added./

53 /***Meanwhile, the U.S.*** is looking at other options for sustaining the humanitarian operation,
54 including sending naval vessels to the area,/ ***Whitman*** said./ ***The State Department*** is
55 working necessary agreements to achieve passage through the straits of Turkey and
56 elsewhere,/ ***he*** added./

57 /“***Surface vessels*** give us the capability to provide larger amounts of relief supplies/ ***because***
58 ***they*** can obviously carry more,/ ***and they*** also give you platform to operate off of;/ ***they*** give
59 you aerial assets, vertical lift, those kind of things,”/ ***he*** said./

60 /***Fighting/ that*** began in the breakaway Georgian region of South Ossetia on Aug. 8/
61 broadened to include Russian attacks on other parts of the country, including Abkhazia,
62 another heavily separatist region./ ***As clashes escalated***, the conflict fueled fears
63 internationally that/ ***Moscow*** would attempt to depose the democratically elected government
64 in Georgia and that/ ***Russian aggression*** could spread to other parts of the region./

65 /***Russian President Dmitriy Medvedev*** on Aug. 16 signed a French-brokered peace deal,/ ***a***
66 ***move*** that came a day after Georgia’s President Mikheil Saakashvili endorsed the agreement./
67 /***The plan*** includes a drawdown of military forces to pre-escalation levels./

68 /***Secretary of State Condoleezza Rice*** headed to Europe today reportedly to talk with NATO
69 allies about what message the U.S. and its allies should send to Russia about the military
70 intervention./

71 /Meanwhile, a host of international partners have contributed to the U.S.-led humanitarian
72 mission in Georgia,/ Whitman said./

73 /“There is broad international support for the relief efforts,”/ he said./

APPENDIX 2B. Case study 1.1 *The U.S. Humanitarian Operation in Georgia Continues.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: RIA Novosti (18 August, 2008)

Пентагон намерен продолжать оказывать гуманитарную помощь Грузии

ВАШИНГТОН, 18 авг - РИА Новости, Алексей Березин.

- 1 /Американское военное ведомство, которое уже **доставило** в Грузию гуманитарной /American military department/ which already **delivered** to Georgia humanitarian
- 2 помоши на два миллиона долларов, / **намерено** продолжать гуманитарную операцию, /aid of two million dollars, **determined-is** / continue humanitarian operation/
- 3 **заявил** журналистам **представитель Пентагона Брайан Уитман.** /
told journalists **representative Pentagon-of Bryan Whitman/**
- 4 /"Мы **намерены** продолжать помошь./ **Мы делали** это в выходные и **продолжим** на
- 5 /**We determined-are** continue aid./ **We did-ing** this in weekend and **continue-will** on
- 6 этой неделе"/, - **сказал Уитман** на брифинге в Пентагоне./
this week/ **said Whitman** at briefing in Pentagon./
- 7 /Кроме гуманитарных грузов, доставленных по воздуху в Грузию, **США разрешили** /Besides humanitarian supplies, delivered by air to Georgia, **USA allowed**
- 8 грузинским властям воспользоваться "неприкасаемым запасом" США, / **который** Georgian authorities use 'untouchable reserve' USA-of, / **which**
- 9 **хранится** на случай чрезвычайных происшествий в Грузии и **оценивается** в 1,2
stored-is in case emergency accidents-of in Georgia and **valued-is** in 1.2
- 10 миллиона долларов./
million dollars./
- 11 /**США доставили** в Грузию предметы первой необходимости: одеяла, спальные /**USA delivered** to Georgia items first neccesity-of: blankets, sleeping
- 12 мешки и сотни раскладных кроватей, а также медикаменты, в том числе шприцы,

bags and hundreds beds-of, and also medicine, in that number syringes,

13 иголки, нити для наложения швов, катетеры и перевязочный материал./
needles, threads for overlay stitches-of , catheters and dressing material./

14 /В настоящее время в Чарльстоне (штат Южная Каролина) к вылету *готовится*
/In present time in Charleston (state South Carolina) for flight *prepare-ing*

15 **транспортный самолет C-17 Globemaster III.** / Он *доставит* в Грузию продукты
transport plane C-17 Globemaster III. /It *deliver-will* to Georgia products

16 питания./ Кроме этого, **гуманитарная помощь от США поступает** в Грузию
food-of./ Besisdes this, **humanitarian aid from USA enters** in Georgia

17 самолетами C-130 Hercules,/ **которые вылетают** из Германии./
planes C-130 Hercules,/ **which fly** from Germany./

18 /В понедельник в Грузию **ожидается прибытие самолета C-9 Nightingale** с
/On Monday to Georgia **expected-is arrival plane-of C-9 Nightingale** with

19 гуманитарными грузами и C-17,/ **который доставит** разгрузочную технику для
humanitarian supplies and C-17,/ **which deliver-will** unloading equipment for

20 облегчения распределения гуманитарной помощи./ По словам Уитмана, в
easening distribution-of humanitarian aid./ By words Whitman-of, in

21 гуманитарной операции на территории Грузии **задействовано около 125 человек**
humanitarian operation on territory Georgia-of **involved-is around 125 people**

22 военного персонала США./
military personnell-of USA./

23 /Между тем,/ как отметил Уитман,/ **США рассматривает** варианты отправки
/Between that,/ as noted Whitman,/ **USA look-ing** variants dispatch-of

24 военных кораблей к грузинским берегам для продолжения гуманитарной операции./ В
military ships to Georgian shores for continuing humanitarian operation./ In

25 настоящее время **детали морской операции**,/ в соответствии с которой
present time **details marine operation-of**,/ in accordance with which

26 американским военным кораблям **должны быть открыт проход** через турецкие
American military ships **should be open passage** through Turkish

27 воды,/ **прорабатываются** Государственным департаментом./
waters,/ **worked-are-ing** State department./

Literally:

The Pentagon intends to continue to provide humanitarian assistance to Georgia

Washington, 18 August – RIA Novosti, Aleksey Berezyn.

The U.S. military which has already delivered to Georgia humanitarian aid worth \$2 million, is determined to continue humanitarian operation, Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman told reporters.

'We are determined to continue the aid. We have been doing this over the weekend and will continue this week', said Whitman at the briefing in Pentagon.

Besides humanitarian supplies delivered by air to Georgia, the U.S. allowed Georgian authorities to use the U.S. 'untouchable reserve' which is stored in case of emergency in Georgia and is valued at \$1.2 million.

The U.S. have delivered to Georgia essential items: blankets, sleeping bags and hundreds of camp beds, but also medication, including syringes, needles, thread for sutures, catheters and dressings.

Currently in Charleston (state South Carolina) a transport aircraft C-17 Globemaster III is preparing for the flight. Besides, humanitarian aid from the U.S. arrives to Georgia by planes C-130 Hercules which fly from Germany.

On Monday to Georgia arrival of the plane C-9 Nightingale with humanitarian supplies and C-17, which will deliver unloading equipment to facilitate the distribution of humanitarian aid is expected. According to Whitman, about 125 U.S. military personnel are involved in the humanitarian operation on the territory of Georgia.

Meanwhile, as Whitman has noted, the U.S. are considering options of sending warships to Georgian shores to continue the humanitarian operation. Currently, details of the maritime operation, according to which a passage through Turkish waters should be open to the U.S. warships, are being worked out by the Department of State.

Source text: U.S. Department of Defense: American Forces Press Service (18 August, 2008)

\$2 Million Humanitarian Mission in Georgia to Continue

By John J. Kruzel
American Forces Press Service

29 WASHINGTON, Aug. 18, 2008 – /The U.S. military **has delivered** \$2 million worth of
30 humanitarian aid to Georgia in an ongoing effort to relieve the war-torn former Soviet
31 republic/ that came under Russian attack 10 days ago./

32 /In addition to 130 tons of airlifted cargo, U.S. European Command **has granted** the
33 Georgian government in Tbilisi access to a \$1.2 million stockpile of disaster relief and
34 medical supplies stored in Georgia./

35 /“We **are going to continue to flow in** assistance,”/ Pentagon spokesman Bryan Whitman
36 **said** today./ “We **have been** over the weekend,/ and we **will continue** this week.”/
37 /More than 700 pallets sent by the U.S. **have consisted** of thousands of blankets, sheets,

38 sleeping bags, and hundreds of cots./ **Another 40 pallets have contained** medical supplies
39 like sutures, needles, syringes, catheters and gauze,/ **Whitman said.**/

40 /But despite the steady flow of supplies, there **remains a shortage of food, bedding, tents**
41 **and other supplies** in Georgia,/ where **an estimated 80,000 people are displaced**, according
42 to U.S. Agency for International Development figures./

43 /“There **is a real need**,/ and we’re **trying** to fill that need and alleviate the suffering,”/
44 **Whitman said.**/

45 /**Sustained flights by American C-17 Globemaster III aircraft departing from**
46 **Charleston, S.C., will deliver** food over the next several days, in addition to twice-daily
47 deliveries by C-130 Hercules planes leaving Germany with other supplies./

48 /Meanwhile, **a C-9 Nightingale is expected** to land in Georgia today carrying humanitarian
49 aid,/ and **a C-17 will deliver** a shipment of forklifts to aid distribution efforts./

50 /**Whitman said/** fewer than 125 U.S. military personnel **are** on the ground involved in the
51 relief mission./

52 /**Deliveries from U.S. aircraft are handed off** to personnel from about 6 non-governmental
53 organizations responsible for delivering the supplies in Georgia,/ **Whitman said.**/ There **have**
54 **been no reports of significant problems with distribution,**/ he **added.**/

55 /Meanwhile, **the U.S. is looking** at other options for sustaining the humanitarian operation,
56 including sending naval vessels to the area,/ **Whitman said.**/ **The State Department is**
57 **working** necessary agreements to achieve passage through the straits of Turkey and
58 elsewhere,/ he **added.**/

59 /“**Surface vessels give** us the capability to provide larger amounts of relief supplies/ because
60 **they can** obviously **carry** more,/ and **they also give** you platform to operate off of;/ **they give**
61 you aerial assets, vertical lift, those kind of things,”/ he **said.**/

62 /**Fighting/ that began** in the breakaway Georgian region of South Ossetia on Aug. 8/
63 **broadened** to include Russian attacks on other parts of the country, including Abkhazia,
64 another heavily separatist region./ As clashes escalated, **the conflict fueled** fears
65 internationally that/ **Moscow would attempt** to depose the democratically elected government
66 in Georgia and that/ **Russian aggression could spread** to other parts of the region./

67 /**Russian President Dmitry Medvedev** on Aug. 16 **signed** a French-brokered peace deal,/ a
68 **move** that **came** a day after Georgia’s President Mikheil Saakashvili endorsed the agreement./
69 /**The plan includes** a drawdown of military forces to pre-escalation levels./

70 /**Secretary of State Condoleezza Rice headed** to Europe today reportedly to talk with NATO
71 allies about what message the U.S. and its allies should send to Russia about the military
72 intervention./

73 /Meanwhile, a host of international partners *have contributed* to the U.S.-led humanitarian
74 mission in Georgia,/ **Whitman said.**/

75 /“There **is broad international support** for the relief efforts,”/ **he said.**/

APPENDIX 3A. Case study 1.2 *The Security Threat from Russia and its Potential Isolation.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: EuroNews – Russian (19 September, 2008)

Делегация ООН прибыла в Южную Осетию

- 1 /В Южную Осетию прибыла с двухдневным визитом делегация ООН./ По словам
To South Ossetia arrived with two-day visit delegation UN./ By words
- 2 ее руководства, цель приезда - выяснить ситуацию, оценить размер разрушений,
its-of authorities, aim arrival-of – clarify situation, assess size destructions-of,
- 3 встретиться с местными властями, уточнить объем помощи, оказываемой
meet with local authorities, specify volume aid-of, provided
- 4 Российской Федерации, и разработать свой план поддержки населения Южной
Russian Federation-by, and develop own plan support-of population South
- 5 Осетии./ Это первое посещение делегацией ООН региона - через месяц после
Ossetia-of./ This first visit delegation UN-of region-of – after month after
- 6 военного конфликта./
military conflict./

- 7 /Между тем переговоры с Россией об увеличении числа наблюдателей ОБСЕ в
Between that negotiations with Russian about increase-of number monitors-of OSCE in
- 8 Южной Осетии и расширении территории их миссии пока не привели к
South Ossetia and expansion territory their mission yet not led to
- 9 положительному результату./ В докладе, опубликованном на этой неделе,
positive result./ In report, published on this week,
- 10 наблюдатели утверждают, что/ на границе Грузии и Южной Осетии "происходят
monitors state, that/ on border Georgia-of and South Ossetia 'occur
- 11 вспышки насилия"/ а также "уровень безопасности в грузинских деревнях"

12 района "вызывает сомнение"./ outbreaks violence-of',/ and also 'level security-of in Georgian villages' area-of' evokes doubt'./

13 /Тем временем госсекретарь США Кондолиза Райс в своей достаточно резкой речи /That time state-secretary USA-of Condoleezza Rice in her enough sharp speech

14 снова предупредила Москву о том, что/ ее действия могут привести к усилению again warned Moscow abouth that, that/ its actions can lead to increase

15 изоляции страны на международной арене:/ isolation-of country-of on international arena:/

16 "Я говорю, помимо других вещей, и о запугивании Россией своих суверенных 'I say, apart other things, and about intimidation Russia-by its sovereign

17 соседей, об использовании газа и нефти в качестве политического оружия, ее neighbours, about use gas and oil in quality political weapon-of, its

18 одностороннем выходе из договора о нераспространении обычных вооружений, ее unilateral exit from agreement about non-proliferation common weapons-of, its

19 угрозе применить против миролюбивых наций ядерное оружие, а также о продаже threat use against peaceful nations nuclear weapon, and also about selling

20 вооружений государствам и группам, угрожающим международной безопасности."/ weapons countries-to and groups, threatening international security.'

21 /В свою очередь министр обороны США Роберт Гейтс попытался снизить накал /In its turn minister defense-of USA-of Robert Gates tried lower heating

22 страсти и унять призывы к размещению дополнительных вооружений в Восточной passions-of and calm calls to placement additional weapons-of in Eastern

23 Европе./ К "осторожности в действиях" и "избежани провокаций" призвал глава Europe./ To 'caution in actions' and 'avoidance provocations-of' called head

24 Пентагона своих коллег из стран НАТО на встрече в Лондоне./ Pentagon-of his colleagues from countries NATO-of at meeting in London./

25 /Там же генеральный секретарь Альянса Яап де Хооп Схеффер отметил, что/ Грузия /There also general-secretary Alliance-of Jaap de Hoop Scheffer noted, that/ Georgia

26 "в конечном счете станет членом НАТО"./

'in final score become-will member NATO-of'./

Literally:

UN Delegation Arrived to South Ossetia

The UN delegation has arrived to South Ossetia with a two-day visit. According to its officials, the aim of the visit is to clarify the situation, assess the scope of the destruction, meet the local authorities, specify the volumes of aid provided by the Russian Federation and develop their own support plan for the population of South Ossetia. This is the first visit of the region by the UN delegation – a month after the military conflict.

Meanwhile, negotiations with Russia regarding the increase in the number of OSCE monitors in South Ossetia and expansion of the territory of their mission have not yet lead to a positive result. In the report published this week monitors state that on the border of Georgia and South Ossetia 'outburst of violence occur', and also 'the level of security in Georgian villages ' of the area 'evokes doubt'.

Meanwhile, the U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice in her rather harsh speech again warned Moscow that its actions can lead to the increasing isolation on the international arena, 'I am talking about, among other things, Russia's intimidation of its sovereign neighbours, its use of oil and gas as a political weapon, its unilateral suspension of the Conventional Armed Forces in Europe Treaty, its threat to apply nuclear weapons against peaceful nations, and also about arms sales to states and groups threatening international security.

In turn, U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates tried to reduce the intensity of emotions and calm the calls for placing additional weapons in Eastern Europe. The head of the Pentagon called his colleagues from NATO countries to 'caution in action' and 'avoidance of provocations' at the meeting in London. There NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer noted that Georgia 'eventually will become a NATO member'.

Source text 1: U.S. Department of State (Archive) (18 September, 2008)

Secretary Rice Addresses U.S.-Russia Relations At The German Marshall Fund

Secretary Condoleezza Rice

Renaissance Mayflower Hotel

Washington, DC

September 18, 2008

Abstract 1:

27 /Most of us are familiar with the events of the past month./ The causes of the conflict –
28 particularly the dispute between Georgia and its breakaway regions of Abkhazia and South
29 Ossetia – are complex./ They go back to the fall of the Soviet Union./ And the United States
30 and our allies have tried many times to help the parties resolve the dispute

31 diplomatically./ **Indeed, it** was, in part, for just that reason that/ **I** traveled to Georgia just a
32 month before the conflict, as did German Foreign Minister Frank-Walter Steinmeier, among
33 others./

34 **/The conflict in Georgia**, thus, has deep roots./ **And clearly, all sides** made mistakes and
35 miscalculations./ **But several key facts** are clear:/

36 **/On August 7th**, following repeated violations of the ceasefire in South Ossetia, including the
37 shelling of Georgian villages, the Georgian government launched a major military operation
38 into Tskhinvali and other areas of the separatist region./ **Regrettably, several Russian**
39 **peacekeepers** were killed in the fighting./

40 **/These events** were troubling./ **But the situation** deteriorated further when/ **Russia's leaders**
41 violated Georgia's sovereignty and territorial integrity – and launched a full scale invasion
42 across an internationally-recognized border./ **Thousands of innocent civilians** were displaced
43 from their homes./ **Russia's leaders** established a military occupation/ **that** stretched deep into
44 Georgian territory./ **And they** violated the ceasefire agreement/ **that** had been negotiated by
45 French and EU President Sarkozy./

46 **/Other actions of Russia** during this crisis have also been deeply disconcerting: its alarmist
47 allegations of “genocide” by Georgian forces, its baseless statements about U.S. actions
48 during the conflict, its attempt to dismember a sovereign country by recognizing Abkhazia
49 and South Ossetia, its talk of having “privileged interests” in how it treats its independent
50 neighbors, and its refusal to allow international monitors and NGOs into Abkhazia and South
51 Ossetia, ongoing militia violence and retribution against innocent Georgians./

52

53 **/What is more disturbing about Russia's actions** is that/ **they** fit into a worsening pattern of
54 behavior over several years now./

55 **/I'm** referring, among other things, to Russia's intimidation of its sovereign neighbors, its use
56 of oil and gas as a political weapon, its unilateral suspension of the CFE Treaty, its threat to
57 target peaceful nations with nuclear weapons, its arms sales to states and groups that threaten
58 international security, and its persecution – and worse – of Russian journalists, and dissidents,
59 and others./

60 **/The picture emerging from this pattern of behavior** is that of a Russia increasingly
61 authoritarian at home and aggressive abroad./

Abstract 2:

62 **/Whatever its course**, though, Russia today is not the Soviet Union – not in the size of its
63 territory, the reach of its power, the scope of its aims, or the nature of the regime./ **Russia's**
64 **leaders** today have no pretensions to ideological universality, no alternative vision to
65 democratic capitalism, and no ability to construct a parallel system of client states and rival

66 institutions./ *The bases of Soviet power* are gone./

67 /And despite their leaders' authoritarianism, Russians today enjoy more prosperity, more
68 opportunity, and in some sense, more liberty than in either Tsarist or Soviet times./ *Russians*
69 increasingly demand the benefits of global engagement – the jobs and the technology, the
70 travel abroad, the luxury goods and the long-term mortgages./

71 /With such growing prosperity and opportunity, I cannot imagine that/ *most Russians* would
72 ever want to go back to the days, as in Soviet times,/ when their country and its citizens stood
73 isolated from Western markets and institutions./

74 /This, then, is the deeper tragedy of the choices that Russia's leaders are making./ *It* is not just
75 the pain they inflict on others,/ but the debilitating costs they impose on Russia itself – the
76 way/ they are jeopardizing the international credibility/ that Russian businesses have worked
77 so hard to build,/ and the way that they are risking the real, and future, progress of the Russian
78 people,/ who have come so far since communism./

79 /And for what?/ *Russia's attack on Georgia* merely proved what/ we had already known –
80 that/ *Russia* could use its overwhelming military advantage to punish a small neighbor./ But
81 *Georgia* has survived./ *Its democracy* will endure./ *Its economy* will be rebuilt./ *Its*
82 *independence* will be reinforced./ *Its military will*, in time, be reconstituted./ And we look
83 forward to the day when/ *Georgia's territorial integrity* will be peacefully restored./

84 /*Russia's invasion of Georgia* has achieved/ – and will achieve – no enduring strategic
85 objective./ And *our strategic goal* now is to make clear to Russia's leaders that/ *their choices*
86 could put Russia on a one-way path to self-imposed isolation and international irrelevance./

87 /*Accomplishing this goal* will require the resolve and the unity of responsible countries –
88 most importantly, the United States and our European allies./ We cannot afford to validate the
89 prejudices/ that some Russian leaders seem to have: that/ *if you press free nations hard*
90 *enough* –/ *if you bully them*,/ and *you* threaten them,/ and *you* lash out –/ *they* will cave in,/ and
91 *they'll forget*,/ and *eventually they* will concede./

Source text 2: Agence France Presse (18 September, 2008)

Gates urges caution in NATO response to Russia

92 /US Defence Secretary Robert Gates urged NATO Thursday to avoid provocation in
93 response to Russia's invasion of Georgia, but to pursue planning and exercises to reassure
94 Baltic and eastern Europe allies./

95 /Gates also said/ worries about Russia should have little impact on NATO's military
96 commitments in Afghanistan,/ even though some member countries argue/ the
97 transatlantic alliance should now look to threats closer to home./

98 /"It's hard for me to imagine that/ those who are currently in NATO feel a real military
99 threat coming from Russia,"/ Gates said./

100 /"To the degree there is a concern,/ my guess is/ it has more to do with pressure and
101 intimidation than it does any prospect of real military action,"/ he told reporters in
102 London./

103 /Gates's comments were echoed by NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer
104 before the start of an informal meeting of NATO defence ministers to discuss how to
105 respond to the challenge posed by Russia in the wake of the Georgia conflict./

106 /"I don't believe that/ a second Cold War is in the offing,"/ he said at a speech to the Royal
107 United Services Institute security think-tank./

108 /He said/ he foresaw "no U-turn in NATO policy" despite uncertainties about Russia's
109 intentions and that/ the conflict would be resolved only through concessions on all sides./

110 /"Such a solution cannot be found and will not be found if we seek to punish Russia./
111 /NATO is not in the punishment business,"/ he said./

112 /"We may have to make adjustments in the way we approach Russia,/ but we do not need a
113 new policy,"/ he said./

114 /However, he urged continuing support for a democratic Georgia,/ which together with
115 Ukraine was promised eventual NATO membership at an alliance summit in Bucharest in
116 April./

117 /That promise has now raised questions since the Russian invasion/ because NATO would
118 have been obliged to come to Georgia's defence under its charter./

119 /The defence ministers meeting also was expected to air differences over whether/ NATO
120 should continue to pursue a military transformation strategy/ that seeks to create light,
121 expeditionary forces capable of responding to conflicts in distant places like Afghanistan./

122 /A senior US defence official, briefing reporters on condition of anonymity, said/ flexible,
123 expeditionary forces, rather than static Cold War defences, would serve both to deter a
124 more assertive Russia and enable the alliance to operate out of area./

125 /Gates emphasised the need to maintain unity within the alliance as/ they approach the
126 questions raised by Russia's actions./

127 /"I think/ we need to proceed with some caution/ because there is clearly a range of views
128 in the alliance about how to respond, from some of our friends in the Baltics and eastern
129 Europe to some of the countries in western Europe,"/ Gates said./

130 /He urged NATO to pursue "the kind of activities that/ NATO has been engaged in for
131 nearly 60 years in terms of planning and exercises and so on, and that at the same time are
132 not provocative, and that tend to draw firm red lines or send signals that are unwanted."/

133 /Doing so,/ he said,/ would provide some reassurance to the Baltics and eastern European
134 countries,/ which are keen to ensure/ NATO has the capability to meet its commitments to
135 defend member nations from attack./

136 /Asked if the shifting security concerns would make it more difficult to maintain
137 NATO's commitments in Afghanistan,/ Gates said/ he thought/ it would have "very little
138 impact."/ De Hoop Scheffer also expressed hope that/ NATO countries would provide
139 more troops to the 53,000-strong NATO-led force in Afghanistan to stem an increasingly
140 violent insurgency./

141 /Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance have deeply angered
142 Moscow,/ which objects to its Cold War foe moving hardware into its backyard./

143 /But its decision to recognise the breakaway Georgian provinces of Abkhazia and South
144 Ossetia,/ over which Russia sent forces into Georgia last month,/ saw NATO
145 refuse to do "business as usual" with Moscow/ and their relations have nose-dived./

APPENDIX 3B. Case study 1.2 *The Security Threat from Russia and its Potential Isolation.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: EuroNews – Russian (19 September, 2008)

Делегация ООН прибыла в Южную Осетию

- 1 /В Южную Осетию **прибыла** с двухдневным визитом **делегация ООН.**/ По словам /To South Ossetia **arrived** with two-day visit **delegation UN.**/ By words
- 2 ее руководства, **цель приезда** - выяснить ситуацию, оценить размер разрушений, its-of authorities, **aim arrival-of** – clarify situation, assess size destructions-of,
- 3 встретиться с местными властями, уточнить объем помощи, оказываемой meet with local authorities, specify volume aid-of, provided
- 4 Российской Федерацией, и разработать свой план поддержки населения Южной Russian Federation-by, and develop own plan support-of population South
- 5 Осетии./ **Это** первое посещение делегацией ООН региона - через месяц после Ossetia-of./ **This** first visit delegation UN-of region-of – after month after
- 6 военного конфликта./ military conflict./

- 7 /Между тем **переговоры с Россией об увеличении числа наблюдателей ОБСЕ в** /Between that **negotiations with Russian about increase-of number monitors-of OSCE in**
- 8 **Южной Осетии и расширении территории их миссии пока не привели к** South Ossetia and expansion territory their mission yet **not led to**
- 9 положительному результату./ В докладе, опубликованном на этой неделе, positive result./ In report, published on this week,
- 10 **наблюдатели утверждают**, что/ на границе Грузии и Южной Осетии monitors **state**, that/ on border Georgia-of and South Ossetia

11 "происходят вспышки насилия"/, а также "уровень безопасности в грузинских
12 'occur outbreaks violence-of',/ and also 'level security-of in Georgian
13 деревнях" района "вызывает сомнение"./
villages' area-of 'evokes doubt'./

14 /Тем временем госсекретарь США Кондолиза Райс в своей достаточно резкой
/That time state-secretary USA-of Condoleezza Rice in her enough sharp
15 речи снова *предупредила* Москву о том, что/ **ее действия могут привести к**
speech again **warned** Moscow abouth that, that/ **its actions can lead to**
16 усилению изоляции страны на международной арене:/
increase isolation-of country-of on international arena:/
17 "Я говорю, помимо других вещей, и о запугивании Россией своих суверенных
'I say, apart other things, and about intimidation Russia-by its sovereign
18 соседей, об использовании газа и нефти в качестве политического оружия, ее
neighbours, about use gas and oil in quality political weapon-of, its
19 одностороннем выходе из договора о нераспространении обычных вооружений, ее
unilateral exit from agreement about non-proliferation common weapons-of, its
20 угрозе применить против миролюбивых наций ядерное оружие, а также о продаже
threat use against peaceful nations nuclear weapon, and also about selling
21 вооружений государствам и группам, угрожающим международной безопасности."/
weapons countries-to and groups, threatening international security.'/

22 /В свою очередь министр обороны США Роберт Гейтс *попытался снизить* накал
/In its turn minister defense-of USA-of Robert Gates *tried lower* heating
23 страсти и унять призывы к размещению дополнительных вооружений в Восточной
passions-of and calm calls to placement additional weapons-of in Eastern
24 Европе./ К "осторожности в действиях" и "избежаний провокаций" *призвал* глава
Europe./ To 'caution in actions' and 'avoidance provocations-of' *called head*
25 **Пентагона** своих коллег из стран НАТО на встрече в Лондоне./
Pentagon-of his colleagues from countries NATO-of at meeting in London./

26 /Там же генеральный секретарь Альянса Яап де Хооп Схеффер отметил, что/

27 /There also general-secretary Alliance-of Jaap de Hoop Scheffer noted, that/

28 **Грузия** "в конечном счете *станет* членом НАТО"./

Georgia 'in final score *become-will* member NATO-of'./

Literally:

UN Delegation Arrived to South Ossetia

The UN delegation has arrived to South Ossetia with a two-day visit. According to its officials, the aim of the visit is to clarify the situation, assess the scope of the destruction, meet the local authorities, specify the volumes of aid provided by the Russian Federation and develop their own support plan for the population of South Ossetia. This is the first visit of the region by the UN delegation – a month after the military conflict.

Meanwhile, negotiations with Russia regarding the increase in the number of OSCE monitors in South Ossetia and expansion of the territory of their mission have not yet lead to a positive result. In the report published this week monitors state that on the border of Georgia and South Ossetia 'outburst of violence occur', and also 'the level of security in Georgian villages ' of the area 'evokes doubt'.

Meanwhile, the U.S. Secretary Condoleezza Rice in her rather harsh speech again warned Moscow that its actions can lead to the increasing isolation on the international arena, 'I am talking about, among other things, Russia's intimidation of its sovereign neighbours, its use of oil and gas as a political weapon, its unilateral suspension of the Conventional Armed Forces in Europe Treaty, its threat to apply nuclear weapons against peaceful nations, and also about arms sales to states and groups threatening international security.

In turn, U.S. Defense Secretary Robert Gates tried to reduce the intensity of emotions and calm the calls for placing additional weapons in Eastern Europe. The head of the Pentagon called his colleagues from NATO countries to 'caution in action' and 'avoidance of provocations' at the meeting in London. There NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer noted that Georgia 'eventually will become a NATO member'.

Source text 1: U.S. Department of State (Archive) (18 September, 2008)

Secretary Rice Addresses U.S.-Russia Relations At The German Marshall Fund

Secretary Condoleezza Rice
Renaissance Mayflower Hotel
Washington, DC
September 18, 2008

Abstract 1:

29 /**Most of us are** familiar with the events of the past month./ **The causes of the conflict –**
30 particularly the dispute between Georgia and its breakaway regions of Abkhazia and South
31 Ossetia – **are** complex./ **They go back** to the fall of the Soviet Union./ And **the United States**
32 **and our allies have tried** many times to help the parties resolve the dispute
33 diplomatically./ Indeed, **it was**, in part, for just that reason that/ **I traveled** to Georgia just a
34 month before the conflict, as did German Foreign Minister Frank-Walter Steinmeier, among
35 others./

36 /**The conflict in Georgia**, thus, **has** deep roots./ And clearly, **all sides made mistakes** and
37 miscalculations./ But **several key facts are** clear:/

38 /On August 7th, following repeated violations of the ceasefire in South Ossetia, including the
39 shelling of Georgian villages, **the Georgian government launched** a major military
40 operation into Tskhinvali and other areas of the separatist region./ Regrettably, **several**
41 **Russian peacekeepers were killed** in the fighting./

42 /**These events were** troubling./ But **the situation deteriorated** further when/ **Russia's leaders**
43 **violated** Georgia's sovereignty and territorial integrity – and **launched** a full scale invasion
44 across an internationally-recognized border./ **Thousands of innocent civilians were**
45 **displaced** from their homes./ **Russia's leaders established** a military occupation/ **that**
46 **stretched** deep into Georgian territory./ And **they violated** the ceasefire agreement/ **that had**
47 **been negotiated** by French and EU President Sarkozy./

48 /**Other actions of Russia** during this crisis **have** also **been** deeply **disconcerting**: its alarmist
49 allegations of “genocide” by Georgian forces, its baseless statements about U.S. actions
50 during the conflict, its attempt to dismember a sovereign country by recognizing Abkhazia
51 and South Ossetia, its talk of having “privileged interests” in how it treats its independent
52 neighbors, and its refusal to allow international monitors and NGOs into Abkhazia and South
53 Ossetia, ongoing militia violence and retribution against innocent Georgians./

54

55 /**What is more disturbing about Russia's actions is** that/ **they fit** into a worsening pattern of
56 behavior over several years now./

57 /**I'm** referring, among other things, to Russia's intimidation of its sovereign neighbors, its use
58 of oil and gas as a political weapon, its unilateral suspension of the CFE Treaty, its threat to
59 target peaceful nations with nuclear weapons, its arms sales to states and groups that threaten
60 international security, and its persecution – and worse – of Russian journalists, and dissidents,
61 and others./

62 /**The picture emerging from this pattern of behavior is** that of a Russia increasingly
63 authoritarian at home and aggressive abroad./

Abstract 2:

64 /Whatever its course, though, **Russia** today *is* not the Soviet Union – not in the size of its
65 territory, the reach of its power, the scope of its aims, or the nature of the regime./ **Russia's**
66 **leaders** today *have* no pretensions to ideological universality, no alternative vision to
67 democratic capitalism, and no ability to construct a parallel system of client states and rival
68 institutions./ **The bases of Soviet power are gone.**/

69 /And despite their leaders' authoritarianism, **Russians** today *enjoy* more prosperity, more
70 opportunity, and in some sense, more liberty than in either Tsarist or Soviet times./ **Russians**
71 increasingly *demand* the benefits of global engagement – the jobs and the technology, the
72 travel abroad, the luxury goods and the long-term mortgages./

73 /With such growing prosperity and opportunity, **I cannot imagine** that/ **most Russians would**
74 ever *want* to go back to the days, as in Soviet times./ when **their country and its citizens**
75 *stood* isolated from Western markets and institutions./

76 /**This**, then, *is* the deeper tragedy of the choices that Russia's leaders are making./ **It is** not
77 just the pain they inflict on others,/ but the debilitating costs **they impose** on Russia itself –
78 the way/ **they are jeopardizing** the international credibility/ that **Russian businesses have**
79 *worked* so hard to build,/ and the way that **they are risking** the real, and future, progress of
80 the Russian people,/ **who have come** so far since communism./

81 /And for what?/ **Russia's attack on Georgia** merely *proved* what/ **we had** already *known* –
82 that/ **Russia could use** its overwhelming military advantage to punish a small neighbor./ But
83 **Georgia has survived.**/ Its **democracy will endure.**/ Its **economy will be rebuilt.**/ Its
84 **independence will be reinforced.**/ Its **military will**, in time, *be reconstituted.*/ And we look
85 **forward to** the day when/ **Georgia's territorial integrity will be** peacefully *restored.*/

86 /**Russia's invasion of Georgia has achieved**/ – and *will achieve* – no enduring strategic
87 objective./ And **our strategic goal** now *is* to make clear to Russia's leaders that/ **their choices**
88 *could put* Russia on a one-way path to self-imposed isolation and international irrelevance./

89 /**Accomplishing this goal will require** the resolve and the unity of responsible countries –
90 most importantly, the United States and our European allies./ **We cannot afford** to validate
91 the prejudices/ that **some Russian leaders seem to have**: that/ if **you press** free nations hard
92 enough – if **you bully** them,/ and **you threaten** them,/ and **you lash out** –/ **they will cave in**,/
93 and **they'll forget**,/ and eventually **they will concede.**/

Source text 2: Agence France Presse (18 September, 2008)

Gates urges caution in NATO response to Russia

94 /**US Defence Secretary Robert Gates urged** NATO Thursday to avoid provocation in
95 response to Russia's invasion of Georgia, but to pursue planning and exercises to reassure
96 Baltic and eastern Europe allies./

97 /Gates also *said*/ **worries about Russia** *should have* little impact on NATO's military
98 commitments in Afghanistan,/ even though **some member countries** *argue*/ **the**
99 **transatlantic alliance** *should* now *look* to threats closer to home./

100 /"It's hard for me to imagine that/ **those who are currently in NATO** *feel* a real military
101 threat coming from Russia,"/ **Gates said**./

102 /"To the degree there *is a concern*,/ **my guess is**/ *it has* more to do with pressure and
103 intimidation than it does any prospect of real military action,"/ **he told** reporters in
104 London./

105 /**Gates's comments were echoed** by NATO Secretary General Jaap de Hoop Scheffer
106 before the start of an informal meeting of NATO defence ministers to discuss how to
107 respond to the challenge posed by Russia in the wake of the Georgia conflict./

108 /"I *don't believe* that/ **a second Cold War is** in the offing,"/ **he said** at a speech to the
109 Royal United Services Institute security think-tank./

110 /**He said**/ **he foresaw** "no U-turn in NATO policy" despite uncertainties about Russia's
111 intentions and that/ **the conflict would be resolved** only through concessions on all sides./

112 /"Such a solution *cannot be found* and *will not be found* if we seek to punish Russia./
113 /**NATO is** not in the punishment business,"/ **he said**./

114 /"We *may have to make adjustments* in the way we approach Russia,/ but **we do not need**
115 a new policy,"/ **he said**./

116 /However, **he urged** continuing support for a democratic Georgia,/ **which together with**
117 **Ukraine was promised** eventual NATO membership at an alliance summit in Bucharest in
118 April./

119 /**That promise has** now *raised* questions since the Russian invasion/ because **NATO**
120 *would have been obliged* to come to Georgia's defence under its charter./

121 /**The defence ministers meeting** also *was expected* to air differences over whether/
122 **NATO should continue** to pursue a military transformation strategy/ **that seeks** to create
123 light, expeditionary forces capable of responding to conflicts in distant places like
124 Afghanistan./

125 /**A senior US defence official**, briefing reporters on condition of anonymity, *said*/ **flexible**,
126 **expeditionary forces, rather than static Cold War defences**, *would serve* both to deter a
127 more assertive Russia and enable the alliance to operate out of area./

128 /**Gates emphasised** the need to maintain unity within the alliance as/ **they approach** the
129 questions raised by Russia's actions./

130 /"I *think*/ **we need** to proceed with some caution/ because there *is* clearly a **range of views**
131 in the alliance about how to respond, from some of our friends in the Baltics and eastern
132 Europe to some of the countries in western Europe,"/ **Gates said**./

133 /**He urged** NATO to pursue "the kind of activities that NATO has been engaged in for
134 nearly 60 years in terms of planning and exercises and so on, and that at the same time are
135 not provocative, and that tend to draw firm red lines or send signals that are unwanted."/

136 /**Doing so,/ he said,/ would provide** some reassurance to the Baltics and eastern European
137 countries,/ **which are keen** to ensure/ **NATO has** the capability to meet its commitments
138 to defend member nations from attack./

139 /Asked if the shifting security concerns would make it more difficult to maintain NATO's
140 commitments in Afghanistan,/ **Gates said/ he thought/ it would have** "very little impact."/
141 **De Hoop Scheffer** also **expressed** hope that/ **NATO countries would provide** more troops
142 to the 53,000-strong NATO-led force in Afghanistan to stem an increasingly violent
143 insurgency./

144 /**Georgia's efforts to join the world's biggest military alliance have** deeply **angered**
145 **Moscow,/ which objects** to its Cold War foe moving hardware into its backyard./

146 /**But its decision to recognise the breakaway Georgian provinces of Abkhazia and**
147 **South Ossetia,/ over which Russia sent forces** into Georgia last month,/ **saw** NATO
148 refuse to do "business as usual" with Moscow/ and **their relations have nose-dived.**/

APPENDIX 4A. Case study 1.3 ‘Ukraine is Not Georgia’.

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: InoSMI.Ru (16 September, 2009)

В преддверии выборов Ющенко критикует Москву

- 1 /Виктор Ющенко, теряющий популярность президент Украины, жалуется на /Viktor Yushchenko, losing popularity president Ukraine-of, complain-ing on
- 2 вмешательство России во внутренние дела Киева в преддверии ключевых interference Russia-of into internal affairs Kiev-of in anticipation key
- 3 президентских выборов,/ на которых прозападный лидер, вероятно, проиграет более presidential elections-of,/ at which pro-western leader, likely, lose-will more
- 4 дружественному к Кремлю кандидату./ friendly to Kremlin candidate./

- 5 /В интервью Financial Times г-н Ющенко заявил, что/ Москва начала против Киева /In interview Financial Times Mr. Yushchenko stated, that/ Moscow started against Kiev
- 6 кампанию клеветы и может попытаться манипулировать украинским избирателем./ To campaign smear-of and can try manipulate Ukrainian electorate./ That
- 7 же самое говорилось и в 2004 году,/ когда г-н Ющенко пришел к власти, одержав верх too same said-was and in 2004 year,/ when Mr. Yushchenko came to power, took
- 8 над поддержаным Кремлем кандидатом./ Избиратели, между тем, по прежнему over supported Kremlin-by candidate./ Voters, between that, as still
- 9 расколоты по оси на русскоговорящих и украинскоговорящих./ divided on axis into Russian-speaking and Ukrainian-speaking./

10 /Тема вмешательства России в выборы на Украине всплыла в прошлом месяце,/ Topic interference-of Russia in elections in Ukraine surfaced in last month,/

11 когда президент России Дмитрий Медведев обвинил г-на Ющенко в том, что/ mom when president Russia-of Dmitry Medvedev accused Mr. Yushchenko in that, that/ that

12 ведет «антироссийскую политику», стремясь вступить в военный альянс НАТО,/ и lead-ing 'anti-Russian policy', aiming enter in military alliance NATO,/ and

13 призвал будущего президента страны быть более дружелюбным./ called future president country-of be more friendly./

14 /Г-н Ющенко говорит, что/ он ожидает, что/ Россия будет возбуждать сепаратистские /Mr. Yushchenko says, that/ he expects, that/ Russia will stir separatist

15 настроения на принадлежащем Украине,/ но склоняющемся к России Крымском moods on belonging Ukraine-to,/ but leaning to Russia Crimean

16 полуострове./ Тем не менее, он исключил возможность военного конфликта, подобного peninsula./ Nevertheless, he excluded possibility military conflict-of, similar

17 тому,/ который разгорелся прошлым летом в Грузии – еще одной прозападной стране that,/ which inflamed last summer in Georgia – another one pro-western country

18 на постсоветском пространстве./ Москва продолжает твердо поддерживать стремление on post-Soviet area./ Moscow continues firmly support ambition

19 к независимости двух отколовшихся анклавов Грузии,/ один из которых – Южная to independence two-of breakaway enclaves Georgia-of,/ one from which - South

20 Осетия – оказался в прошлом году в центре войны./ Многие в Киеве опасаются, что/ в Ossetia – appeared in last year in middle war-of./ Many in Kiev fear, that/ in

21 Крыму повторится подобный сценарий./ Crimea repeat-will similar scenario./

22 /«Они постараются разыграть «крымскую карту»./ Однако я не думаю, что/ есть /'They try-will play 'Crimean card'./ However I not think, that/ is

23 опасность повторения ситуации в Грузии,/ - з заметил г-н Ющенко в ответ на вопрос о

danger repetition situation in Georgia,/- noted Mr. Yushchenko in answer on question about

24 том,/ существует ли угроза сепаратизма или военных столкновений./ «Украина - не
that,/ exist whether threat separatism-of or military clashes./ 'Ukraine' - not

25 Грузия»,/- добавил он, подчеркивая, что/ у его страны большее население, военная
Georgia',/- added he, underlining, that/ his country larger population, military

26 мощь и геополитическое значение./
power and geopolitical significance./

27 /«В наши дни сила не в оружии./ Прибегать к нему было бы просто глупо»,/- заявил
/'In our days power not in weapons./ Resort to it would be simply silly',/- stated

28 он./ По поводу январского газового противостояния между Киевом и Москвой,
he./ About January gas confrontation between Kiev and Moscow,

29 приведшего к срыву поставок газа в Европу, а также настойчивых предупреждений
led to disruption supplies-of gas-of to Europe, and also persistent warnings

30 России о том, что/ пострадавшая от рецессии Украина неспособна оплатить газовый
Russia-of about that, that/ suffered from recession Ukraine unable pay gas

31 счет,/ г-н Ющенко заметил:/ «В области информации действует много тайных и
bill,/ Mr. Yushchenko noted:/ 'In area information-of act many secret and

32 циничных схем, нацеленных на дискредитацию Украины» в глазах Европы и мира./
cynical schemes, aimed at discreditation Ukraine-of in eyes Europe-of and world./

33 /Г-н Ющенко также сказал:/ «Мы видим, как/ политика тоталитаризма достигает
/Mr. Yushchenko also said:/ 'We see, how/ politics totalitarism-of reaching

34 своего апогея в борьбе против принципов демократии, суверенитета и
its apogee in fight against principles democracy-of, sovereignty and

35 территориальной целостности./ Грузия – пример того, как,/ к несчастью,
territorial integrity./ Georgia – example that-of, how,/ unfortunately,

36 общееевропейское сообщество не встало на защиту этих фундаментальных
pan-European community not rose for protection these fundamental

37 принципов./ Это был шаг назад'./ По словам украинского президента, вскоре он principles-of./ This was step back'./ By words Ukrainian president-of, soon he

38 надеется встретиться с президентом США Бараком Обамой для обсуждения этих и hopes meet with president USA-of Barack Obama for discussion these and

39 других вопросов./ Кроме того, он выразил солидарность с обращением к западным other questions./ Besides that, he expressed solidarity with address to western

40 лидерам, подписанным на прошлой неделе представителями украинской leaders, signed on last week representatives-by Ukrainian

41 интеллигенции./ В своем открытом письме политики, художники и эксперты intelligentsia./ In their open letter politicians, painters and experts

42 призывали лидеров Запада предоставить Украине более надежные гарантии called leaders West-of provide Ukraine-to more reliable guarantees

43 безопасности против российской угрозы./ security-of against Russian threat./

44 /Г-н Ющенко отстает от трех основных кандидатов в президенты, активно /Mr. Yushchenko lags from three main candidates in presidents, actively

45 пытающихся гармонизировать отношения с Россией./ В их числе премьер-министр trying harmonise relations with Russia./ In their number prime minister

46 Юлия Тимошенко, его бывший партнер по «оранжевой революции», и бывший Yulia Tymoshenko, his former partner in 'Orange revolution', and former

47 премьер-министр Виктор Янукович,/ которого Москва поддерживала на выборах 2004 prime-minister Viktor Yanukovych,/ who Moscow supported-ing on elections 2004

48 года./ Г-н Ющенко обвиняет их в потворстве Москве и использовании интересов year-of./ Mr. Yuschchenko accuses them in connivance Moscow-to and use interests-of

49 Украины как «разменных карт» для получения поддержки России./ Ukraine-of as 'swap cards' for receiving support Russia-of./

Literally:

Ahead of poll Yushchenko criticises Moscow

Viktor Yushchenko, Ukraine's president who is losing popularity, is complaining of Russia's interference in Kiev's domestic affairs ahead of key presidential elections which the pro-western leader will probably lose to a more Kremlin-friendly candidate.

In the Financial Times interview, Yushchenko said that Moscow started a smear campaign against Kiev and could try to manipulate Ukraine's electorate. The same was said in 2004 when Mr Yushchenko came to power against a Kremlin-backed candidate. Voters, meanwhile, remain split in an east-west axis between Russian and Ukrainian speakers.

Theme of Russia's interference in the elections in Ukraine emerged last month when Russia's president, Dmitry Medvedev, accused Mr Yushchenko of leading 'anti-Russian' policies, seeking to join NATO military alliance and urged the future president to be more friendly.

Mr Yushchenko says that he is expecting that Russia will stir up separatist mood on the belonging to Ukraine but leaning to Russia Crimean peninsula. But he ruled a possibility of a military conflict of the kind that broke out last summer in Georgia – another pro-western country on the post-Soviet area. Moscow continues to firmly back the independence aspirations of two Georgian breakaway enclaves, one of which – South Ossetia – turned out to be at the centre the war last year. Many in Kiev fear that the same scenario will be repeated in the Crimea.

'They will try to exploit the 'Crimean card'. But, I don't think that there is any danger that the situation in Georgia would repeat', noted Mr Yushchenko as an answer to the question whether there is any threat of separatism or military clashes. 'Ukraine is not Georgia', he added, emphasising that his country has larger population, military power and geopolitical significance.

'Today strength is not in weapon. Employing it would be simply stupid', he stated.

Referring to January's gas stand-off between Kiev and Moscow which lead to disruption of supplies to Europe and also relentless Russian warnings that recession-battered Ukraine was unable to pay for the gas bill, Mr Yushchenko noted, 'In the information area many secret and cynical schemes act aimed at discrediting Ukraine' in the eyes of Europe and the world.

Mr Yushchenko also said, 'We see how politics of totalitarianism is reaching its apogee in the fight against principles of democracy, sovereignty and territorial integrity. Georgia is an example of how, unfortunately, the Pan-European community did not stand up to defend these fundamental principles. This was a step back'.

According to Ukraine's president he is soon hoping to meet U.S. president Barak Obama to discuss these and other issues. Besides, he expressed solidarity with a plea to Western leaders signed last week by the representatives of Ukraine's intelligentsia. In their open letter politicians, artists and experts had called for western leaders to provide Ukraine with more reliable security guarantees against Russian threat.

Mr Yushchenko trails three main frontrunners in the presidential election who are actively trying to harmonise relations with Russia. Among them Yulia Tymoshenko, his ex-partner in the Orange revolution and ex-prime minister Viktor Yanukovych who Moscow was backing at the election in 2004. Mr Yushchenko is accusing them of pandering to Moscow and using Ukraine's interests as 'selling cards' to get Russia's support.

Source text: The Financial Times (14 September, 2009)

Yushchenko hits at Moscow ahead of poll

By Roman Olearchyk in Kiev

50 /**Viktor Yushchenko, the embattled Ukrainian president**, complained of Russian meddling in
51 Kiev's domestic affairs ahead of **a high-stakes presidential election**,/ **which** the pro-western
52 leader is expected to lose to a more Kremlin-friendly candidate./

53 /**In a Financial Times interview**, Mr Yushchenko said/ **Moscow** had waged a smear
54 campaign against Kiev and could try to manipulate Ukraine's electorate –/ **claims** that were
55 also made in 2004/ **when** Mr Yushchenko was propelled to power against a Kremlin-backed
56 candidate./ **Voters** remain split in an east-west axis between Russian and Ukrainian speakers./

57 /**The issue of Russian interference in Ukraine's election** emerged last month/ **when** Dmitry
58 Medvedev, Russia's president, accused Mr Yushchenko of waging "anti-Russian" policies by
59 seeking membership in the Nato military alliance, and urged the country's future president to
60 be more friendly./

61 /**Mr Yushchenko** said/ **he** expects Russia to stir up separatist sentiment on Ukraine's Russian-
62 leaning Crimean peninsula./ **But he** ruled out escalation into a military conflict of the kind
63 seen last summer in Georgia, another pro-western ally on post-Soviet turf./ **Moscow** continues
64 to firmly back the independence aspirations of two Georgian breakaway enclaves,/ **one of**
65 **which, South Ossetia**, was at the centre of the war./ **Many in Kiev** fear a similar scenario in
66 Crimea./

67 /“**They** will try to exploit the 'Crimean Card'./ **But, I** don't see a risk that/ **the situation** in
68 Georgia would repeat,”/ **said** Mr Yushchenko when asked if separatism or military clashes
69 could erupt./ “**Ukraine** is not Georgia,”/ **he** said, referring to the country's larger population,
70 military and geopolitical significance./

71 /“**Strength** today is not in a military position./ **Employing it** would be complete stupidity,”/ **he**
72 added./

73 /Referring to last January's natural gas stand-off between Kiev and Moscow,/ which
74 disrupted European supplies, and relentless Russian warnings that/ recession-battered
75 Ukraine was unable to pay its gas bill,/ Mr Yushchenko said:/ “There are a lot of hidden and
76 cynical schemes being played through information airwaves, aimed at discrediting Ukraine”
77 in the eyes of Europe and the world./

78 /Mr Yushchenko said:/ “We are witnesses of how/ the politics of totalitarianism is reaching
79 its apogee against the principles of democracy, sovereignty and territorial integrity./ Georgia
80 is a sign of how,/ unfortunately, the Pan-European community did not stand up to defend
81 these fundamental principles./ It was a setback,”/ he said./

82 /The Ukrainian president said/ he hoped soon to meet US President Barack Obama to discuss
83 these and other issues and expressed solidarity with a plea to Western leaders made last week
84 by members of Ukraine’s intelligentsia./ In an open letter, politicians, artists and experts had
85 called for western leaders to provide Ukraine with stronger security guarantees against an
86 increasing threat from Russia./

87 /Mr Yushchenko trails three frontrunners in the election/ who are actively seeking to
88 harmonise relations with Russia./ They include Yulia Tymoshenko, prime minister and
89 erstwhile Orange Revolution partner, and ex-prime minister Viktor Yanukovich, the Moscow-
90 backed candidate in 2004./ Mr Yushchenko accused them of pandering to Moscow, selling
91 out Ukrainian interests as “trading cards” to get Russia’s support for their candidacies./

APPENDIX 4B. Case study 1.3 ‘Ukraine is Not Georgia’.

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: InoSMI.Ru (16 September, 2009)

В преддверии выборов Ющенко критикует Москву

- 1 /**Виктор Ющенко, теряющий популярность президент Украины, жалуется** на /**Viktor Yushchenko, losing popularity president Ukraine-of, complain-ing** on
- 2 вмешательство России во внутренние дела Киева в преддверии ключевых interference Russia-of into internal affairs Kiev-of in anticipation key
- 3 президентских выборов,/ на которых **прозападный лидер**, вероятно, **проигрывает** более presidential elections-of,/ at which **pro-western leader**, likely, **lose-will** more
- 4 дружественному к Кремлю кандидату./ friendly to Kremlin candidate./
- 5 /В интервью Financial Times **г-н Ющенко заявил**, что/ **Москва начала** против Киева /In interview Financial Times **Mr. Yushchenko stated**, that/ **Moscow started** against Kiev
- 6 кампанию клеветы и **может попытаться манипулировать** украинским campaign smear-of and **can try manipulate** Ukrainian
- 7 **избирателями**./ **То же самое говорилось** и в 2004 году,/ когда **г-н Ющенко пришел** к electorate./ **That too same said-was** and in 2004 year,/ when Mr. Yushchenko came to
- 8 власти, одержав верх над поддержаным Кремлем кандидатом./ **Избиратели**, между power, took over supported Kremlin-by candidate./ **Voters**, between
- 9 тем, по прежнему **расколоты** по оси на русскоговорящих и украинскоговорящих./ that, as still **divided** on axis into Russian-speaking and Ukrainian-speaking./
- 10 /**Тема вмешательства России в выборы на Украине всплыла** в прошлом месяце,/

Topic interference-of Russia in elections in Ukraine surfaced in last month,/

11 когда президент России Дмитрий Медведев обвинил г-на Ющенко в том, что/ тот
when president Russia-of Dmitry Medvedev accused Mr. Yushchenko in that, that/ that

12 ведет «антироссийскую политику», стремясь вступить в военный альянс НАТО,/ и
lead-ing ‘anti-Russian policy’, aiming enter in military alliance NATO,/ and

13 призвал будущего президента страны быть более дружелюбным./
called future president country-of be more friendly./

14 /Г-н Ющенко говорит, что/ он ожидает, что/ Россия будет возбуждать
/Mr. Yushchenko says, that/ he expects, that/ Russia will stir

15 сепаратистские настроения на принадлежащем Украине, но склоняющемся к России
separatist moods on belonging Ukraine-to, but leaning to Russia

16 Крымском полуострове./ Тем не менее, он исключил возможность военного конфликта,
Crimean peninsula./ Nevertheless, he excluded possibility military conflict-of,

17 подобного тому,/ который разгорелся прошлым летом в Грузии – еще одной
similar that,/ which inflamed last summer in Georgia – another one

18 прозападной стране на постсоветском пространстве./ Москва продолжает твердо
pro-western country on post-Soviet area./ Moscow continues firmly

19 поддерживать стремление к независимости двух отковавшихся анклавов Грузии,/
support ambition to independence two-of breakaway enclaves Georgia-of,/

20 один из которых – Южная Осетия – оказался в прошлом году в центре войны./
one from which – South Ossetia – appeared in last year in middle war-of,/

21 Многие в Киеве опасаются, что/ в Крыму повторится подобный сценарий./
Many in Kiev fear, that/ in Crimea repeat-will similar scenario./

22 /«Они постараются разыграть «крымскую карту»./ Однако я не думаю, что/ есть
/They try-will play ‘Crimean card’./ However I not think, that/ is

23 опасность повторения ситуации в Грузии,/ - заметил г-н Ющенко в ответ на
danger repetition situation in Georgia,/ - noted Mr. Yushchenko in answer on

24 вопрос о том, / **существует ли угроза** сепаратизма или военных столкновений./
question about that, / **exist whether threat** separatism-of or military clashes./

25 «Украина - не Грузия», / - **добавил он**, подчеркивая, что/ **у его страны** большее
'Ukraine – not Georgia', / - **added he**, underlining, that/ **his country** larger

26 население, военная мощь и геополитическое значение./
population, military power and geopolitical significance./

27 /«В наши дни **сила не** в оружии./ **Прибегать к нему было бы** просто глупо», / - **заявил**
/‘In our days **power not** in weapons./ **Resort to it would be** simply silly’, / - **stated**

28 **он**./ По поводу январского газового противостояния между Киевом и Москвой,
he./ About January gas confrontation between Kiev and Moscow,

29 приведшего к срыву поставок газа в Европу, а также настойчивых предупреждений
led to disruption supplies-of gas-of to Europe, and also persistent warnings

30 России о том, что/ **пострадавшая от рецессии Украина неспособна оплатить**
Russia-of about that, that/ **suffered from recession Ukraine unable pay**

31 газовый счет, / **г-н Ющенко заметил**:/ «В области информации **действует много**
gas bill, / **Mr. Yushchenko noted**:/ ‘In area information-of **act many**

32 **тайных и циничных схем**, нацеленных на дискредитацию Украины» в глазах Европы
secret and cynical schemes, aimed at discreditation Ukraine-of’ in eyes Europe-of

33 и мира./
and world./

34 /**Г-н Ющенко** также **сказал**:/ «**Мы видим**, как/ **политика тоталитаризма достигает**
/Mr. Yushchenko also said:/ ‘**We see**, how/ **politics totalitarism-of reaching**

35 своего апогея в борьбе против принципов демократии, суверенитета и
its apogee in fight against principles democracy-of, sovereignty and

36 территориальной целостности./ **Грузия** – пример того, как,/ к несчастью,
territorial integrity./ **Georgia** – example that-of, how,/ unfortunately,

37 **общееевропейское сообщество не встало** на защиту этих фундаментальных

pan-European community **not rose** for protection these fundamental principles-of./ **Это был** шаг назад'./ По словам украинского президента, вскоре **он надеется встретиться** с президентом США Бараком Обамой для обсуждения этих и **hopes meet** with president USA-of Barack Obama for discussion these and других вопросов./ Кроме того, **он выразил** солидарность с обращением к западным other questions./ Besides that, **he expressed** solidarity with address to western лидерам, подписанным на прошлой неделе представителями украинской leaders, signed on last week representatives-by Ukrainian интеллигенции./ В своем открытом письме **политики, художники и эксперты intelligentsia**./ In their open letter **politicians, painters and experts** призывали лидеров Запада предоставить Украине более надежные гарантии **called** leaders West-of provide Ukraine-to more reliable guarantees безопасности против российской угрозы./ security-of against Russian threat./

45 /**Г-н Ющенко отстает** от трех основных кандидатов в президенты, активно /**Mr. Yushchenko lags** from three main candidates in presidents, actively пытающихся гармонизировать отношения с Россией./ В их числе **премьер-министр prime minister** trying harmonise relations with Russia./ In their number **prime minister** Юлия Тимошенко, его бывший партнер по «оранжевой революции», и **бывший Yulia Tymoshenko**, his former partner in 'Orange revolution', and **former** премьер-министр **Виктор Янукович**,/ которого **Москва поддерживала** на выборах prime-minister **Viktor Yanukovych**,/ who **Moscow supported-ing** on elections 49 2004 года./ **Г-н Ющенко обвиняет** их в потворстве Москве и использовании 2004 year-of./ **Mr. Yuschenko accuses** them in connivance Moscow-to and use 50 интересов Украины как «разменных карт» для получения поддержки России./ interests-of Ukraine-of as 'swap cards' for receiving support Russia-of./

Literally:

Ahead of poll Yushchenko criticises Moscow

Viktor Yushchenko, Ukraine's president who is losing popularity, is complaining of Russia's interference in Kiev's domestic affairs ahead of key presidential elections which the pro-western leader will probably lose to a more Kremlin-friendly candidate.

In the Financial Times interview, Yushchenko said that Moscow started a smear campaign against Kiev and could try to manipulate Ukraine's electorate. The same was said in 2004 when Mr Yushchenko came to power against a Kremlin-backed candidate. Voters, meanwhile, remain split in an east-west axis between Russian and Ukrainian speakers.

Theme of Russia's interference in the elections in Ukraine emerged last month when Russia's president, Dmitry Medvedev, accused Mr Yushchenko of leading 'anti-Russian' policies, seeking to join NATO military alliance and urged the future president to be more friendly.

Mr Yushchenko says that he is expecting that Russia will stir up separatist mood on the belonging to Ukraine but leaning to Russia Crimean peninsula. But he ruled a possibility of a military conflict of the kind that broke out last summer in Georgia – another pro-western country on the post-Soviet area. Moscow continues to firmly back the independence aspirations of two Georgian breakaway enclaves, one of which – South Ossetia – turned out to be at the centre the war last year. Many in Kiev fear that the same scenario will be repeated in the Crimea.

'They will try to exploit the 'Crimean card'. But, I don't think that there is any danger that the situation in Georgia would repeat', noted Mr Yushchenko as an answer to the question whether there is any threat of separatism or military clashes. 'Ukraine is not Georgia', he added, emphasising that his country has larger population, military power and geopolitical significance.

'Today strength is not in weapon. Employing it would be simply stupid', he stated.

Referring to January's gas stand-off between Kiev and Moscow which lead to disruption of supplies to Europe and also relentless Russian warnings that recession-battered Ukraine was unable to pay for the gas bill, Mr Yushchenko noted, 'In the information area many secret and cynical schemes act aimed at discrediting Ukraine' in the eyes of Europe and the world.

Mr Yushchenko also said, 'We see how politics of totalitarianism is reaching its apogee in the fight against principles of democracy, sovereignty and territorial integrity. Georgia is an example of how, unfortunately, the Pan-European community did not stand up to defend these fundamental principles. This was a step back'.

According to Ukraine's president he is soon hoping to meet U.S. president Barak Obama to discuss these and other issues. Besides, he expressed solidarity with a plea to Western leaders signed last week by the representatives of Ukraine's intelligentsia. In their open letter politicians, artists and experts had called for western leaders to provide Ukraine with more reliable security guarantees against Russian threat.

Mr Yushchenko trails three main frontrunners in the presidential election who are actively trying to harmonise relations with Russia. Among them Yulia Tymoshenko, his ex-partner in the Orange revolution and ex-prime minister Viktor Yanukovych who Moscow was backing at the election in 2004. Mr Yushchenko is accusing them of pandering to Moscow and using Ukraine's interests as 'selling cards' to get Russia's support.

Source text: The Financial Times (14 September, 2009)

Yushchenko hits at Moscow ahead of poll

By Roman Olearchyk in Kiev

51 /**Viktor Yushchenko, the embattled Ukrainian president, complained** of Russian meddling
52 in Kiev's domestic affairs ahead of a high-stakes presidential election,/ which **the pro-**
53 **western leader is expected to lose** to a more Kremlin-friendly candidate./

54 /In a Financial Times interview, **Mr Yushchenko said/ Moscow had waged** a smear
55 campaign against Kiev and **could try to manipulate** Ukraine's electorate –/ **claims** that **were**
56 also **made** in 2004/ when **Mr Yushchenko was propelled** to power against a Kremlin-backed
57 candidate./ **Voters remain split** in an east-west axis between Russian and Ukrainian
58 speakers./

59 /**The issue of Russian interference in Ukraine's election emerged** last month/ when **Dmitry**
60 **Medvedev, Russia's president, accused** Mr Yushchenko of waging "anti-Russian" policies
61 by seeking membership in the Nato military alliance, and **urged** the country's future president
62 to be more friendly./

63 /**Mr Yushchenko said/ he expects** Russia to stir up separatist sentiment on Ukraine's
64 Russian-leaning Crimean peninsula./ But **he ruled** out escalation into a military conflict of the
65 kind seen last summer in Georgia, another pro-western ally on post-Soviet turf./ **Moscow**
66 **continues** to firmly **back** the independence aspirations of two Georgian breakaway enclaves,/

67 one of which, **South Ossetia, was** at the centre of the war./ **Many in Kiev fear** a similar
68 scenario in Crimea./

69 /"They **will try to exploit** the 'Crimean Card'./ But, I **don't see** a risk that/ **the situation in**
70 **Georgia would repeat,"/ said** Mr Yushchenko when asked if separatism or military clashes
71 could erupt./ "Ukraine is **not** Georgia,"/ **he said**, referring to the country's larger population,
72 military and geopolitical significance./

73 /"Strength today **is not** in a military position./ **Employing it would be** complete stupidity,"/
74 **he added.**/

75 /Referring to last January's natural gas stand-off between Kiev and Moscow,/ **which**
76 **disrupted** European supplies, and relentless Russian warnings that/ **recession-battered**
77 **Ukraine was unable to pay** its gas bill,/ **Mr Yushchenko said:**/ “There **are a lot of hidden**
78 **and cynical schemes being played** through information airwaves, aimed at discrediting
79 Ukraine” in the eyes of Europe and the world./

80 /**Mr Yushchenko said:**/ “We **are** witnesses of how/ **the politics of totalitarianism is**
81 **reaching** its apogee against the principles of democracy, sovereignty and territorial integrity./
82 **Georgia is** a sign of how,/ unfortunately, **the Pan-European community did not stand up** to
83 defend these fundamental principles./ **It was** a setback,”/ **he said.**/

84 /**The Ukrainian president said**/ **he hoped** soon **to meet** US President Barack Obama to
85 discuss these and other issues and **expressed** solidarity with a plea to Western leaders made
86 last week by members of Ukraine's intelligentsia./ In an open letter, **politicians, artists and**
87 **experts had called** for western leaders to provide Ukraine with stronger security guarantees
88 against an increasing threat from Russia./

89 /**Mr Yushchenko trails** three frontrunners in the election/ **who are** actively **seeking to**
90 **harmonise** relations with Russia./ **They include** Yulia Tymoshenko, prime minister and
91 erstwhile Orange Revolution partner, and ex-prime minister Viktor Yanukovich, the Moscow-
92 backed candidate in 2004./ **Mr Yushchenko accused** them of pandering to Moscow, selling
93 out Ukrainian interests as “trading cards” to get Russia's support for their candidacies./

APPENDIX 5A. Case study 2.1 *The FAO Call for Assistance.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: RIA Novosti The International News (18 August, 2011)

ФАО призывает оказать срочную продовольственную помощь странам Африканского Рога

РИМ, 18 авг - РИА Новости, Сергей Старцев.

- 1 */Дальнейшее углубление продовольственного кризиса в странах Африканского*
/Further deepening food crisis-of in countries African
- 2 *Рога, прежде всего в Сомали*, констатировали участники специального совещания, *Horn-of,first all in Somalia*, stated participants special meeting-of,
- 3 состоявшегося в четверг в штаб-квартире Продовольственной и held on Thursday in headquarters Food and
- 4 сельскохозяйственной организации ООН (ФАО) в Риме, / *передает* корреспондент Agricultural organisation UN (FAO) in Rome, / *transfers* correspondent
- 5 РИА Новости./
RIA Novosti./

- 6 */Открывая встречу, на которой* присутствовали министры правительства многих */Opening meeting, at which* present-were ministers governments-of many
- 7 стран Африки и представители крупнейших международных организаций, / countries-of Africa and representatives major-of international organisations-of, /
- 8 *гендиректор ФАО Жак Диуд* подчеркнул, что/ *сложившаяся ныне на*

director-general FAO Jacques Diouf underlined, that/ established now on

9 Африканском Роге ситуация "неприемлема в нашу эпоху с ее финансовыми,
African Horn situation 'unacceptable in our era with its financial, technological and
10 технологическими и профессиональными ресурсами'./
professional resources'./

11 /Участники совещания указывали, что/ в результате сильнейшей за последние 60
/Participants meeting-of pointed-ing, that/ in result strongest in last 60

12 лет засухи примерно 12 миллионам жителей этого региона угрожает голодная
years drought around 12 million residents this region-of threatens hungry

13 смерть./ Министр сельского хозяйства Сомали Абдулла Нуур попросил коллег
death./ Minister agriculture Somalia-of Abdullah Noor asked colleagues

14 срочно направить в его страну продовольствие, питьевую воду и медикаменты,/
urgently send to his country food, drinking water and medicine,/

15 которые нужны для спасения жизней 1,4 миллиона детей и старииков./ По его
which needed for saving lives-of 1.4 million children and elderly./ By his

16 мнению, сомалийцам остается надеяться только на конкретную помощь
opinion, Somalians left hope only on specific help

17 международного сообщества./
international community-of./

18 /Эксперты ФАО утверждают, что/ в некоторых районах Сомали около половины
/Experts FAO-of state, that /in some areas Somalia-of around half

19 населения сейчас страдают от голода и недоедания./ По их оценкам, ситуация будет
population-of now suffer from hunger and malnutrition./ By their evaluations, situation will

20 ухудшаться как минимум до сезона дождей,/ который начнется в сентябре-
worsen-ing as minimum till season rains-of,/ which start-will in September-

21 октябре./ Эксперты констатируют также резкий рост цен в регионе на пищевые
October./ Experts state also sharp increase prices-of in region on food

22 продукты./ В частности, цены на кукурузу за последний год там почти удвоились./
products./ In particular, prices on corn in last year there almost doubled./

23 /Очевидно, что для преодоления продовольственного кризиса на Африканском
 /Evident, that for overcoming food crisis in African

24 Роге требуется экстренная помощь международного сообщества./ Для этого в свою
Horn needed emergency aid international community-of./ For this in its

25 очередь необходима политическая воля./ Судя по выступлениям ряда участников
 turn necessary political will. /Judging by statements row participants-of

26 римского совещания, в частности, министра сельского хозяйства Анголы Альфонсо
Rome meeting-of, in particular, minister agriculture-of Angola-of Alfonso

27 Педро Канги, существуют явные сомнения в том, что/ такая воля будет проявлена./
 Pedro Canga, exist evident doubts in that, that/ such will will manifested./

28 /Окончательный ответ на данный вопрос должна дать конференция стран-
/Final answer on this question should give conference countries-

29 доноров,/ которая созывается для принятие мер по кризису на Африканском Роге
 donors/ which convened-is for taking measures on crisis in African Horn

30 25 августа в Аддис-Абебе./
 25 August in Addis Ababa./

Literally:

FAO calls to provide urgent food aid to the countries of the Horn of Africa

Rome, 18th August – RIA Novosti, Sergey Starzhev. Further deepening of the food crisis in the countries of the Horn of Africa, particularly in Somalia, was states by the participants of the special meeting which took place on Thursday in the headquarters of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) in Rome, RIA News journalist reports.

Opening the meeting at which ministers of many African countries and representatives of major international organisations, Director General Jacques Diouf emphasised that the current situation in the Horn of Africa ‘is unacceptable in our era with its financial, technological and professional resources’.

Participants of the meeting pointed out that as a result of the strongest in the last 60 years drought about 12 million residents of this region are under threat of starvation. The Somali Agriculture Minister Abdullah Noor asked colleagues to urgently send to his country food, drinking water and medicine which are necessary for saving lives of 1.4 million children and elderly people. According to him, Somalians are only left to hope for the specific help from the international community.

FAO experts state that in some areas of Somalia about half of the population are now suffering from hunger and malnutrition. According to their estimates, the situation will be deteriorating at least until the rain season which will start in September-October. Experts also note sharp increase in food prices. In particular, corn prices have almost doubled there over the past year.

Evidently, in order to overcome the food crisis in the Horn of Africa emergency assistance of the international community is needed. For this, in turn, political will is needed. Judging by the statements of some of the participants of the Rome meeting, in particular, Angola Minister of Agriculture Alfonso Pedro Canga, there are evident doubts that such will will be exercised.

Final answer to this question should be provided by the meeting of donor countries which is being called for taking measures on the crisis in the Horn of Africa on the 25th August in Addis Ababa.

Source text: FAO.org (18 August, 2011)

Meeting on Horn of Africa calls for tackling root causes of famine

Food assistance to save lives today, support for agriculture and pastoralism to prevent repeat crises tomorrow

31 18 August 2011, Rome - Governments, UN agencies and international organizations
32 meeting in Rome today urged the international community to continue their support for life
33 saving operations in the Horn of Africa but also warned that/ food producing farmers and
34 herders need immediate help to prevent the crisis from deepening./

35 /Participating in today's event were agricultural ministers from countries in the Horn of
36 Africa, ministers and representatives of FAO Member nations, the African Union, the
37 Presidency of the G20 (France), the International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD),
38 the UN World Food Programme (WFP), the UN Secretary-General representative, Oxfam and
39 many other international and civil society organizations./

40 /The day-long meeting ended with a call for a twin track approach/ that involves both
41 meeting pressing relief needs as well as addressing the root causes of the problem and
42 strengthening the affected populations' resilience in the face of future shocks./

43 /"Even as we deal with saving lives today,/ we should also go further and take steps to prevent
44 future calamities./ We have to start building for the future -- now./ Comprehensive,
45 government-endorsed investment plans are already available --/ the funding gaps are clear
46 and large./ If governments and their donor partners do not invest in agriculture now,/ the
47 appalling famine/ we are struggling to redress will return to shame us yet again,"/ said FAO
48 Director-General Jacques Diouf./

49 /"Feeding the hungry does not end hunger,/ unless we help people provide for their futures./
50 If donors, development agencies and governments do not attend to the medium and long
51 term,/ this kind of tragedy will happen again,"/ said IFAD Vice President Yukiko Omura./
52 /"We cannot control droughts,/ but we can control hunger./ To do so we must invest in the
53 world's smallholder farmers so that/ they can feed their communities and their families."/

54 /WFP Deputy Executive Director Sheila Sisulu said:/ "By harnessing the power of regional
55 institutions and of partnerships, national institutions, political will and international
56 commitment, we can break this cycle by building household resilience, protecting productive
57 assets, and putting in place measures to avoid a similar crisis when/ the rains, inevitably, fail
58 in the future."/

59 /"What the Horn of Africa region is enduring today is a manifestation of the extent/ to which
60 livelihoods in Africa are extremely vulnerable to shocks -- hence the need to address such
61 extreme vulnerability of livelihoods, and of the economies of communities and nations,"/ said
62 Tumusiime Rhoda Peace, Commissioner for Rural Economy and Agriculture of the African
63 Union./

64 **Safeguarding local food production**

65 /While the food crisis in the Horn of Africa was triggered by drought, conflict and high
66 food prices, the underlying reason for the region's vulnerability to such shocks is
67 underinvestment in agriculture and inadequate management of natural resources./

68 /Specific immediate-term measures/ that were flagged for priority action during today's talks/
69 include:/

- 70 • /Ensuring that lifesaving food assistance needs are met and that nutrition support is
71 scaled up
- 72 • /Saving surviving livestock to protect the food security of pastoralists/
- 73 • /Saving the forthcoming planting season starting in October ensuring that farmers
74 have access to inputs such as seeds, fertilizer, and irrigation water/
- 75 • /Expanding cash-for-work programmes to allow people to buy food at local markets
76 and prevent the sale of assets/

77 /The meeting also stressed the vital importance of supporting actions aimed at addressing the
78 root causes of the problem in the Horn:/

- 79 • /Protecting and restoring degraded land resources/
- 80 • /Improving water management and expanding irrigation (only 1% of the land in the
81 Horn of Africa region is irrigated, versus 7% in Africa and 38% in Asia)/
- 82 • /Improving animal, plant, and range management practices of small scale farmers to
83 make them less vulnerable to hazards and climate variability/
- 84 • /Strengthening community-based animal health services/
- 85 • /Identifying viable and acceptable alternatives to pastoral livelihoods/

86 /Support for such activities should be a sustained, multi-year effort and be linked to
87 improvements in basic services including education, health and clean water,/ participants
88 added./

89 /The meeting recommended continued support for the African Union-sponsored
90 Comprehensive Africa Agriculture Development Programme (CAADP),/ which envisions
91 investing more in supporting livelihood resilience in drought prone areas./

92 **From crisis to recovery**

93 /**The technical meeting** was organized by FAO as a follow-up to the Emergency Ministerial-
94 Level Meeting on the Horn of Africa, convened on 25 July 2011 at the request of the French
95 Presidency of the G-20./ **The event** aimed to review both immediate as well as longer-term
96 responses to the crisis./ **Recommendations generated by the meeting** will guide international
97 response efforts and help prepare upcoming advocacy, fundraising and coordination events to
98 support the affected population in the region./

APPENDIX 5B. Case study 2.1 *The FAO Call for Assistance.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: RIA Novosti The International News (18 August, 2011)

ФАО призывает оказать срочную продовольственную помощь странам Африканского Рога

РИМ, 18 авг - РИА Новости, Сергей Старцев.

- 1 /Дальнейшее углубление продовольственного кризиса в странах Африканского /Further deepening food crisis-of in countries African
- 2 Рога, прежде всего в Сомали, **констатировали** участники специального Horn-of, first all in Somalia, **stated** participants special
- 3 совещания, состоявшегося в четверг в штаб-квартире Продовольственной и meeting-of, held on Thursday in headquarters Food and
- 4 сельскохозяйственной организации ООН (ФАО) в Риме,/ **передает** корреспондент Agricultural organisation UN (FAO) in Rome,/ **transfers** correspondent
- 5 **РИА Новости.**/
RIA Novosti./
- 6 /Открывая встречу,/ на которой **присутствовали** министры правительства многих /Opening meeting,/ at which **present-were** ministers governments-of many
- 7 **стран Африки и представители крупнейших международных организаций,/** countries-of Africa and representatives major-of international organisations-of,/
- 8 **генеральный директор ФАО Жак Диуф** подчеркнул, что/ сложившаяся ныне на

director-general FAO Jacques Diouf *underlined*, that/ established now on

9 **Африканском Роге ситуация "неприемлема** в нашу эпоху с ее финансовыми,
African Horn situation '*unacceptable* in our era with its financial, technological and
10 технологическими и профессиональными ресурсами"./
professional resources'./

11 **/Участники совещания указывали**, что/ в результате сильнейшей за последние 60
/Participants meeting-of *pointed-ing*, that/ in result strongest in last 60

12 лет засухи примерно 12 миллионам жителей этого региона **угрожает голодная**
years drought around 12 million residents this region-of *threatens hungry*

13 **смерть./ Министр сельского хозяйства Сомали Абдулла Нуур попросил** коллег
death./ Minister agriculture Somalia-of Abdullah Noor *asked* colleagues

14 **срочно направить** в его страну продовольствие, питьевую воду и медикаменты,/br/>urgently send to his country food, drinking water and medicine,/

15 **которые нужны** для спасения жизней 1,4 миллиона детей и старииков./ По его
which *needed* for saving lives-of 1.4 million children and elderly./ By his

16 **мнению, сомалийцам остается надеяться** только на конкретную помощь
opinion, Somalians *left hope* only on specific help

17 **международного сообщества./**
international community-of./

18 **/Эксперты ФАО утверждают**, что/ в некоторых районах Сомали **около**
/Experts FAO-of *state*, that /in some areas Somalia-of **around**

19 **половины населения** сейчас **страдают** от голода и недоедания./ По их оценкам,
half population-of now *suffer* from hunger and malnutrition./ By their evaluations,

20 **ситуация будет ухудшаться** как минимум до сезона дождей,/ **который начнется**
situation *will worsen-ing* as minimum till season rains-of,/ which *start-will*

21 **в сентябре-октябре./ Эксперты констатируют** также резкий рост цен в регионе на
in September- October./ Experts *state* also sharp increase prices-of in region on

22 **пищевые продукты./ В частности, цены на кукурузу** за последний год там почти
food products./ In particular, **prices on corn** in last year there almost

23 *удвоились./* Очевидно, что для преодоления продовольственного кризиса на *doubled./* /Evident, that for overcoming food crisis in

24 Африканском Роге **требуется экстренная помощь международного сообщества.**/ African Horn **needed emergency aid international community-of.**/

25 Для этого в свою очередь **необходима политическая воля.**/ Судя по выступлениям For this in its turn **necessary political will.** /Judging by statements

26 ряда участников римского совещания, в частности, министра сельского хозяйства row participants-of Rome meeting-of, in particular, minister agriculture-of

27 Анголы Альфонсо Педро Канги, **существуют явные сомнения** в том, что/ **такая** Angola-of Alfonso Pedro Canga, **exist evident doubts** in that, that/ **such**

28 **воля будет проявлена.**/ Окончательный ответ на данный вопрос **должна дать** will **will manifested.**/ Final answer on this question **should give**

29 **конференция стран-доноров,**/ которая **созывается** для принятие мер по кризису conference countries-donors/ **which convened-is** for taking measures on crisis

30 на Африканском Роге 25 августа в Аддис-Абебе./ in African Horn 25 August in Addis Ababa./

Literally:

FAO calls to provide urgent food aid to the countries of the Horn of Africa

Rome, 18th August – RIA Novosti, Sergey Starzhev. Further deepening of the food crisis in the countries of the Horn of Africa, particularly in Somalia, was states by the participants of the special meeting which took place on Thursday in the headquarters of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) in Rome, RIA News journalist reports.

Opening the meeting at which ministers of many African countries and representatives of major international organisations, Director General Jacques Diouf emphasised that the current situation in the Horn of Africa ‘is unacceptable in our era with its financial, technological and professional resources’.

Participants of the meeting pointed out that as a result of the strongest in the last 60 years drought about 12 million residents of this region are under threat of starvation. The Somali Agriculture Minister Abdullah Noor asked colleagues to urgently send to his country food, drinking water and medicine which are necessary for saving lives of 1.4 million children and elderly people. According to him, Somalians are only left to hope for the specific help from the international community.

FAO experts state that in some areas of Somalia about half of the population are now suffering from hunger and malnutrition. According to their estimates, the situation will be deteriorating at least until the rain season which will start in September-October. Experts also note sharp increase in food prices. In particular, corn prices have almost doubled there over the past year.

Evidently, in order to overcome the food crisis in the Horn of Africa emergency assistance of the international community is needed. For this, in turn, political will is needed. Judging by the statements of some of the participants of the Rome meeting, in particular, Angola Minister of Agriculture Alfonso Pedro Canga, there are evident doubts that such will will be exercised.

Final answer to this question should be provided by the meeting of donor countries which is being called for taking measures on the crisis in the Horn of Africa on the 25th August in Addis Ababa.

Source text: FAO.org (18 August, 2011)

Meeting on Horn of Africa calls for tackling root causes of famine

Food assistance to save lives today, support for agriculture and pastoralism to prevent repeat crises tomorrow

31 18 August 2011, Rome - /**Governments, UN agencies and international organizations**
32 **meeting** in Rome today **urged** the international community to continue their support for life
33 saving operations in the Horn of Africa but also **warned** that/ **food producing farmers and**
34 **herders need** immediate help to prevent the crisis from deepening./

35 /**Participating** in today's event **were agricultural ministers from countries in the Horn of**
36 **Africa, ministers and representatives of FAO Member nations, the African Union, the**
37 **Presidency of the G20 (France), the International Fund for Agricultural Development**
38 **(IFAD), the UN World Food Programme (WFP), the UN Secretary-General**
39 **representative, Oxfam and many other international and civil society organizations.**/

40 /**The day-long meeting ended** with a call for a twin track approach/ that involves both
41 meeting pressing relief needs as well as addressing the root causes of the problem and
42 strengthening the affected populations' resilience in the face of future shocks./

43 /"Even as we **deal** with saving lives today,/ **we should** also **go** further and take steps to
44 prevent future calamities./ **We have to start** building for the future -- now./ **Comprehensive,**
45 **government-endorsed investment plans are** already available --/ **the funding gaps are** clear
46 and large./ If **governments and their donor partners do not invest** in agriculture now,/ **the**
47 **appalling famine/ we are struggling** to redress/ **will return** to shame us yet again,"/ **said**
48 **FAO Director-General Jacques Diouf.**/

49 /"Feeding the hungry **does not end** hunger,/ unless **we help** people provide for their futures./
50 If **donors, development agencies and governments do not attend** to the medium and long
51 term,/ **this kind of tragedy will happen** again,"/ **said** IFAD Vice President Yukiko Omura./
52 **"We cannot control** droughts,/ but **we can control** hunger./ To do so **we must invest** in the
53 world's smallholder farmers so that/ **they can feed** their communities and their families."/

54 /WFP Deputy Executive Director Sheila Sisulu *said*:/ "By harnessing the power of regional
55 institutions and of partnerships, national institutions, political will and international
56 commitment, **we can break** this cycle by building household resilience, protecting productive
57 assets, and putting in place measures to avoid a similar crisis when/ the rains, inevitably, fail
58 in the future."/

59 /"What the Horn of Africa region is enduring today *is* a manifestation of the extent/ to
60 which **livelihoods in Africa are** extremely vulnerable to shocks -- hence the need to address
61 such extreme vulnerability of livelihoods, and of the economies of communities and nations,"/
62 **said Tumusiime Rhoda Peace, Commissioner for Rural Economy and Agriculture of the
63 African Union.**/

64 **Safeguarding local food production**

65 /While **the food crisis in the Horn of Africa was triggered** by drought, conflict and high
66 food prices,/ **the underlying reason** for the region's vulnerability to such shocks *is*
67 underinvestment in agriculture and inadequate management of natural resources./

68 /**Specific immediate-term measures/ that were flagged** for priority action during today's
69 talks/ *include*:/

70 • /Ensuring that lifesaving food assistance needs are met and that nutrition support is
71 scaled up
72 • /Saving surviving livestock to protect the food security of pastoralists/
73 • /Saving the forthcoming planting season starting in October ensuring that farmers
74 have access to inputs such as seeds, fertilizer, and irrigation water/
75 • /Expanding cash-for-work programmes to allow people to buy food at local markets
76 and prevent the sale of assets/

77 /**The meeting also stressed** the vital importance of supporting actions aimed at addressing the
78 root causes of the problem in the Horn:/

79 • /Protecting and restoring degraded land resources/
80 • /Improving water management and expanding irrigation (only 1% of the land in the
81 Horn of Africa region is irrigated, versus 7% in Africa and 38% in Asia)/
82 • /Improving animal, plant, and range management practices of small scale farmers to
83 make them less vulnerable to hazards and climate variability/
84 • /Strengthening community-based animal health services/
85 • /Identifying viable and acceptable alternatives to pastoral livelihoods/

86 /**Support for such activities should be** a sustained, multi-year effort and be linked to
87 improvements in basic services including education, health and clean water,/ **participants
88 added.**/

89 /**The meeting recommended** continued support for the African Union-sponsored
90 Comprehensive Africa Agriculture Development Programme (CAADP),/ **which envisions**
91 investing more in supporting livelihood resilience in drought prone areas./

92 **From crisis to recovery**

93 /The technical meeting *was organized* by FAO as a follow-up to the Emergency Ministerial-
94 Level Meeting on the Horn of Africa, convened on 25 July 2011 at the request of the French
95 Presidency of the G-20./ The event *aimed* to review both immediate as well as longer-term
96 responses to the crisis./ Recommendations generated by the meeting *will guide*
97 international response efforts and help prepare upcoming advocacy, fundraising and
98 coordination events to support the affected population in the region./

APPENDIX 6A. Case study 2.2 *Emergency Assistance to the Horn of Africa.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: Business World Journal (15 September, 2011)

Восточная Африка: Продовольственный кризис

- 1 /Как сообщает "Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest", в условиях обострения /As reports Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest, in conditions exacerbation
- 2 продовольственного кризиса в Восточной Африке ООН официально объявила food crisis-of in Eastern Africa UN officially announced
- 3 о голоде в ряде районов Сомали./ Агентства по оказанию помощи about famine in row areas-of Somalia-of./ Agencies of providing aid
- 4 предупреждают, что/ ключевым направлением предотвращения warn, that/ key direction prevention-of
- 5 гуманитарной катастрофы в регионе должно стать обеспечение humanitarian disaster in region should become provision
- 6 беспрепятственной доставки в эту часть Африки продуктов питания./ unhindered delivery to this area Africa-of food products-of./

- 7 /Координатор гуманитарной помощи для Сомали М. Бовден предупредил, /Coordinator humanitarian aid-of for Somalia M. Bowden warned,
- 8 что/ бездействие приведет в ближайшие два месяца к распространению that/ inaction lead-will in nearest two months to spread
- 9 голода на все восемь южных районов Сомали./ Скажется влияние низкого famine-of on all eight southern area Somalia-of. /Affect-will influence low
- 10 урожая и вспышки инфекционных заболеваний./ ООН призвала к оказанию

harvest-of and outbreak infectious diseases-of./ UN called to provision

11 экстренной помощи остро нуждающимся жителям Восточной Африки./
emergency aid-of acutely needy residents Eastern Africa-of./

12 /Директор Международного института изучения продовольственной
politики предупредил, что/ странам данного региона в рамках пакетов
politics warned, that/ countries this region-of in frames packages-of

13 кратко- и долгосрочных мер следует обеспечивать открытость
short- and long-term measures should provide openness

14 трансграничной торговли./ По его мнению, нецелесообразно вводить запреты
crossborder trade./ By his opinion, impractical introduce bans

15 на экспорт./ Такие ограничения могут содействовать улучшению снабжения
on export./ Such limitations can assist improvement supply

16 продуктами питания в стране,/ но одновременно не исключается негативное
products food-of in country,/ but simultaneously not excluded negative

17 влияние на соседние государства,/ проблема голода в которых может
influence on neighbouring countries,/ problem famine-of in which can

18 обостриться./ Агентства по оказанию помощи также призывают
exacerbate./ Agencies of providing aid also call

19 правительства и влиятельные политические группировки не препятствовать
governments and influential political groups not hinder

20 свободному движению продовольственных грузов в регионе./
free movement food supplies-of in region./

21 /Советник гуманитарной организации "Oxfam" Р. Келли не сомневается в
Adviser humanitarian organisation-of Oxfam R. Kelly not doubts in

22 наличии продовольствия в этой части Африки./ Однако **должного**
availability food-of in this part Africa-of./ However proper

23 передвижения соответствующих грузов не обеспечивается,/ что отчасти
movement relevant supplies-of not provided,/ which partly

24 связано с высокими транспортными расходами и удаленностью

connected with high transport expenses and remoteness

26 пострадавших районов./ **Одновременно** оказывается и слабое
affected areas-of./ **Simultaneously** affects and weak

27 функционирование местных рынков./
functioning local markets-of./

28 **/По данным ООН**, проблема недоедания стоит в Восточной Африке острее, чем
/By data UN, problem malnutrition-of stands in Eastern Africa sharper, than

29 в других частях мира. **/В некоторых районах Сомали** от него страдает
in other parts world-of./ **In some areas Somalia-of** from it suffers

30 половина населения,/ **на юге Бакула и в Нижнем Шабеле** - 30%./ **По данным**
half population-of,/ **in south Bakool and in Lower Shabelle** – 30%./ **By data**

31 **базирующейся в Кении "Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit"**, в текущем
based in Kenya Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit, in current

32 году за счет внутреннего производства будет покрыто лишь 15-20%
year at expense internal production-of will covered only 15-20%

33 потребностей Сомали в продовольственном зерне/ **(в обычных условиях** этот
needs Somalia-of in food grain/ **(in usual conditions** this

34 показатель выше - 40%;/ **остальная часть** обеспечивается благодаря
figure higher – 40%;/ **remaining part** provided owing

35 трансграничной торговле в регионе и коммерческим поставкам,
crossborder trade-to in region and commercial deliveries,

36 осуществляется морским путем)./ **Импорт** уже осуществляется, в частности,
implemented sea way)./ **Import** already implemented, in particular,

37 через порт Могадиши,/ **причем в данном случае** перевалка зерновых грузов
through port Mogadishu,/ and **in this case** transhipment grain supplies-of

38 увеличилась по сравнению с прошлым годом на 80%, а со среднегодовым
increased in comparison with last year by 80%, and with annual-average

39 показателем за 2008-2010 гг. - более чем на 100%./
figure for 2008-2010 years. – more than on 100%./

40 /Доступ к продовольствию по отдельным районам значительно варьируется./
/Access to food by separate areas considerably varies./

41 /Сказываются различия погодно-климатических условий, общая ситуация в
/Affect differences weather-climatic conditions, overall situation in

42 сельском хозяйстве, влияние конфликтов между соперничающими
agriculture, influence conflicts-of between rival

43 группировками./ Нередким явлением стало нежелание последних пропускать
groups./ Not-uncommon phenomenon became unwillingness latter-of pass

44 транспортные средства с продуктами питания на сопредельные территории./
transport vehicles with products food-of on neighbouring territories./

45 /Эксперты, хорошо знающие реальную обстановку в регионе, сообщили
/Experts, well know real situation in region, informed

46 корреспонденту "Bridges", что/ из-за слабого развития инфраструктуры не
correspondent Bridges, that/ due to weak development infrastructure-of not

47 всегда возможна доставка указанных грузов из районов с избыточным
always possible delivery specified supplies-of from areas with excessive

48 производством зерна в районы, испытывающие его дефицит./ Высокие цены
production grain-of to areas, experiencing its deficit./ High prices

49 на горючее, а также наличие торговых барьеров в некоторых странах
on fuel, and also existence trade barriers-of in some countries

50 создают дополнительные трудности с перевозками продуктов питания в
create additional difficulties with transportations food products-of in

51 Восточноафриканском регионе./
East African region./

52 /По мнению экспертов ФАО, развитие инфраструктуры и получение доступа
/By opinion FAO experts-of, development infrastructure-of and receipt access-of

53 к материалам и комплектующим имеют весьма существенное значение для
to materials and components have quite considerable significance for

54 решения проблемы голода в Восточной Африке в долгосрочной перспективе./

solving problem famine-of in Eastern Africa in long-term perspective./

55 */Обращается* внимание и на неадекватное функционирование рынка./ *Если*
/Drawn attention and on inadequate functioning market-of./ *If*

56 *цены на какой-либо товар в одном населенном пункте в 2 раза выше, чем в*
prices on any goods in one settled point in 2 times higher, than in

57 *другом, расположенным на той же трассе на некотором удалении от*
other, located on that same highway on some distance from

58 *первого,/ становится* ясно, что/ *рыночные механизмы* в этой стране
first,/ becomes clear, that/ *market mechanisms* in this country

59 действуют не самым лучшим образом./
act not most best way./

60 */Как отмечает "Bridges",* населению Африки уже в недалеком будущем
/As notes Bridges, population Africa-of already in near future

61 придется все чаще сталкиваться с экстремальными погодно-климатическими
have-will more often face with extreme weather-climatic

62 явлениями (засухами, наводнениями, тропическими штормами), связанными с
phenomena (droughts, floods, tropical storms), connected with

63 последствиями глобального потепления./ *Во многих районах континента*
consequences global warming-of./ *In many areas continent-of*

64 произойдет повышение средней температуры./ *Фермерские хозяйства,*
happen-will rise average temperature-of./ *Farm economies,*

65 *выращивающие влаголюбивые культуры, а также специализирующиеся на*
growing moisture-loving crops, and also specialising on

66 *отгонно-пастбищном животноводстве,* окажутся в числе наиболее
transhumance-and-pastoral stock-breeding, be-will in number most

67 уязвимых производителей./
vulnerable producers./

68 */Эксперты "Oxfam"* предлагают практические шаги, направленные на
/Experts Oxfam-of suggest practical steps, directed on

69 смягчение последствий наличия барьеров в торговле./ *P. Келли* рекомендует

softening consequences-of existence-of barriers-of in trade./ R. Kelly recommends

70 предоставлять гранты в виде наличных средств торговым компаниям (для
provide grants in form cash resources trade companies-to (for
71 стимулирования предложения) и осуществлять денежные трансферты
stimulating supply-of) and exercise cash transfers
72 потребителям,/ которые позволяют им приобретать продукты питания на
consumers-to,/ which allow-will them buy food products on
73 местных рынках./
local markets./

74 /Правительственные экономисты ряда стран изучают возможности
/Governmental economists row countries-of study possibilities
75 региональной торговой интеграции (в рамках таможенных или валютных
regional trade integration-of (in frames customs or currency
76 союзов) в деле обеспечения лучшего взаимодействия между
unions) in case providing-of best interaction between
77 сельхозпроизводителями и рынком./ Некоторые аналитики, хорошо
farmers and market./ Some analysts, well
78 знакомые со спецификой данного региона, считают, что/ эти процессы
acquainted with specificity this region-of, believe, that/ these processes
79 должны происходить параллельно с реализацией мер по более глубокой
should occur parallel-ly with implementation measures-of of more deep
80 интеграции отдаленных районов в экономику соответствующих стран и
integration remote areas in economy relevant countries-of and
81 регионов./ Эксперты утверждают, что/ в первую очередь необходимо
regions-of./ Experts state, that/ in first turn necessary
82 обращать внимание на степень интегрированности национальных рынков, на
pay attention on level integration-of national markets-of, on
83 устранение препятствий на пути ее укрепления./
elimination obstacles on way its strengthening./

Literally:

As 'Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest' reports in the conditions of the deteriorating food crisis in Eastern Africa the UN has officially declared famine in parts of Somalia. Aid agencies warn that a key route to preventing a humanitarian disaster in the region should be provision of unhindered delivery of food into this part of Africa.

Humanitarian coordinator for Somalia M. Bowden warned that inaction will lead in the next two months to the spread of famine to all eight southern regions of Somalia. Influence of poor harvest and outbreaks of infectious diseases will have an effect. The UN urged to provide emergency assistance to those in need in Eastern Africa.

Director of the International Food Policy Research Institute warned that countries of this region within a package of short- and long-term measures should keep cross-border trade open. In his view, it is unreasonable to introduce export bans. Such restrictions can assist the improvement of food supply in the country, however, at the same time a negative impact on neighbouring countries, where the problem of famine can worsen, is not excluded. Aid agencies also call governments and influential political groups not to hinder a free movement of food supplies in the region.

Adviser of the humanitarian organisation Oxfam, R. Kelly does not doubt that there is food in this part of Africa. However, a proper movement of the relevant supplies is not provided which is partly caused by high transport expenses and remoteness of the affected areas. Simultaneously the impact of weak functioning markets is felt.

According to the UN, the problem of malnutrition in Eastern Africa is more acute than in other parts of the world. In some parts of Somalia half of the population suffers from it, in the south of Bakool and Lower Shabelle – 30%. According to Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit based in Kenya, this year only 15-20% of Somalia's needs for food grain will be covered by internal production (in usual circumstances this figure is higher – 40%; the other half is provided by crossborder trade in the region and commercial supplies, delivered by sea). Import is already carried out via Mogadishu port, and in this case transhipment of grain supplies increased in comparison to last year by 80%, and in comparison to the annual average figure for 2008-2010 – more than by 100%.

Access to food in some areas varies extensively. The impact of the differences in climatic conditions, overall situation in agriculture and influence of conflicts between rival groups is felt. Not uncommon has become the unwillingness of the latter to allow vehicles with food pass to neighbouring territories.

Experts who know the real situation in the region well, have informed Bridges' journalist that because of a poor infrastructure delivery of these supplies from areas with excessive grain production to areas with deficit is not always possible. High fuel prices as well as trade barriers in some countries create additional difficulties in transportation of food in East African region.

According to FAO experts, development of infrastructure and access to materials and components have quite a considerable significance for a long-term solution of the problem of famine in Eastern Africa. Attention is also drawn to the inadequate functioning of the market. If prices on certain goods in one village are twice as high as in another located on the same highway at some distance from the latter, it becomes clear that market mechanisms in this country work not in the best way.

As Bridges notes, population of Africa already in the nearest future more often will have to face extreme climatic phenomena (droughts, floods, tropical storms) linked to the

consequences of the global warming. Farms growing water-intensive crops and also those specialising in transhumance and pastoral stock-breeding will be among the most vulnerable producers.

Oxfam experts suggest practical steps aimed at diminishing the effects of the existence of trade barriers. R. Kelly recommends to provide cash grants to trade companies (to stimulate the supply) and carry out currency transfers to consumers which will allow them to buy food at local markets.

Governmental economists in several countries are studying the possibilities of regional trade integration (within the framework of customs and currency unions) in providing an improved interaction between farmers and the market. Some analysts, well acquainted with the specificity of this region believe that these processes should take place in parallel with implementation of measures of a deeper integration of remote areas into the economy of relevant countries and regions. Experts state that, first, it is important to pay attention to the degree of integration of national markets and to elimination of obstacles on the way to its strengthening.

Source text: Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest (Vol.15, N.28) (28 July, 2011)

Food Access Key as Horn of Africa Crisis Worsens, Say Agencies

84 /**The UN** has officially declared a famine in parts of Somalia,/ as **the food crisis** in the Horn
85 of Africa continues to worsen./ **Aid agencies** are warning that/ **allowing food to move freely**
86 **in the region** is key to preventing the humanitarian situation from deteriorating further./

87 /**Mark Bowden, the UN's Humanitarian Coordinator for Somalia**, cautioned that/ **inaction**
88 would mean that/ **famine** could spread to all eight regions of southern Somalia within two
89 months, due to poor harvests and infectious disease outbreaks./ **The UN** has called for
90 emergency assistance to help those in need./

91 /Meanwhile, **the head of the International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI)**
92 cautioned that/ **countries** need to keep international and cross-border trade open, as part of a
93 package of short and long term measures./

94 /“**Do not introduce export bans within the region**,”/ **warned** the body’s Director-General,
95 Shenggen Fan./ “**While such bans may help secure the domestic food supply**,/ **they** can also
96 lead to starvation in neighbouring countries,/ **which** will exacerbate the crisis,”/ **he** said in a
97 statement./

98 /**Aid agencies** are also arguing that/ **governments and other groups** must allow food to move
99 freely within the region so that/ hungry people can gain access to it./

100 /“**There** is food in the region,/ but **it’s not moving around**”/ **Ruth Kelly, Economic Policy**
101 **Advisor at the aid agency Oxfam**, told Bridges./ “**This** is partly because of high transport
102 costs and the sheer remoteness of the areas affected, but also because/ **some local markets** are
103 not working.”/

104 **Shortages abound in region; imports responding**

105 /The UN reported that/ malnutrition rates in the area are currently the highest in the world,
106 with peaks of 50 per cent in certain areas of southern Somalia./ In southern Bakool and
107 Lower Shabelle, acute malnutrition rates exceed 30 percent, with deaths of children under
108 five exceeding 6 per 10,000 per day in some areas./

109 /The Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit, based in Kenya, has said that/ only 15 to 20
110 percent of Somalia's domestic requirements are likely to be met by local cereal production
111 this year./ Normally, the figure would be closer to 40 percent, with regional cross border trade
112 and sea commercial imports supplying the rest./

113 /Commercial imports are already increasing in response to the deficit,/ the group said, with
114 imports of cereals through Mogadishu port reaching levels/ that were over 80 percent higher
115 than the previous year, and more than 100 percent higher than the 2008-10 average./

116 **Keep food moving, experts say**

117 /Access to food, as well as its availability, varies considerably from one part of the region to
118 another,/ food security experts explained./ Conflict, as well as different climatic and
119 agricultural conditions, are amongst the factors affecting whether/ hungry people can find
120 food to eat./

121 /Confusion over whether rebel groups are willing to allow aid agencies access to parts of
122 Somalia under its control is also expected to hamper efforts to ensure/ emergency assistance
123 reaches people in need./

124 /“Some pockets [of the region] are productive,”/ observed one expert./ “If you can move food
125 to where it's needed,/ you obviate a lot of the problems.”/

126 **Market access hampered by infrastructure, other problems**

127 /Experts familiar with the region told Bridges that/ a lack of physical infrastructure is a
128 serious barrier preventing food from moving from areas with food surpluses to those/ where
129 there are food deficits./ “You drive to the end of the road,/ then you get on a donkey,/ then
130 walk for a day -/ and then you get to where people are producing food,”/ said one source with
131 knowledge of the area./ High oil prices, along with trade barriers in some countries, also
132 exacerbate the difficulties of moving food around in the region./

133 /Improving infrastructure and access to inputs is critical to overcoming hunger in the long
134 term,/ said officials at the UN Food and Agriculture Organization./ Ensuring that traders can
135 get access to food to sell, and that poor consumers are able to afford to buy it, is part of the
136 solution./

137 /“Markets are not working in the region”,/ another source observed bluntly./ “When
138 something is twice the price of what it is down the road,/ you know/ something's wrong.”/

139 **Climate change posing additional risks**

140 /Experts familiar with the region are warning that/ governments urgently need to ensure/
141 people/ who live in arid areas and are dependent on often erratic rains/ are able to adapt
142 effectively to expected changes in the earth's climate./

143 /**At a global level**, the frequency of extreme weather events such as droughts, floods, and
144 tropical storms is expected to increase/ as **the levels of greenhouse gas in the atmosphere** rise
145 further in the years ahead./ **Average temperatures** are also due to increase in many areas:/
146 **farmers/ who** depend on rain-fed agriculture and traditional pastoralists/ are amongst those/
147 **who** are likely to be particularly badly affected./

148 /“**It**’s never going to be an area/ **that**’s massively fertile,”/ **said** one aid agency worker,
149 speaking in general terms of the Horn of Africa./ **However**, “**with climate change**, this is
150 going to get worse and worse.”/ **Governments** need to do more to make sure that/ **people** are
151 able to cope effectively with future challenges,/ **the source** added -/ including by providing
152 access to physical infrastructure such as reliable water sources, and access to properly
153 functioning markets./

154 **Regional integration, cash grants among options discussed**

155 /“**We** need a really practical response to these barriers to trade,”/ **Oxfam’s Ruth Kelly**
156 stressed./ “**One option** is cash grants to traders to boost supply and cash transfers to
157 consumers to allow them to buy the food/ **they** need on local markets.”/

158 /**Many governments** are currently exploring whether/ **regional trade integration - customs or**
159 **monetary unions** - may represent a way to better link agricultural producers with markets./
160 **However, some analysts familiar with the region** argued that/ **these processes** needed to
161 occur in parallel with efforts to better integrate remote areas with countries and regions./

162 /“**We** need to look first at how markets can be integrated within countries:/ **what are the key**
163 **constraints?”/ one expert** argued./

APPENDIX 6B. Case study 2.2 *Emergency Assistance to the Horn of Africa.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: Business World Journal (15 September, 2011)

Восточная Африка: Продовольственный кризис

- 1 /Как сообщает "Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest", в условиях обострения
/As reports Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest, in conditions exacerbation
- 2 продовольственного кризиса в Восточной Африке **ООН** официально
*food crisis-of in Eastern Africa **UN** officially*
- 3 **объявила** о голода в ряде районов Сомали./ **Агентства по оказанию помощи**
announced** about famine in row areas-of Somalia-of./ **Agencies of providing aid
- 4 **предупреждают**, что/ **ключевым направлением предотвращения**
warn**, that/ **key direction prevention-of
- 5 **гуманитарной катастрофы в регионе должно стать** обеспечение
***humanitarian disaster in region should become** provision*
- 6 беспрепятственной доставки в эту часть Африки продуктов питания./
unhindered delivery to this area Africa-of food products-of./
- 7 /**Координатор гуманитарной помощи для Сомали М. Боуден предупредил**,
*/Coordinator humanitarian aid-of for Somalia M. Bowden **warned**,*
- 8 что/ **бездействие приведет** в ближайшие два месяца к распространению
*that/ **inaction lead-will** in nearest two months to spread*
- 9 голода на все восемь южных районов Сомали./ **Скажется влияние низкого**
*famine-of on all eight southern area Somalia-of. /**Affect-will influence low***
- 10 **урожая и вспышки инфекционных заболеваний.**/ **ООН призвала** к
***harvest and outbreaks of infectious diseases.**/ **UN** **called** to*

harvest-of and outbreak infectious diseases-of./ UN **called** to

11 оказанию экстренной помощи остро нуждающимся жителям Восточной provision emergency aid-of acutely needy residents Eastern

12 Африки./ Africa-of./

13 /**Директор Международного института изучения продовольственной**
/Director International insitute study food

14 **политики предупредил**, что/ **странам данного региона** в рамках пакетов politics **warned**, that/ **countries this region-of** in frames packages-of

15 кратко- и долгосрочных мер **следует обеспечивать** открытость short- and long-term measures **should provide** openness

16 трансграничной торговли./ По его мнению, нецелесообразно **вводить** запреты crossborder trade./ By his opinion, impractical **introduce** bans

17 на экспорт./ **Такие ограничения могут содействовать** улучшению on export./ **Such limitations can assist** improvement

18 снабжения продуктами питания в стране,/ но одновременно **не исключается** supply products food-of in country,/ but simultaneously **not excluded**

19 **негативное влияние** на соседние государства,/ **проблема голода** в которых negative influence on neighbouring countries,/ **problem famine-of** in which

20 **может обостриться**./ **Агентства по оказанию помощи** также **призывают** can exacerbate./ **Agencies of providing aid** also **call**

21 правительства и влиятельные политические группировки не препятствовать governments and influential political groups not hinder

22 свободному движению продовольственных грузов в регионе./ free movement food supplies-of in region./

23 /**Советник гуманитарной организации "Oxfam" Р. Келли не сомневается**
/Adviser humanitarian organisation-of Oxfam R. Kelly not doubts

24 в наличии продовольствия в этой части Африки./ Однако **должного** in availability food-of in this part Africa-of./ However **proper**

25 **передвижения соответствующих грузов не обеспечивается**,/ что отчасти

movement relevant supplies-of *not provided*,/ which partly

26 **связано** с высокими транспортными расходами и удаленностью
connected with high transport expenses and remoteness

27 пострадавших районов./ Одновременно **сказывается и слабое**
affected areas-of./ Simultaneously *affects* and **weak**

28 **функционирование местных рынков./**
functioning local markets-of./

29 /По данным ООН, **проблема недоедания стоит** в Восточной Африке острее,
/By data UN, **problem malnutrition-of stands** in Eastern Africa sharper,

30 чем в других частях мира. /В некоторых районах Сомали от него **страдает**
than in other parts world-of./ In some areas Somalia-of from it **suffers**

31 **половина населения**,/ на юге Бакула и в Нижнем Шабеле - **30%**./ По данным
half population-of,/ in south Bakool and in Lower Shabelle – **30%**./ By data

32 базирующейся в Кении "Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit", в текущем
based in Kenya Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit, in current

33 году за счет внутреннего производства **будет покрыто** лишь **15-20%**
year at expense internal production-of **will covered** only **15-20%**

34 **потребностей Сомали в продовольственном зерне/** (в обычных условиях этот
needs Somalia-of in food grain/ (in usual conditions **this**

35 **показатель выше - 40%;/ оальная часть обеспечивается** благодаря
figure higher – 40%;/ remaining part provided owing

36 трансграничной торговле в регионе и коммерческим поставкам,
crossborder trade-to in region and commercial deliveries,

37 осуществляемым морским путем)./ **Импорт уже осуществляется**, в
38 implemented sea way)./ **Import** already **implemented**, in

39 частности, через порт Могадиши,/ причем в данном случае **перевалка**
particular, through port Mogadishu,/ and in this case **transhipment**

40 **зерновых грузов увеличилась** по сравнению с прошлым годом на 80%, а со
grain supplies-of increased in comparison with last year by 80%, and with

41 среднегодовым показателем за 2008-2010 гг. - более чем на 100%./
annual-average figure for 2008-2010 years. – more than on 100%./

42 /**Доступ к продовольствию** по отдельным районам значительно
/Access to food by separate areas considerably

43 **варьируется./ /Сказываются различия погодно-климатических условий,**
varies./ Affect differences weather-climatic conditions,

44 **общая ситуация в сельском хозяйстве, влияние конфликтов между**
overall situation in agriculture, influence conflicts-of between

45 **соперничающими группировками./ Нередким явлением *стало нежелание***
rival groups./ Not-uncommon phenomenon *became unwillingness*

46 **последних пропускать транспортные средства с продуктами питания на**
latter-of pass transport vehicles with products food-of on

47 **сопредельные территории./**
neighbouring territories./

48 /**Эксперты, хорошо знающие реальную обстановку в регионе, сообщили**
/Experts, well know real situation in region, informed

49 корреспонденту "Bridges", что/ из-за слабого развития инфраструктуры не
correspondent Bridges, that/ due to weak development infrastructure-of not

50 всегда **возможна доставка указанных грузов** из районов с избыточным
always **possible delivery specified supplies-of** from areas with excessive

51 производством зерна в районы, испытывающие его дефицит./ **Высокие цены**
production grain-of to areas, experiencing its deficit./ **High prices**

52 **на горючее, а также наличие торговых барьеров** в некоторых странах
on fuel, and also existence trade barriers-of in some countries

53 **создают** дополнительные трудности с перевозками продуктов питания в
create additional difficulties with transportations food products-of in

54 Восточноафриканском регионе./
East African region./

55 /**По мнению экспертов ФАО, развитие инфраструктуры и получение**

56 **доступа к материалам и комплектующим имеют** весьма существенное
access-of to materials and components have quite considerable

57 значение для решения проблемы голода в Восточной Африке в долгосрочной
significance for solving problem famine-of in Eastern Africa in long-term

58 перспективе./ **Обращается внимание** и на неадекватное функционирование
perspective./ **Drawn attention** and on inadequate functioning

59 рынка./ **Если цены на какой-либо товар** в одном населенном пункте в 2 раза
market-of./ If **prices on any goods** in one settled point in 2 times

60 выше, чем в другом, расположенному на той же трассе на некотором удалении
higher, than in other, located on that same highway on some distance

61 от первого,/ **становится ясно**, что/ **рыночные механизмы** в этой стране
from first,/ **becomes clear**, that/ **market mechanisms** in this country

62 **действуют** не самым лучшим образом./
act not most best way./

63 /Как отмечает "Bridges", **населению Африки** уже в недалеком будущем
/As notes Bridges, **population Africa-of** already in near future

64 **придется** все чаще сталкиваться с экстремальными погодно-климатическими
have-will more often face with extreme weather-climatic

65 явлениями (засухами, наводнениями, тропическими штормами), связанными с
phenomena (droughts, floods, tropical storms), connected with

66 последствиями глобального потепления./ Во многих районах континента
consequences global warming-of./ In many areas continent-of

67 **произойдет** повышение средней температуры./ **Фермерские хозяйства**,
happen-will rise average temperature-of./ **Farm economies**,

68 **выращивающие влаголюбивые культуры**, а также **специализирующиеся**
growing moisture-loving crops, and also **specialising**

69 **на отгонно-пастбищном животноводстве**, **окажутся** в числе наиболее
on transhumance-and-pastoral stock-breeding, **be-will** in number most

70 уязвимых продуцентов./
vulnerable producers./

71 /**Эксперты "Oxfam" предлагают** практические шаги, направленные на /**Experts Oxfam-of suggest** practical steps, directed on

72 смягчение последствий наличия барьеров в торговле./ **Р. Келли рекомендует** softening consequences-of existence-of barriers-of in trade./ **R. Kelly recommends**

73 **предоставлять** гранты в виде наличных средств торговым компаниям (для **provide** grants in form cash resources trade companies-to (for

74 стимулирования предложения) и **осуществлять** денежные трансферты stimulating supply-of) and **exercise** cash transfers

75 потребителям,/ **которые позволяют** им приобретать продукты питания на consumers-to,/ **which allow-will** them buy food products on

76 местных рынках./ local markets./

77 /**Правительственные экономисты ряда стран изучают** возможности /**Governmental economists row countries-of study** possibilities

78 региональной торговой интеграции (в рамках таможенных или валютных regional trade integration-of (in frames customs or currency

79 союзов) в деле обеспечения лучшего взаимодействия между unions) in case providing-of best interaction between

80 сельхозпроизводителями и рынком./ **Некоторые аналитики, хорошо** farmers and market./ **Some analysts, well**

81 **знакомые со спецификой данного региона, считают**, что/ **эти процессы** acquainted with specificity this region-of, **believe**, that/ **these processes**

82 **должны происходить** параллельно с реализацией мер по более глубокой **should occur** parallel-ly with implementation measures-of of more deep

83 интеграции отдаленных районов в экономику соответствующих стран и integration remote areas in economy relevant countries-of and

84 регионов./ **Эксперты утверждают**, что/ в первую очередь **необходимо** regions-of./ **Experts state**, that/ in first turn **necessary**

85 **обращать внимание** на степень интегрированности национальных рынков, **pay attention** on level integration-of national markets-of,

86 на устранение препятствий на пути ее укрепления./
on elimination obstacles on way its strengthening./

Literally:

As 'Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest' reports in the conditions of the deteriorating food crisis in Eastern Africa the UN has officially declared famine in parts of Somalia. Aid agencies warn that a key route to preventing a humanitarian disaster in the region should be provision of unhindered delivery of food into this part of Africa.

Humanitarian coordinator for Somalia M. Bowden warned that inaction will lead in the next two months to the spread of famine to all eight southern regions of Somalia. Influence of poor harvest and outbreaks of infectious diseases will have an effect. The UN urged to provide emergency assistance to those in need in Eastern Africa.

Director of the International Food Policy Research Institute warned that countries of this region within a package of short- and long-term measures should keep cross-border trade open. In his view, it is unreasonable to introduce export bans. Such restrictions can assist the improvement of food supply in the country, however, at the same time a negative impact on neighbouring countries, where the problem of famine can worsen, is not excluded. Aid agencies also call governments and influential political groups not to hinder a free movement of food supplies in the region.

Adviser of the humanitarian organisation Oxfam, R. Kelly does not doubt that there is food in this part of Africa. However, a proper movement of the relevant supplies is not provided which is partly caused by high transport expenses and remoteness of the affected areas. Simultaneously the impact of weak functioning markets is felt.

According to the UN, the problem of malnutrition in Eastern Africa is more acute than in other parts of the world. In some parts of Somalia half of the population suffers from it, in the south of Bakool and Lower Shabelle – 30%. According to Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit based in Kenya, this year only 15-20% of Somalia's needs for food grain will be covered by internal production (in usual circumstances this figure is higher – 40%; the other half is provided by crossborder trade in the region and commercial supplies, delivered by sea). Import is already carried out via Mogadishu port, and in this case transhipment of grain supplies increased in comparison to last year by 80%, and in comparison to the annual average figure for 2008-2010 – more than by 100%.

Access to food in some areas varies extensively. The impact of the differences in climatic conditions, overall situation in agriculture and influence of conflicts between rival groups is felt. Not uncommon has become the unwillingness of the latter to allow vehicles with food pass to neighbouring territories.

Experts who know the real situation in the region well, have informed Bridges' journalist that because of a poor infrastructure delivery of these supplies from areas with excessive grain production to areas with deficit is not always possible. High fuel prices as well as trade barriers in some countries create additional difficulties in transportation of food in East African region.

According to FAO experts, development of infrastructure and access to materials and components have quite a considerable significance for a long-term solution of the problem

of famine in Eastern Africa. Attention is also drawn to the inadequate functioning of the market. If prices on certain goods in one village are twice as high as in another located on the same highway at some distance from the latter, it becomes clear that market mechanisms in this country work not in the best way.

As Bridges notes, population of Africa already in the nearest future more often will have to face extreme climatic phenomena (droughts, floods, tropical storms) linked to the consequences of the global warming. Farms growing water-intensive crops and also those specialising in transhumance and pastoral stock-breeding will be among the most vulnerable producers.

Oxfam experts suggest practical steps aimed at diminishing the effects of the existence of trade barriers. R. Kelly recommends to provide cash grants to trade companies (to stimulate the supply) and carry out currency transfers to consumers which will allow them to buy food at local markets.

Governmental economists in several countries are studying the possibilities of regional trade integration (within the framework of customs and currency unions) in providing an improved interaction between farmers and the market. Some analysts, well acquainted with the specificity of this region believe that these processes should take place in parallel with implementation of measures of a deeper integration of remote areas into the economy of relevant countries and regions. Experts state that, first, it is important to pay attention to the degree of integration of national markets and to elimination of obstacles on the way to its strengthening.

Source text: Bridges Weekly Trade News Digest (Vol.15, N.28) (28 July, 2011)

Food Access Key as Horn of Africa Crisis Worsens, Say Agencies

87 /The UN **has** officially **declared** a famine in parts of Somalia,/ as **the food crisis** in the Horn
88 of Africa **continues to worsen**./ **Aid agencies are warning** that/ **allowing food to move**
89 **freely in the region is** key to preventing the humanitarian situation from deteriorating
90 further./

91 /**Mark Bowden, the UN's Humanitarian Coordinator for Somalia, cautioned** that/
92 **inaction would mean** that/ **famine could spread** to all eight regions of southern Somalia
93 within two months, due to poor harvests and infectious disease outbreaks./ **The UN has**
94 **called** for emergency assistance to help those in need./

95 /Meanwhile, **the head of the International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI)**
96 **cautioned** that/ **countries need to keep** international and cross-border trade open, as part of a
97 package of short and long term measures./

98 /“**Do not introduce** export bans within the region,”/ **warned the body's Director-General,**
99 **Shenggen Fan**./ “**While such bans may help secure** the domestic food supply,/ **they can also**
100 **lead** to starvation in neighbouring countries,/ **which will exacerbate** the crisis,”/ **he said** in a
101 statement./

102 /Aid agencies *are* also *arguing* that/ governments and other groups *must allow* food to
103 move freely within the region so that/ hungry people *can gain* access to it./

104 /“There *is* food in the region,/ but it’s *not moving* around”/ Ruth Kelly, Economic Policy
105 Advisor at the aid agency Oxfam, *told* Bridges./ “This *is* partly because of high transport
106 costs and the sheer remoteness of the areas affected, but also because/ some local markets
107 *are not working.*”/

108 **Shortages abound in region; imports responding**

109 /The UN *reported* that/ malnutrition rates in the area *are* currently the highest in the world,
110 with peaks of 50 per cent in certain areas of southern Somalia./ In southern Bakool and Lower
111 Shabelle, acute malnutrition rates *exceed* 30 percent, with deaths of children under five
112 exceeding 6 per 10,000 per day in some areas./

113 /The Food Security and Nutrition Analysis unit, based in Kenya, *has said* that/ only 15 to
114 20 percent of Somalia’s domestic requirements *are likely to be met* by local cereal
115 production this year./ Normally, the figure *would be* closer to 40 percent, with regional cross
116 border trade and sea commercial imports supplying the rest./

117 /Commercial imports *are* already *increasing* in response to the deficit,/ the group *said*, with
118 imports of cereals through Mogadishu port reaching levels/ that *were* over 80 percent higher
119 than the previous year, and more than 100 percent higher than the 2008-10 average./

120 **Keep food moving, experts say**

121 /Access to food, as well as its availability, *varies* considerably from one part of the region to
122 another,/ food security experts *explained.*/ Conflict, as well as different climatic and
123 agricultural conditions, *are* amongst the factors affecting whether/ hungry people *can find*
124 food to eat./

125 /Confusion over whether rebel groups are willing to allow aid agencies access to parts of
126 Somalia under its control *is* also expected to hamper efforts to ensure/ emergency assistance
127 reaches people in need./

128 /“Some pockets [of the region] *are* productive,”/ observed one expert./ “If you *can move*
129 food to where it’s needed,/ you *obviate* a lot of the problems.”/

130 **Market access hampered by infrastructure, other problems**

131 /Experts familiar with the region *told* Bridges that/ a lack of physical infrastructure *is* a
132 serious barrier preventing food from moving from areas with food surpluses to those/ where
133 there *are food deficits.*/ “You *drive* to the end of the road,/ then you *get* on a donkey,/ then
134 *walk* for a day -/ and then you *get* to where people are producing food,”/ said one source with
135 knowledge of the area./ High oil prices, along with trade barriers in some countries, also
136 exacerbate the difficulties of moving food around in the region./

137 /Improving infrastructure and access to inputs *is* critical to overcoming hunger in the long
138 term,/ said officials at the UN Food and Agriculture Organization./ Ensuring that traders
139 can get access to food to sell, and that poor consumers are able to afford to buy it, *is* part
140 of the solution./

141 /“**Markets are not working** in the region”,/ **another source observed** bluntly./ “When
142 **something is** twice the price of what it is down the road,/ **you know/ something’s wrong.”/**

143 **Climate change posing additional risks**

144 /**Experts familiar with the region are warning** that/ **governments urgently need to ensure/**
145 **people/ who live** in arid areas and are dependent on often erratic rains/ **are able to adapt**
146 effectively to expected changes in the earth’s climate./

147 /At a global level, **the frequency of extreme weather events such as droughts, floods, and**
148 **tropical storms is expected to increase/** as the levels of greenhouse gas in the atmosphere
149 **rise** further in the years ahead./ **Average temperatures are** also **due to increase** in many
150 **areas:/ farmers/ who depend** on rain-fed agriculture and traditional pastoralists/ **are** amongst
151 **those/ who are likely to be** particularly badly **affected./**

152 /“**It’s never going to be** an area/ **that’s** massively fertile,”/ **said one aid agency worker**,
153 speaking in general terms of the Horn of Africa./ However, “with climate change, **this is**
154 **going to get** worse and worse.”/ **Governments need to do** more to make sure that/ **people are**
155 **able to cope** effectively with future challenges,/ **the source added** -/ including by providing
156 access to physical infrastructure such as reliable water sources, and access to properly
157 functioning markets./

158 **Regional integration, cash grants among options discussed**

159 /“**We need** a really practical response to these barriers to trade,”/ **Oxfam’s Ruth Kelly**
160 **stressed.**/ “**One option is** cash grants to traders to boost supply and cash transfers to
161 consumers to allow them to buy the food/ they need on local markets.”/

162 /**Many governments are** currently **exploring** whether/ **regional trade integration - customs**
163 **or monetary unions - may represent** a way to better link agricultural producers with
164 markets./ However, **some analysts familiar with the region argued** that/ **these processes**
165 **needed to occur** in parallel with efforts to better integrate remote areas with countries and
166 regions./

167 /“**We need to look** first at how markets can be integrated within countries:/ **what are** the key
168 constraints?”/ **one expert argued.**/

APPENDIX 7A. Case study 2.3 *Turkish Airlines Starts Flying to Somalia.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: Izvestia.ru (6 March, 2012)

В Сомали пришел крупный авиаперевозчик впервые за 20 лет гражданской войны

Первый коммерческий рейс Turkish Airlines с турецким замминистра на борту встретил президент Сомали и представители ООН

- 1 /Впервые за 20 лет борт крупной коммерческой авиакомпании приземлился в /First in 20 years aircraft large commercial aircompany-of landed in
- 2 аэропорту Могадиши, столицы раздираемого войной Сомали./ На прибытием в airport Mogadishu, capital torn-ing war-by Somalia./ On arrived in
- 3 Могадишио самолете Turkish Airlines находился заместитель премьер-министра Mogadishu plane Turkish Airlines was deputy Prime Minister
- 4 Турции Bekir Bozdag,/ которого встретил президент Сомали Шейх Шариф Шейх Turkey-of Bekir Bozdag,/ which met president Somalia-of Sheikh Sharif Sheikh
- 5 Ахмед./ Как передает BBC, в свете последних терактов накануне прилета важного Ahmed./ As reports BBC, in light last-of terror-attacks eve-on arrival-of important
- 6 борта сомалийские силовики усилили меры безопасности в самом аэропорту./ Также aircraft Somalian forces strengthened measures security-of in actual airport./ Also
- 7 на основных подъездах к воздушному порту появились дополнительные блокпосты./ on main entryways to air port appeared additional roadblocks./

8 /Самолет был встречен большой правительственной делегацией, а также /Plane was met by governmental delegation, and also

9 представителями ООН и послами других государств./
representatives-by UN-of and ambassadors other states-of./

10 /**В Сомали** с 1991 года отсутствует центральное правительство./ С одной стороны, в /In Somalia from 1991 absent central government./ From one side, in

11 этом африканском государстве имеется светское правительство,/ с другой —
this African state is secular government,/ from other -

12 подразделение «Аль-Каиды», боевая группировка «Аль-Шабааб», исповедующая
subdivision 'al-Qaeda'-of, military group 'al-Shabaab', professing

13 радикализированный вариант законов шариата./ Последняя де-факто контролирует
radicalised version laws Sharia-of./ Latter de facto controls

14 юг страны./
south country-of./

Literally:

To Somalia a major aircraft arrived for the first time in 20 years of civil war

First commercial airline Turkish Airlines with a Turkish Deputy Prime Minister on board was met by the Somali President and UN representatives

For the first time in 20 years an aircraft of a major commercial airline landed in Mogadishu airport, the capital of the war-torn Somalia. On the Turkish Airlines aircraft which arrived to Mogadishu there was a Turkish Deputy Prime Minister Bekir Bozdag who was met by the Somali President Sheikh Sharif Sheikh Ahmed.

As BBC reports, in the light of recent terror attacks the day before the arrival of the important flight the Somali forces increased security measures at the airport. Also on the main roads leading to the airport additional roadblocks appeared.

The plane was met by a large government delegation and also UN representatives and ambassadors of other countries.

In Somalia since 1991 there is no central government. On the one hand, in this African state there is secular government, on the other – a subdivision of al Qaeda, militant group al Shabaab professing a radicalised version of the Sharia law.

Source text: BBC News (6 March, 2012)

Somalia: Turkish Airlines begins flights to Mogadishu

The first major commercial airline in more than 20 years has landed at Mogadishu airport in war-torn Somalia.

15 /**Turkish Airlines** says/ **it** is the start of a regular service to the Somali capital, the first by an
16 international carrier from outside East Africa./

17 /**Turkey's Deputy Prime Minister Bekir Bosdag** was on board the flight,/ **which** was
18 welcomed by the Somali president./

19 /**The twice-weekly flights** should make travel easier for Somali businessmen and members of
20 the large diaspora./

21 /**Somalia** has not had a functioning central government for more than two decades and has
22 been riven by factional fighting./

23 /**Islamist militants** were pushed out of the capital by Africa Union and government forces last
24 August -/ **although they** have continued to stage attacks in the city./

25 **Singing and dancing**

26 /**The BBC's Mohamed Dhere in Mogadishu** says/ **security** was tight/ and **the main roads**
27 **leading to the airport** were blocked off ahead of the flight./

28 /**The plane** was greeted by a large Somali government delegation, including President Sheikh
29 Sharif Sheikh Ahmed, as well as UN officials and ambassadors./

30 /"**Today** is a big day for Somalia,"/ **Somali government spokesperson, Abdisalam Mohamud**,
31 said.

32 /**The flight** follows a visit to Mogadishu last year by the Turkish Prime Minister Recep
33 Tayyip Erdogan -/ **who** said/ **he** wanted to challenge the idea that/ the Somali capital was a
34 no-go area./

35 /**The start of the service** was announced by Turkey's foreign minister during last month's
36 international conference on Somalia in London hosted by the UK government./

37 /**World leaders** have pledged to boost support for measures to fight piracy, terrorism and
38 political stability in Somalia by substantially increasing international funding for the African
39 Union military operation in the country and working more closely together./

40 /**Our reporter** says/ **a group of women** were singing and dancing as the plane touched down
41 on the tarmac./

42 /"**It** is a very positive step, and one of many steps that/ **we** are now seeing in the last six or so
43 months./ **We** are quite happy to see that/ normalcy is returning,"/ **a Mogadishu resident** told
44 the BBC./

45 /**Turkish Airlines** intends to operate a twice-weekly passenger service from Istanbul via
46 Sudan's capital, Khartoum./

47 /"**We** will connect the Somali people to the rest of the world./ **We** hope that/ **in the near**
48 **future** Somalia will become a stable place, a very normal country,"/ **an official from Turkish**
49 **Airlines, Faruk Sazar**, said after landing./

50 /**Somali Foreign Minister Abdullahi Haji** told the BBC's Somali Service/ **he** felt/ **the service**
51 would improve links between the international community and Somalia./

52 /"**It** will also make it easier for the Somali diaspora to come home./ **It** will bring us closer
53 together,"/ **he** said./

54 /"**I** believe/ **it** will also encourage peace and development."/

55 /**Several private East African airlines, including Kenya-based African Express**, now fly into
56 Somalia from neighbouring countries -/ **but for many years** Mogadishu's international airport
57 was out of action, controlled by rival militia groups./

58 /**Al-Shabab, the Islamist group/ which** joined al-Qaeda last month,/ is under attack on several
59 fronts, with troops from Kenya and Ethiopia also gaining ground recently./

60 /**But the group** still controls much of southern and central Somalia - and says/ it will wage a
61 guerrilla war against the government./

APPENDIX 7B. Case study 2.3 *Turkish Airlines Starts Flying to Somalia.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: Izvestia.ru (6 March, 2012)

В Сомали пришел крупный авиаперевозчик впервые за 20 лет гражданской войны

Первый коммерческий рейс Turkish Airlines с турецким замминистра на борту встретил президент Сомали и представители ООН

- 1 /Впервые за 20 лет **борт крупной коммерческой авиакомпании приземлился** в /First in 20 years **aircraft large commercial aircompany-of landed** in
- 2 аэропорту Могадиши, столицы раздиаемого войной Сомали./ На прибывшем в airport Mogadishu, capital torn-ing war-by Somalia./ On arrived in
- 3 Могадиши самолете Turkish Airlines **находился** заместитель премьер-министра Mogadishu plane Turkish Airlines **was** deputy Prime Minister
- 4 **Турции Бекир Боздаг**,/ которого **встретил** президент Сомали Шейх Шариф Шейх Turkey-of Bekir Bozdag,/ which **met** president Somalia-of Sheikh Sharif Sheikh
- 5 **Ахмед**./ Как передает BBC, в свете последних терактов накануне прилета важного Ahmed./ As reports BBC, in light last-of terror-attacks eve-on arrival-of important
- 6 борта **сомалийские силовики усилили** меры безопасности в самом аэропорту./ Также aircraft **Somalian forces strengthened** measures security-of in actual airport./ Also
- 7 на основных подъездах к воздушному порту **появились дополнительные блокпосты**./ on main entryways to air port **appeared additional roadblocks.**/

8 /Самолет был встречен большой правительственный делегацией, а также
/Plane was met big-by governmental delegation, and also

9 представителями ООН и послами других государств./
representatives-by UN-of and ambassadors other states-of./

10 /В Сомали с 1991 года **отсутствует центральное правительство.**/ С одной стороны,
11 в

/In Somalia from 1991 **absent central government.**/ From one side, in

12 этом африканском государстве **имеется светское правительство,** с другой —
this African state **is secular government,** from other -

13 **подразделение «Аль-Каиды», боевая группировка «Аль-Шабааб»,** исповедующая
subdivision 'al-Qaeda'-of, military group 'al-Shabaab', professing

14 радикализированный вариант законов шариата./ **Последняя** де-факто
radicalised version laws Sharia-of./ **Latter** de facto

15 **контролируют юг**
controls south

16 страны./
country-of./

Literally:

To Somalia a major aircraft arrived for the first time in 20 years of civil war

**First commerical airline Turkish Airlines with a Turkish Deputy Prime Minister on
board was met by the Somali President and UN representatives**

For the first time in 20 years an aircraft of a major commercial airline landed in Mogadishu airport, the capital of the war-torn Somalia. On the Turkish Airlines aircraft which arrived to Mogadishu there was a Turkish Deputy Prime Minister Bekir Bozdag who was met by the Somali President Sheikh Sharif Sheikh Ahmed.

As BBC reports, in the light of recent terror attacks the day before the arrival of the important flight the Somali forces increased security measures at the airport. Also on the main roads leading to the airport additional roadblocks appeared.

The plane was met by a large government delegation and also UN representatives and ambassadors of other countries.

In Somalia since 1991 there is no central government. On the one hand, in this African state there is secular government, on the other – a subdivision of al Qaeda, militant group al Shabaab professing a radicalised version of the Sharia law.

Source text: BBC News (6 March, 2012)

Somalia: Turkish Airlines begins flights to Mogadishu

The first major commercial airline in more than 20 years has landed at Mogadishu airport in war-torn Somalia.

17 /Turkish Airlines *says*/ it *is* the start of a regular service to the Somali capital, the first by an
18 international carrier from outside East Africa./

19 /Turkey's Deputy Prime Minister Bekir Bosdag *was* on board the flight,/ **which was welcomed** by the Somali president./

21 /The twice-weekly flights **should make** travel easier for Somali businessmen and members of
22 the large diaspora./

23 /Somalia **has not had** a functioning central government for more than two decades and **has been riven** by factional fighting./

25 /Islamist militants **were pushed out** of the capital by Africa Union and government forces
26 last August -/ although **they have continued to stage** attacks in the city./

27 **Singing and dancing**

28 /The BBC's Mohamed Dhore in Mogadishu *says*/ **security was** tight/ and **the main roads leading to the airport were blocked off** ahead of the flight./

30 /The plane **was greeted** by a large Somali government delegation, including President Sheikh
31 Sharif Sheikh Ahmed, as well as UN officials and ambassadors./

32 /"Today *is* a big day for Somalia,"/ **Somali government spokesperson, Abdisalam Mohamud, said.**

34 /The flight **follows** a visit to Mogadishu last year by the Turkish Prime Minister Recep
35 Tayyip Erdogan -/ **who said/ he wanted to challenge** the idea that/ **the Somali capital was** a
36 no-go area./

37 /The start of the service **was announced** by Turkey's foreign minister during last month's
38 international conference on Somalia in London hosted by the UK government./

39 /World leaders **have pledged to boost** support for measures to fight piracy, terrorism and
40 political stability in Somalia by substantially increasing international funding for the African
41 Union military operation in the country and working more closely together./

42 /Our reporter says/ a group of women *were singing and dancing* as the plane touched
43 down on the tarmac./

44 /"It is a very positive step, and one of many steps that/ we *are* now *seeing* in the last six or so
45 months./ We *are* quite *happy to see* that/ *normalcy is returning*,"/ a Mogadishu resident
46 *told* the BBC./

47 /Turkish Airlines *intends to operate* a twice-weekly passenger service from Istanbul via
48 Sudan's capital, Khartoum./

49 /"We *will connect* the Somali people to the rest of the world./ We *hope* that/ in the near future
50 Somalia *will become* a stable place, a very normal country,"/ **an official from Turkish**
51 **Airlines, Faruk Sazar, said** after landing./

52 /Somali Foreign Minister Abdullahi Haji *told* the BBC's Somali Service/ *he felt*/ the
53 service *would improve* links between the international community and Somalia./

54 /"It *will* also *make* it easier for the Somali diaspora to come home./ It *will bring* us closer
55 together,"/ *he said*./

56 /"I *believe*/ *it will* also *encourage* peace and development."/

57 /Several private East African airlines, including Kenya-based African Express, now *fly*
58 into Somalia from neighbouring countries -/ but for many years **Mogadishu's international**
59 **airport was** out of action, controlled by rival militia groups./

60 /Al-Shabab, the Islamist group/ *which joined* al-Qaeda last month,/ *is* under attack on several
61 fronts, with troops from Kenya and Ethiopia also gaining ground recently./

62 /But the group still *controls* much of southern and central Somalia - and *says*/ *it will wage* a
63 guerrilla war against the government./

APPENDIX 8A. Case study 3.1 *The U.S. Military Campaign in Afghanistan.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: USA Today (22 July, 2010)

Эффективность тактики США в Афганистане вызывает сомнения - USA Today

- 1 /По данным американской газеты USA Today, афганцы недовольны тем, что/ /By data American newspaper-of USA Today Afghans unhappy by that/
- 2 Америка, обещавшая помочь им повысить уровень жизни и сокрушить остатки America promised-ing help them increase level life-of and crush remnants
- 3 исламистского режима, так этого и не добилась, а вместо мира и развития Islamist regime-of so this and not achieved and instead peace-of and development-of
- 4 принесла в Афганистан только разрушения и войну./ brought to Afghanistan only destructions and war/
- 5 **МОСКВА, 22 июл - РИА Новости. /Тактика США при проведении**
Moscow 22 July – RIA Novosti/ Tactics USA during undertaking
- 6 контртеррористической операции в Афганистане вызывает сомнения как у counter-terrorism operation-of in Afghanistan evokes doubts as in
- 7 американцев, обеспокоенных большими потерями, так и у афганских жителей, Americans concerned big losses-with so and in Afghan residents
- 8 уставших от невыполненных обещаний,/ пишет в четверг американская газета tired of unrealised promises/ writes on Thursday American newspaper
- 9 USA Today./
USA Today/
- 10 /Афганцы недовольны тем, что/ Америка, обещавшая помочь им повысить /Afghans unhappy by that/ America promised-ing help them increase
- 11 уровень жизни и сокрушить остатки исламистского режима, так этого и не level life-of and crush remnants Islamist regime-of so this and not
- 12 добилась, а вместо мира и развития принесла в Афганистан только разрушения achieved and instead peace-of and development-of brought to Afghanistan only destructions
- 13 и войну,/ пишет издание./ Общественность Соединенных Штатов

and war/ writes publication/ Public USA-of

14 озабочена как растущими потерями войск коалиции/ (в июле их число было concerned as growing losses forces coalition-of/ in July their number was

15 рекордным - 102 человека),/ так и активизацией талибов, а также вопросом,/ record – 102 persons/ so and activation Talibs-of and also question

16 сможет ли переломить ситуацию грядущее увеличение группировки на 30 can whether break situation forthcoming increase group by 30

17 тысяч человек./ thousands persons-of/

18 /Основная надежда возлагается на нового командующего НАТО в /Main hope laid on new commander NATO in

19 Афганистане генерала Дэвида Петреуса,/ при котором произошел резкий спад Afghanistan General David Petraeus/ at which happened sharp fall

20 активности иракских боевиков./ Вопрос в том, сможет ли он сделать в activity Iraqi militants-of/ Question in that can whether he do in

21 Афганистане то, что ему удалось в Ираке./ Afghanistan that which he managed in Iraq/

22 /Как отмечает газета, на слушаниях во время утверждения в должности /As notes newspaper on next during time confirmation in post

23 Петреуса сенаторы обозначили несколько препятствий, мешающих достижению Petraeus-of senators identified several obstacles hindering achievement

24 успеха./ Среди них - усиливающийся Талибан,/ который действует в стране, success-of/ Among them – increasing Taliban/ which acts in country

25 намного более обширной, чем Ирак, получая при этом помочь от much more vast than Iraq receiving by this help from

26 террористических группировок Пакистана;/ коррупция и кумовство в terrorist groups Pakistan-of/ corruption and cronyism in

27 пользующемся американской поддержкой правительстве президента Хамида using American support government president Hamid

28 Карзая,/ который "обхаживает" полевых командиров и некоторых лидеров Karzai-of/ which courts field commanders and some leaders

29 Талибана на мирных переговорах./ Taliban-of at peace talks/

30 /Кроме того, по мнению сенаторов, афганцы могут оказаться не готовы взять /Besides that by opinion senators-of Afghans can appear not ready take

31 на себя обеспечение собственной безопасности,/ когда американские войска on themselves provision own security-of/ when American forces

32 уйдут в 2011 году из Афганистана в соответствии с распоряжением президента

leave in 2011 from Afghanistan in accordance with decree president

33 Барака Обамы./
Barack Obama-of/

34 */Среди факторов, мешающих достижению успеха, были названы и жесткие*
/Among factors hindering achievement success-of were named and rigid

35 правила применения вооружённых сил,/ *которые* мешают американским
rules application-of armed forces-of/ *which* hinder American

36 войскам максимально задействовать свои средства против врага в ситуациях,/
troops maximally use own resources against enemy in situations/

37 *когда* может быть нанесен ущерб гражданскому населению./
when can be done damage civil population-to/

38 */Как отмечает издание*, на заседании в сенате Петреус не сказал,/ *сообщается*
/As notes publication at meeting in senate Petraeus not said/ *intends*

39 *ли* он вносить изменения в план ведения войны./ *Он* лишь предупредил, что/
whether he bring changes in plan leading war-of/ *He* only warned that/

40 *война в Афганистане* будет трудной, в определенном смысле труднее, чем в
war in Afghanistan be-will difficult in defined sense more-difficult than in

41 Ираке./
Iraq/

42 */При этом авторы статьи* указывают, что/ *перед своей отставкой за*
/With this authors article-of point that/ *before his dismissal for*

43 *критические высказывания в адрес представителей Белого дома* генерал
critical statements in address representatives-of White House-of General

44 Стэнли Маккристал проводил в жизнь ту же самую контрпартизанскую
Stanley McChrystal carried into life that same counterinsurgency

45 стратегию,/ *которую* Петреус успешно использовал в Ираке./
strategy/ *which* Petraeus successfully used in Iraq/

46 */В Ираке*, напоминает газета, президент Джордж Буш отдал приказ увеличить
/In Iraq reminds newspaper President George Bush gave order increase

47 численность группировки, чтобы остановить насилие и дать местным властям
number group to stop violence and give local authorities

48 возможность взять страну под свой контроль./ *Краеугольным камнем этой*
chance take country under own control/ *Cornerstone stone this*

49 *стратегии* стали созданные при содействии США "советы пробуждения",
strategy-of became created with assistance USA 'councils awakening-of'

50 состоящие из суннитских лидеров, объединившихся в борьбе против "Аль-

consisting of Sunni leaders united in fight against 'Al-Qaida'./

51 Каиды"./

52 */Издание отмечает, что/ в Афганистане* Маккристал содействовал укреплению /*Publication notes* that in Afghanistan McChrystal assisted strengthening

53 советов лидеров пуштунских племен, чтобы обеспечить поддержку councils leaders-of Pashtun tribes to provide support

54 правительству Карзая и отход населения от Талибана./ *Представители сил* government Karzai-of and withdrawal population from Taliban/ *Representatives forces-of*

55 *коалиции на юге Афганистана* участвовали в еженедельных заседаниях таких *coalition in south Afghanistan-of* participated in weekly meetings such

56 советов на протяжении нескольких лет, пытаясь решать те или иные вопросы и councils-of during several years-of trying solve those or other questions and

57 убеждая старейшин помогать в поиске боевиков./ persuading elders help in search militants-of/

58 */Однако бывший генерал-лейтенант афганской армии Абдул Хади (Abdul Hadi)* называет эти советы фальшивками и утверждает, что/ *старейшины Hadi* names these councils fake and states that/ *elders*

59 никогда не давали согласия на борьбу с талибами,/ *потому что они* не знают,/ never not gave-ing consent on fight with Talibs/ because that *they* not know/

60 *кто* сделает их жизнь хуже - исламисты или Карзай./ *who* make-will their life worse – Islamists or Karzai/

62 */Сравнивая опыт иракской и афганской кампаний*, газета приводит пример /*Comparing experiences Iraq and Afghan campaigns* newspaper provides example

63 такой борьбы с талибами, как создание групп самообороны./ *В Ираке* such fight with Talibs as creation groups-of self-defense-of/ *In Iraq*

64 отдалившимся от "Аль-Каиды" племенные лидеры сформировали и вооружили alienated from 'Al-Qaeda' tribe leaders formed and armed

65 силы безопасности,/ *которые* вступили в союз с американскими войсками./ forces security-of/ *which* entered in union with American forces/

66 *Американские и иракские представители* утвердили кандидатуры *American and Iraqi representatives* confirmed candidacies

67 новобранцев этих формирований,/ *и они* выгнали террористов "Аль-Каиды" из recruits-of these formations-of/ *and they* expelled terrorists 'Al-Qaeda'of from

68 районов своего проживания, одновременно передавая intelligence areas their residency-of simultaneously passing data

69 американскому и иракскому военному командованию./ **"Силы пробуждения**
American and Iraqi military command-to/ **'Forces awakening-of**

70 **Анбара"** помогли переломить ход иракской войны./
Anbar-of helped break course Iraq war-of/

71 **/В прошлую среду** Карзай утвердил план Петреуса о создании сил местной
/Last Wednesday Karzai approved Petraeus-of plan about creation forces local

72 полиции численностью 10 тысяч человек./ **Такое участие местного населения**
police-of numbering 10 thousand persons/ **Such participation local population-of**

73 в самообороне уже имеет место в Мардже./
in self-defense already has place in Marjah/

74 **/Создание эффективно действующих сил полиции и армии** - такова конечная
/Creation effectively acting forces police and army-of – such final

75 цель в стратегии американских войск./
goal in strategy American forces-of/

76 **/Как считают авторы статьи**, похоже, что/ **президент США Обама** смягчил
/As consider authors article-of seems that/ **president USA-of Obama** softened

77 свою позицию в вопросе сроков вывода войск из Афганистана,/ **который**
own position in question deadlines withdrawal force-of from Afghanistan/ **which**

78 должен начаться в июле 2011 года./
should start in July 2011 year-of/

79 **/Многие афганцы** уверены:/ **талибы** дождутся ухода американцев, а затем
/Many Afghans certain/ **Talibs** wait-will withdrawal Americans-of and then

80 начнут мощное наступление./
start-will powerful offensive/

81 **/Недавно** Обама подчеркнул в своем выступлении, что/ **темпы вывода войск**
/Recently Obama underlined in his speech that/ **pace-s withdrawal forces-of**

82 будут определяться обстановкой в Афганистане./ **Вице-президент Байден**
will determined environment-by in Afghanistan/ **Vice-president Biden**

83 заявил в воскресенье, что/ **выход** может начаться с возвращения домой "пары
declared on Sunday that/ **withdrawal** can start with return home 'couple

84 тысяч" военнослужащих./
thousands' military/

85 **/Газета** также приводит слова Петреуса,/ **который**, комментируя сроки вывода
/Newspaper also provides words Petraeus-of/ **which** commenting deadlines withdrawal-of

86 войск, сказал, что/ речь идет "не о дате, когда мы поспешно выведем свои
forces said that/ speech goes 'not about date when we quickly withdraw own

87 войска, выключим свет и закроем за собой дверь"./
forces turn-off light and close behind us door' /

88 /Что касается жалоб военнослужащих США на то, что/ правила
/What concerns complaints military-of USA-of on that which/ rules

89 применения оружия не дают им возможности более активно охотиться на
application-of weapons-of not give them opportunity more actively hunt for

90 боевиков,/ Петреус заявил на слушаниях в сенате, что "пересмотрит" эти
militants/ Petraeus declared on hearings in senate that 'reconsider'-will these

91 правила./
rules/

92 /Издание заключает со ссылкой на знающих Петреуса людей, в частности
/Publication concludes with reference on knowing Petraeus people in particular

93 генерал-лейтенанта в отставке Дэвида Барно, что/ Обама сделал правильный
general-lieutenant in retirement David Barno that/ Obama made right

94 выбор/ и назначение Петреуса может изменить ход войны в Афганистане./
choice/ and appointment Petraeus-of can change course war-of in Afghanistan/

Literally:

According to the American newspaper USA Today, Afghans are unhappy that America which had promised to help them increase the level of life and crush the remnants of the Islamist regime has not achieved this, and instead of peace and development brought only destruction and war to Afghanistan.

MOSCOW, 22 July – RIA Novosti. U.S. tactics of counter-terrorism operation in Afghanistan evokes doubts both as with Americans, concerned with big losses so with Afghans tired of unrealised promises, writes on Thursday American newspaper USA Today.

According to the American newspaper USA Today, Afghans are unhappy that America which had promised to help them increase the level of life and crush the remnants of the Islamist regime has not achieved this, and instead of peace and development brought only destruction and war to Afghanistan, writes the publication. U.S. public are concerned both with the increasing losses of coalition troops (in July their number was highest – 102 people) and the intensified activity of the Talibis as well as with the question, whether the coming increase in 30 thousand people in the group will be able to reverse the situation.

The main hope is laid on the new NATO commander in Afghanistan General David Petraeus, during whose time a sharp decline in activity of the Iraqi insurgents took place. The question is whether he will be able to do in Afghanistan what he managed to do in Iraq.

As the newspaper notes, at the hearing during approval of Petraeus' appointment the senators identified a few obstacles hindering the achievement of success. Among them – increasing Taliban which acts in the country way more vast than Iraq at the same time receiving assistance from terrorist groups in Pakistan; corruption and cronyism of exercising American support Hamid Karzai's administration who during peace talks 'cajoles' warlords and some Taliban leaders.

Besides, according to the senators, it might turn out that Afghans will be unable to take charge of their own security when American troops leave Afghanistan in 2011 according to decree by President Barack Obama.

Among factors hindering achievement of success also rigid rules of use of armed forces were named, which hinder U.S. troops from maximally applying their resources against the enemy in situations, when damage to civilians can be done.

As the publication notes, at the meeting in the senate Petraeus did not say whether he is going to make changes to war plan. He only warned that the war in Afghanistan will be difficult, in a certain sense more difficult than in Iraq.

The authors of the article also point out that before his dismissal for critical remarks addressed to the representatives of the White House, General Stanley McChrystal implemented the same counterinsurgency strategy, which Petraeus successfully used in Iraq.

In Iraq, reminds the newspaper, President George Bush gave an order to increase the group in order to stop violence and give local authorities an opportunity to take the country under control. The cornerstone of this strategy became created with the help of USA 'awakening councils', consisting of Sunni leaders united in the fight against 'Al Qaeda'.

The publication notes that in Afghanistan McChrystal helped strengthen councils of leaders of Pashtun tribes to ensure support of the government of Karzai and withdrawal of the population from the Taliban. Representatives of the coalition forces in the south of Afghanistan participated in weekly meetings of such councils for several years trying to resolve certain questions and persuading the elders to help in the search for militants.

However, a former lieutenant general of Afghan army Abdul Hadi calls these councils fake and claims that the elders never gave a consent to fight the Talibis because they do not know who will make their life worse – Islamists or Karzai.

Comparing the experience of the Iraqi and Afghan campaigns the newspaper gives an example of such a fight with the Talibis as creation of groups of self-defence. In Iraq alienated from 'Al-Qaeda' tribe leaders formed and armed security forces which entered an alliance with the U.S. troops./ U.S. and Iraqi representatives affirmed candidacies of recruits of these formations and they expelled 'Al-Qaeda' terrorists from the regions of their residency while passing intelligence data to the U.S. and Iraqi military command. 'Forces of Anbar Awakening' helped break the course of the war in Iraq.

Last Wednesday Karzai approved Petraeus' plan to form local police forces of 10,000. Such participation of the local population in self-defense already takes place in Marjah.

Creation of effectively operating forces of police and army – such is the ultimate goal of strategy of the U.S. forces.

According to the authors of the article, it seems that the U.S. president Obama softened his position on the date of the withdrawal of troops from Afghanistan, due to start in July 2011.

Many Afghans are convinced: the Talibs will wait until the U.S. forces leave and then will start a powerful offensive.

Recently Obama noted in his speech that the pace of the withdrawal of troops will be determined by the conditions in Afghanistan. Vice President Biden declared on Sunday that the withdrawal could start with the return home of 'a few thousand' personnel.

The newspaper also refers to Petraeus who commenting the due date of the withdrawal of troops said that it is 'not about the date when we will quickly withdraw troops, turn off the lights and close the door'.

Regarding complaints of the U.S. military that the rules of engagement prevent them from hunting for militants more actively Petraeus said at the hearings in the senate he 'will reconsider' these rules.

The publication concludes with a reference to people who know Petraeus, in particular retired Lieutenant General David Barno, that Obama made a right choice and appointment of Petraeus can change the course of war in Afghanistan.

Source text: USA Today (21 July, 2010)

Can Afghanistan be saved?

As questions about U.S. effort amount, Petraeus steps into the breach

By William M. Welch and Jim Michaels

95 KALAKAN, Afghanistan — */It* was nearly nine years ago that/ ***Taliban fighters*** burned
96 everything standing in this dusty village on the Shomali Plain/ *as they* fled for the mountains
97 ahead of invading U.S. and allied troops./

98 */The United States* vowed to help Afghanistan form a democratic government, raise standards
99 of living and crush the remnants of the Islamist regime./

100 */Safiullah*, 27, a villager who like many here goes by one name, is still waiting for that to
101 happen./

102 /"We consider America a failed state/ because America could not fulfill its promises."/
103 Safiullah said after a recent meeting of village leaders here./ "Instead of bringing peace and
104 development, they brought destruction and fighting."/

105 /The Afghanistan war is at a critical juncture./ The surge of 30,000 troops ordered by
106 President Obama will be complete soon./ A new commander has arrived./ A full offensive
107 against the birthplace of the Taliban — Kandahar — has been delayed./

108 /Taliban attacks are rising/ as are U.S. operations against insurgent strongholds./ Coalition
109 deaths are at a high./ And Afghans such as Safiullah say/ they are losing faith in America's
110 ability to deliver on its promises./

111 /Progress "is not moving at the pace that/ anyone would like,"/ says Anthony Cordesman, an
112 analyst at the Center for Strategic and International Studies, a public policy research institute./

113 /Into this situation steps Gen. David Petraeus, the counterinsurgency expert/ who
114 spearheaded the dramatic drop in militancy in Iraq and the stabilizing of its government./
115 Tuesday, Petraeus took a break from his tour of the Afghan theater to greet Secretary of State
116 Hillary Rodham Clinton,/ who arrived in Kabul for an international conference on
117 Afghanistan's future./

118 /That future is on the minds of the American public and U.S. senators,/ who peppered
119 Petraeus with questions at his confirmation hearing on/ whether he can do in Afghanistan
120 what was done in Iraq and pointed out several obstacles to success./ Among them:

121 •/A resurgent Taliban operating in a country much more vast than Iraq and getting assistance
122 from terrorist groups in Pakistan./

123 •/Corruption and cronyism in the U.S.-backed government of President Hamid Karzai,/ who
124 courts warlords and some Taliban leaders in peace talks./

125 •/Afghans/ who might not be ready to take over their own security before President Obama's
126 deadline for U.S. troop withdrawals in 2011./

127 •/Indifference among some village elders about supporting Karzai or the coalition./

128 •/Rules of engagement/ that prevent U.S. troops from using maximum force against enemy
129 fire in situations where civilians may be harmed./

130 /Petraeus has not said/ whether he intends to make changes in the war plan./ He said/ he
131 expects hard fighting ahead to accomplish the goals laid out by Obama to "disrupt, dismantle
132 and defeat al-Qaeda in Afghanistan and Pakistan and to prevent its capacity to threaten
133 America and our allies in the future."/

134 /Fatalities and Taliban attacks have increased./ A record number of coalition troops were
135 killed in June — 102, including 59 Americans./ In July, 57 coalition members have been
136 killed,/ 42 of whom were Americans./

137 /Before he was dismissed for making critical remarks about White House officials, Gen.
138 Stanley McChrystal pursued the same counterinsurgency strategy/ he and Petraeus used
139 successfully in Iraq./

140 /There, President George W. Bush ordered a surge in troops to stop violence/ so the
141 government could take control of Iraq/ and Iraqi troops could be trained to take over
142 security./ A cornerstone of the strategy was U.S. encouragement of "Awakening Councils,"
143 Sunni leaders/ who joined in the fight against al-Qaeda./

144 /In Afghanistan, McChrystal encouraged *shuras* (meetings of Pashtun tribal elders) to garner
145 support for the Karzai government and prompt abandonment of the Taliban./ Coalition
146 officers in southern Afghanistan have attended weekly *shuras* for years to sort out issues and
147 persuade elders to assist them in tracking down insurgents./

148 /"Fake," is how former Afghan army lieutenant general Abdul Hadi described the *shuras*./

149 /Hadi,/ who has held several positions in the Karzai government,/ says/ the elders have never
150 signed on to combating the Taliban/ because they are not sure/ who will make their lives
151 worse, the Islamists or Karzai./ Hadi says/ the bigger problem for the coalition is corruption./

152 /At his home in Kabul, he rails against the cronies of Karzai,/ who/ he says/ have been
153 handed NATO contracts for troop supplies and construction projects in regions/ where the
154 residents are awarded nothing./

155 /"U.S., NATO, they are indifferent to that,"/ he says./

156 /Karzai has denied such allegations,/ but Khalid Pashtoon, member of the Afghan
157 legislature from Kandahar province, says/ it is happening./ He says/ many contractors/ who
158 supply things such as air conditioners or gravel to coalition forces /do poor work and cut out
159 local workers./

160 /"Some of the contracts are going to the wrong people,"/ he says./ "Every Afghan would
161 agree with this."/

162 /A survey of Afghan citizens released July 8 by the Kabul-based Integrity Watch Afghanistan
163 says/ corruption "has become more entrenched in all areas of life" and not only threatens the
164 legitimacy of the Karzai government but feeds support for the insurgency./ Of the 6,500
165 people surveyed, 28% said their households paid a bribe to obtain at least one public service
166 in 2009./

167 /"People of Afghanistan do not see any change in their life,/ and this makes them
168 disappointed with the foreign aid,"/ says Rahmat Khan Faqirzadah, governor of the Kalakan
169 district about 20 miles north of Kabul./

170 /Frederick Kagan, a former professor at the U.S. Military Academy at West Point/ who was
171 a leading proponent of a troop surge in Iraq,/ recently argued in *The Weekly Standard*
172 magazine that/ a "sound" strategy in Afghanistan would try to remove "malign actors" from
173 power or persuade them to end their misbehavior./ He said/ Petraeus did that in Iraq, working
174 with U.S. diplomats,/ and "with his record of judgment and creativity," he can repeat that
175 success in Afghanistan./

176 /The surge of 30,000 troops that/ Obama ordered in December/ should be in place in August,
177 bringing the total number of coalition forces in Afghanistan to 142,000,/ of which 94,000 are
178 American./

179 /**Many of those troops** move against the enemy in the regions around Kandahar, the birthplace
180 of the Taliban, hence the stepped-up fatalities, according to the Pentagon./

181 /**At the same time**, Karzai has invited representatives of forces fighting U.S. troops to Kabul
182 for peace talks./

183 /**Obama, Defense Secretary Robert Gates and others** have expressed concern that/ **the talks**
184 could complicate efforts by the coalition to bloody the Taliban enough/ **so** its **fighters** will lay
185 down their arms and their dreams for an Islamic state allied with al-Qaeda./

186 /"**The problem** is/ ... **it** is unclear how far Karzai is prepared to go"/ **in the talks**, Cordesman
187 says./

188 /**There** are Afghans prepared to help the coalition get rid of the Taliban,/ **Afghan officials**
189 say./

190 /"**People** are ready to fight them,"/ **Faqirzadah** says./

191 /**Enayat Shah Quraishi, 57, of Karanda** says/ **the U.S. military** needs to be more aggressive./
192 **He** does not understand why/ **the United States**, which has an advantage in sophistication and
193 technology, cannot wipe out the insurgents./

194 /"**Today**, we see Taliban speaking on television,/ **and we** know their location,"/ Quraishi said./
195 "**Yet foreign troops** do nothing./ **When** we see this getting longer and longer/ ... **it** makes
196 people very disappointed."/

197 /**Servicemembers** have complained to their superiors that/ **the U.S. military's rules of**
198 **engagement** prevent them from going after insurgents aggressively./ **Adm. Michael Mullen,**
199 **chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff**, acknowledged the complaints and said/ **Petraeus** can
200 review the rules,/ **which** were issued by McChrystal to keep civilian deaths down and avoid
201 alienating the very locals/ **he** was trying to woo./ **Petraeus** told the Senate confirmation
202 hearing that/ **he** would "review" the rules./

203 /**There** are examples of success in the current approach,/ **and Petraeus** may seek to expand on
204 them./ **One** is the city of Marjah./

205 /**Col. Randall Newman**, who commands a Marine regiment in Helmand province in the south,
206 says/ **the coalition** pushed the Taliban out of safe havens there and is keeping insurgents out./

207 /**Taliban forces** had ruled the city of 40,000 with impunity until U.S. Marines and Afghan
208 troops forced them out in a two-week battle, the largest operation since the invasion in 2001./
209 **The Taliban** lost control of a stronghold where it raised significant funds through opium
210 production.

211 /**Though militants** still mount attacks,/ **the residents** are starting to realize/ **the coalition** is a
212 better ally than the Islamists,/ **Newman** says./ **That kind of turnaround** takes time,/ **he** says./

213 /"**I** know people want quicker results,"/ **he** says./ "**We** will go as quickly as the people, their
214 willingness, their desires, will allow us to go."/

215 /**Time** may not be on the coalition's side./

216 /**Obama** has set a deadline for U.S. troop withdrawals to begin one year from this month in
217 2011./ **Sen. John McCain, R-Ariz., and many Afghans** say/ **the deadline** will only encourage
218 the Taliban to wait out the Americans and mount serious attacks after U.S. troops depart./

219 /**Pashtoon** says/ **Taliban adherents** warn villagers that/ **they** should not support U.S. troops/
220 because **once those troops leave**, they will have to deal with a vengeful Taliban./

221 /**Obama** appears to have softened his stand on the deadline, making it a point recently to state
222 that/ **the pace of the withdrawal** will be governed by conditions in Afghanistan./ **Vice**
223 **President Biden** said Sunday that/ **the withdrawal** may begin with as few as "a couple of
224 thousand" troops./

225 /**When pressed recently on the deadline**, Petraeus said/ **it** "is not a date when we will be
226 rapidly withdrawing our forces and switching off the lights and closing the door behind us."/

227 /**Nearly all sides** agree that/ **success** will be unlikely if/ **Pakistan** fails to step up efforts
228 against militants./ **Karzai** complains that/ **Pakistan** must stop the flow of weapons and
229 terrorists from jihadist safe havens within its borders./

230 /"**Pakistan** is still trying to play a political game with the international community,"/
231 **Pashtoon** says./ "**The key to Afghanistan peace** is in Pakistan."/

232 /**Pakistan's intelligence services** helped the Taliban come to power in Afghanistan in the
233 1990s/ and **many of the terrorist groups operating in Afghanistan** have their leadership
234 located in the border areas of Pakistan, according to the International Security Assistance
235 Force, the U.S.-led coalition that oversees Afghan military operations./

236 /**Clinton** said this week in an interview with the BBC that/ **Pakistan** must take stronger
237 actions against terror networks./

238 /"**If you double the troops in Afghanistan**, the problem will still not be solved until you stop
239 Pakistan,"/ **said** Sayed Mukim, 51, secretary of the Kalakan *shura*./

240 /**Self-defense groups, sometimes referred to as militias**, may be part of that strategy./

241 /**In Iraq**, tribal leaders alienated by al-Qaeda formed and armed security forces/ **that** allied
242 with U.S. forces./ **Their recruits** were approved by U.S. and Iraqi officials,/ and **they** kept al-
243 Qaeda terrorists out of their communities while passing on intelligence to U.S. and Iraqi
244 combat commanders./ **The "Anbar Awakening"** helped turn the tide in the Iraq war./

245 /**Last Wednesday**, Karzai approved Petraeus' plan to establish as many as 10,000 "community
246 police."/ **Such local participation in defense** is already happening in Marjah./ **Newman** says/
247 **residents** came forward to form a group to protect themselves./ **One goal** is to get the groups
248 to provide Afghan police with intelligence on Taliban movements,/ **he** says./

249 /"**We** are getting more and more information from the people,"/ **Newman** says./ "**That's** a
250 good sign."/

251 /**Establishing an effective police force and army** is the ultimate exit strategy for U.S. forces./
252 **Karzai** said Tuesday that/ **Afghan police and soldiers** will not be able to take charge of
253 security nationwide until 2014./

254 /Marine Col. Gregory Breazile, a spokesman for the NATO Training Mission-Afghanistan,
255 said that/ until recently, the coalition lacked the trainers and resources to build effective
256 fighting units./

257 /"We were failing miserably to train both the police and army,"/ Breazile said/. "They were
258 just shoving units through."/

259 /This year, the Afghan government boosted monthly pay for police and soldiers to \$165, up
260 from \$120,/ and it nearly doubled the number of coalition trainers during the past year to
261 more than 3,100./ As a result, coalition forces believe/ they can meet a goal of 243,000 police
262 and soldiers by Oct. 31,/ Breazile says./

263 /Petraeus has warned that/ the war in Afghanistan will be a hard fight, tougher than Iraq in
264 some ways./ Success is not guaranteed,/ he said./

265 /Those who know Petraeus say/ Obama made the right choice./

266 /"Putting Petraeus in has the potential to be a game-changer for the whole war,"/ says David
267 Barno, a retired three-star Army general/ who once commanded allied forces in Afghanistan./

268 /"He's coming off the experience of turning around a particularly difficult, some judged it
269 impossible, situation in Iraq,"/ Barro says./ "He has a lot of scar tissue from what it takes to
270 turn something around."/

APPENDIX 8B. Case study 3.1 *The U.S. Military Campaign in Afghanistan.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: USA Today (22 July, 2010)

Эффективность тактики США в Афганистане вызывает сомнения - USA Today

- 1 /По данным американской газеты USA Today, **афганцы недовольны** тем, что/ /By data American newspaper-of USA Today **Afghans unhappy** by that/
- 2 **Америка**, обещавшая помочь им повысить уровень жизни и сокрушить остатки **America** promised-ing help them increase level life-of and crush remnants
- 3 исламистского режима, так этого и **не добилась**, а вместо мира и развития Islamist regime-of so this and not achieved and instead peace-of and development-of
- 4 **принесла** в Афганистан только разрушения и войну./ **brought** to Afghanistan only destructions and war/
- 5 МОСКВА, 22 июл - РИА Новости. /**Тактика США при проведении** Moscow 22 July – RIA Novosti/ **Tactics USA during undertaking**
- 6 **контртеррористической операции в Афганистане вызывает** сомнения как у **counter-terrorism operation-of in Afghanistan evokes** doubts as in
- 7 американцев, обеспокоенных большими потерями, так и у афганских жителей, Americans concerned big losses-with so and in Afghan residents
- 8 уставших от невыполненных обещаний,/ **пишет** в четверг **американская** tired of unrealised promises/ **writes** on Thursday **American**
- 9 **газета USA Today./** **newspaper USA Today/**
- 10 /**Афганцы недовольны** тем, что/ **Америка**, обещавшая помочь им повысить /**Afghans unhappy** by that/ **America** promised-ing help them increase
- 11 уровень жизни и сокрушить остатки исламистского режима, так этого и **не** level life-of and crush remnants Islamist regime-of so this and **not**
- 12 **добилась**, а вместо мира и развития **принесла** в Афганистан только разрушения **achieved** and instead peace-of and development-of **brought** to Afghanistan only destructions

13 и войну,/*пишет издание.*/ **Общественность Соединенных Штатов**
and war/*writes publication*/ Public USA-of

14 **озабочена** как растущими потерями войск коалиции/ (в июле **их число было**
concerned as growing losses forces coalition-of/ in July **their number was**

15 рекордным - 102 человека),/ так и активизацией талибов, а также вопросом,/ record – 102 persons/ so and activation Talibs-of and also question

16 **сможет ли переломить** ситуацию **грядущее увеличение группировки на 30**
can whether break situation **forthcoming increase group by 30**

17 **тысяч человек.**/
thousands persons-of/

18 /**Основная надежда возлагается** на нового командующего НАТО в
/Main hope laid on new commander NATO in

19 Афганистане генерала Дэвида Петреуса,/ при котором **произошел резкий спад**
Afghanistan General David Petraeus/ at which **happened sharp fall**

20 **активности иракских боевиков.**/ Вопрос в том, **сможет ли он сделать** в
activity Iraqi militants-of/ Question in that *can whether he do* in

21 Афганистане то, что ему удалось в Ираке./
Afghanistan that which he managed in Iraq/

22 /Как отмечает газета, на слушаниях во время утверждения в должности
/As notes newspaper on next during time confirmation in post

23 Петреуса **сенаторы обозначили** несколько препятствий, мешающих
Petraeus-of **senators identified** several obstacles hindering

24 достижению успеха./ Среди них - **усиливающийся Талибан**,/ **который**
achievement success-of/ Among them – **increasing Taliban**/ which

25 **действует** в стране, намного более обширной, чем Ирак, получая при этом
acts in country much more vast than Iraq receiving by this

26 помочь от террористических группировок Пакистана;/ **коррупция и**
help from terrorist groups Pakistan-of/ **corruption and**

27 **кумовство** в пользующемся американской поддержкой правительстве
cronyism in using American support government

28 президента Хамида Карзая,/ **который "обхаживает"** полевых командиров и
president Hamid Karzai-of/ **which courts** field commanders and

29 некоторых лидеров Талибана на мирных переговорах./
some leaders Taliban-of at peace talks/

30 /Кроме того, по мнению сенаторов, **афганцы могут оказаться** не готовы взять
/Besides that by opinion senators-of **Afghans can appear** not ready take

31 на себя обеспечение собственной безопасности,/ когда **американские войска**
on themselves provision own security-of/ when **American forces**

32 *уйдут* в 2011 году из Афганистана в соответствии с распоряжением президента
leave in 2011 from Afghanistan in accordance with decree president

33 Барака Обамы./
Barack Obama-of/

34 /Среди факторов, мешающих достижению успеха, **были названы** и **жесткие**
/Among factors hindering achievement success-of **were named** and **rigid**

35 **правила применения вооружённых сил,/ которые мешают** американским
rules application-of armed forces-of/ which hinder American

36 войскам максимально задействовать свои средства против врага в ситуациях,/
troops maximally use own resources against enemy in situations/

37 когда **может быть нанесен ущерб** гражданскому населению./
when **can be done damage** civil population-to/

38 /Как отмечает издание, на заседании в сенате **Петреус не сказал,/ собирается**
/As notes publication at meeting in senate **Petraeus not said/ intends**

39 **ли он** вносить изменения в план ведения войны./ **Он** лишь **предупредил**, что/
whether he bring changes in plan leading war-of/ **He** only **warned** that/

40 **война в Афганистане будет** трудной, в определенном смысле труднее, чем в
war in Afghanistan be-will difficult in defined sense more-difficult than in

41 Ираке./
Iraq/

42 /При этом **авторы статьи указывают**, что/ перед своей отставкой за
/With this **authors article-of point** that/ before his dismissal for

43 критические высказывания в адрес представителей Белого дома **генерал**
critical statements in address representatives-of White House-of **General**

44 **Стэнли Маккристал проводил** в жизнь ту же самую контрпартизанскую
Stanley McChrystal carried into life that same counterinsurgency

45 стратегию,/ которую **Петреус** успешно **использовал** в Ираке./
strategy/ which **Petraeus** successfully **used** in Iraq/

46 /В Ираке, напоминает газета, **президент Джордж Буш отдал приказ** увеличить
/In Iraq reminds newspaper **President George Bush gave order** increase

47 численность группировки, чтобы остановить насилие и дать местным властям
number group to stop violence and give local authorities

48 возможность взять страну под свой контроль./ **Краеугольным камнем** этой
chance take country under own control/ **Cornerstone stone** this

49 **стратегии** *стали* **созданные** при содействии США "советы пробуждения",
strategy-of became created with assistance USA 'councils awakening-of'

50 состоящие из суннитских лидеров, объединившихся в борьбе против "Аль-
consisting of Sunni leaders united in fight against 'Al-
51 Каиды"./
Qaeda'/'

52 **/Издание отмечает, что/ в Афганистане Маккристал содействовал**
/Publication notes that in Afghanistan McChrystal assisted
53 укреплению советов лидеров пуштунских племен, чтобы обеспечить
strengthening councils leaders-of Pashtun tribes to provide
54 поддержку правительству Карзая и отход населения от Талибана./
support government Karzai-of and withdrawal population from Taliban/
55 **Представители сил коалиции на юге Афганистана участвовали в**
Representatives forces-of coalition in south Afghanistan-of participated in
56 еженедельных заседаниях таких советов на протяжении нескольких лет,
weekly meetings such councils-of during several years-of
57 пытаясь решать те или иные вопросы и убеждая старейшин помогать в поиске
trying solve those or other questions and persuading elders help in search
58 боевиков./
militants-of/

59 **/Однако бывший генерал-лейтенант афганской армии Абдул Хади (Abdul**
/However former general-lieutenant Afghan army-of Abdul Hadi (Abdul
60 **Hadi) называет** эти советы фальшивками и утверждает, что/ **старейшины**
Hadi) names these councils fake and states that/ elders
61 никогда **не давали согласия** на борьбу с талибами,/ потому что **они не знают**,/
never **not gave-ing consent** on fight with Talibs/ because that **they not know**/
62 **кто сделает** их жизнь хуже - исламисты или Карзай./
who make-will their life worse – Islamists or Karzai/

63 **/Сравнивая опыт иракской и афганской кампаний, газета приводит пример**
/Comparing experiencec Iraq and Afghan campaigns newspaper provides example
64 такой борьбы с талибами, как создание групп самообороны./ В Ираке
such fight with Talibs as creation groups-of self-defense-of/ In Iraq
65 **отдалившиеся от "Аль-Каиды" племенные лидеры сформировали и**
alienated from 'Al-Qaeda' tribe leaders formed and
66 **вооружили** силы безопасности,/ **которые вступили** в союз с американскими
armed forces security-of/ **which entered** in union with American
67 **войсками./ Американские и иракские представители утвердили** кандидатуры
forces/ **American and Iraqi representatives confirmed** candidacies
68 новобранцев этих формирований,/ **и они выгнали** террористов "Аль-Каиды" из

recruits-of these formations-of/ and **they expelled** terrorists 'Al-Qaeda' of from
69 районов своего проживания, одновременно передавая intelligence
areas their residency-of simultaneously passing data
70 американскому и иракскому военному командованию./ "Силы пробуждения
American and Iraqi military command-to/ '**Forces awakening-of**
71 **Анбара" помогли переломить** ход иракской войны./
Anbar-of' helped break course Iraq war-of/

72 /В прошлую среду **Карзай утвердил** план Петреуса о создании сил местной
/Last Wednesday **Karzai approved** Petraeus-of plan about creation forces local
73 полиции численностью 10 тысяч человек./ **Такое участие местного населения**
police-of numbering 10 thousand persons/ Such **participation local population-of**
74 **в самообороне** уже **имеет место** в Мардже./
in self-defense already **has place** in Marjah/

75 /**Создание эффективно действующих сил полиции и армии** - такова конечная
/Creation effectively acting forces police and army-of – such final
76 цель в стратегии американских войск./
goal in strategy American forces-of/

77 /Как считают авторы статьи, похоже, что **президент США Обама смягчил**
/As consider authors article-of seems that **president USA-of Obama softened**
78 свою позицию в вопросе сроков вывода войск из Афганистана,/ **который**
own position in question deadlines withdrawal force-of from Afghanistan/ **which**
79 **должен начаться** в июле 2011 года./
should start in July 2011 year-of/
80 /**Многие афганцы уверены**:/ **талибы дождутся** ухода американцев, а затем
/Many Afghans **certain**/ **Talibs wait-will** withdrawal Americans-of and then
81 **начнут** мощное наступление./
start-will powerful offensive/

82 /Недавно **Обама подчеркнул** в своем выступлении, что/ **темпы вывода войск**
/Recently **Obama underlined** in his speech that/ **pace-s withdrawal forces-of**
83 **будут определяться** обстановкой в Афганистане./ **Вице-президент Байден**
will determined environment-by in Afghanistan/ **Vice-president Biden**
84 **заявил** в воскресенье, что/ **вывод может начаться** с возвращения домой
declared on Sunday that/ withdrawal can start with return home
85 "пары тысяч" военнослужащих./
'couple thousands' military/

86 /Газета также **приводит** слова Петреуса,/ **который**, комментируя сроки вывода
 /Newspaper also **provides** words Petraeus-of/ **which** commenting deadlines withdrawal-of
 87 войск, **сказал**, что/ **речь идет** "не о дате, когда мы поспешили вывести свои
 forces **said** that/ **speech goes** 'not about date when we quickly withdraw own
 88 войска, выключим свет и закроем за собой дверь"./
 forces turn-off light and close behind us door'/

89 /Что **касается** жалоб военнослужащих США на то, что/ **правила**
 /What **concerns** complaints military-of USA-of on that which/ **rules**
 90 **применения оружия не дают** им возможности более активно охотиться на
 application-of weapons-of **not give** them opportunity more actively hunt for
 91 боевиков,/ **Петреус заявил** на слушаниях в сенате, что "пересмотрит" эти
 militants/ **Petraeus declared** on hearings in senate that 'reconsider'-will these
 92 правила./
 rules/

93 /Издание **заключает** со ссылкой на знающих Петреуса людей, в частности
 /Publication **concludes** with reference on knowing Petraeus people in particular
 94 генерал-лейтенанта в отставке Дэвида Барно, что/ **Обама сделал** правильный
 general-lieutenant in retirement David Barno that/ **Obama made** right
 95 выбор/ и **назначение Петреуса может изменить** ход войны в Афганистане./
 choice/ and **appointment Petraeus-of can change** course war-of in Afghanistan/

Literally:

According to the American newspaper USA Today, Afghans are unhappy that America which had promised to help them increase the level of life and crush the remnants of the Islamist regime has not achieved this, and instead of peace and development brought only destruction and war to Afghanistan.

MOSCOW, 22 July – RIA Novosti. U.S. tactics of counter-terrorism operation in Afghanistan evokes doubts both as with Americans, concerned with big losses so with Afghans tired of unrealised promises, writes on Thursday American newspaper USA Today.

According to the American newspaper USA Today, Afghans are unhappy that America which had promised to help them increase the level of life and crush the remnants of the Islamist regime has not achieved this, and instead of peace and development brought only destruction and war to Afghanistan, writes the publication. U.S. public are concerned both with the increasing losses of coalition troops (in July their number was highest – 102 people) and the intensified activity of the Talibans as well as with the question, whether the coming increase in 30 thousand people in the group will be able to reverse the situation.

The main hope is laid on the new NATO commander in Afghanistan General David Petraeus,

during whose time a sharp decline in activity of the Iraqi insurgents took place. The question is whether he will be able to do in Afghanistan what he managed to do in Iraq.

As the newspaper notes, at the hearing during approval of Petraeus' appointment the senators identified a few obstacles hindering the achievement of success. Among them – increasing Taliban which acts in the country way more vast than Iraq at the same time receiving assistance from terrorist groups in Pakistan; corruption and cronyism of exercising American support Hamid Karzai's administration who during peace talks 'cajoles' warlords and some Taliban leaders.

Besides, according to the senators, it might turn out that Afghans will be unable to take charge of their own security when American troops leave Afghanistan in 2011 according to decree by President Barack Obama.

Among factors hindering achievement of success also rigid rules of use of armed forces were named, which hinder U.S. troops from maximally applying their resources against the enemy in situations, when damage to civilians can be done.

As the publication notes, at the meeting in the senate Petraeus did not say whether he is going to make changes to war plan. He only warned that the war in Afghanistan will be difficult, in a certain sense more difficult than in Iraq.

The authors of the article also point out that before his dismissal for critical remarks addressed to the representatives of the White House, General Stanley McChrystal implemented the same counterinsurgency strategy, which Petraeus successfully used in Iraq.

In Iraq, reminds the newspaper, President George Bush gave an order to increase the group in order to stop violence and give local authorities an opportunity to take the country under control. The cornerstone of this strategy became created with the help of USA 'awakening councils', consisting of Sunni leaders united in the fight against 'Al Qaeda'.

The publication notes that in Afghanistan McChrystal helped strengthen councils of leaders of Pashtun tribes to ensure support of the government of Karzai and withdrawal of the population from the Taliban. Representatives of the coalition forces in the south of Afghanistan participated in weekly meetings of such councils for several years trying to resolve certain questions and persuading the elders to help in the search for militants.

However, a former lieutenant general of Afghan army Abdul Hadi calls these councils fake and claims that the elders never gave a consent to fight the Talibans because they do not know who will make their life worse – Islamists or Karzai.

Comparing the experience of the Iraqi and Afghan campaigns the newspaper gives an example of such a fight with the Talibans as creation of groups of self-defence. In Iraq alienated from 'Al-Qaeda' tribe leaders formed and armed security forces which entered an alliance with the U.S. troops. U.S. and Iraqi representatives affirmed candidacies of recruits of these

formations and they expelled 'Al-Qaeda' terrorists from the regions of their residency while passing intelligence data to the U.S. and Iraqi military command. 'Forces of Anbar Awakening' helped break the course of the war in Iraq.

Last Wednesday Karzai approved Petraeus' plan to form local police forces of 10,000. Such participation of the local population in self-defense already takes place in Marjah.

Creation of effectively operating forces of police and army – such is the ultimate goal of strategy of the U.S. forces.

According to the authors of the article, it seems that the U.S. president Obama softened his position on the date of the withdrawal of troops from Afghanistan, due to start in July 2011.

Many Afghans are convinced: the Talibs will wait until the U.S. forces leave and then will start a powerful offensive.

Recently Obama noted in his speech that the pace of the withdrawal of troops will be determined by the conditions in Afghanistan. Vice President Biden declared on Sunday that the withdrawal could start with the return home of 'a few thousand' personnel.

The newspaper also refers to Petraeus who commenting the due date of the withdrawal of troops said that it is 'not about the date when we will quickly withdraw troops, turn off the lights and close the door'.

Regarding complaints of the U.S. military that the rules of engagement prevent them from hunting for militants more actively Petraeus said at the hearings in the senate he 'will reconsider' these rules.

The publication concludes with a reference to people who know Petraeus, in particular retired Lieutenant General David Barno, that Obama made a right choice and appointment of Petraeus can change the course of war in Afghanistan.

Source text: USA Today (21 July, 2010)

Can Afghanistan be saved?

As questions about U.S. effort amount, Petraeus steps into the breach

By William M. Welch and Jim Michaels

96 KALAKAN, Afghanistan — /It was nearly nine years ago that/ **Taliban fighters burned**
97 everything standing in this dusty village on the Shomali Plain/ as **they fled** for the mountains
98 ahead of invading U.S. and allied troops./

99 /**The United States vowed** to help Afghanistan form a democratic government, raise
100 standards of living and crush the remnants of the Islamist regime./

101 /**Safiullah, 27, a villager who like many here goes by one name, is** still waiting for that to
102 happen./

103 /"We consider America a failed state/ because **America could not fulfill** its promises,"/
104 **Safiullah said** after a recent meeting of village leaders here./ "Instead of bringing peace and
105 development, **they brought** destruction and fighting."/

106 /**The Afghanistan war is** at a critical juncture./ **The surge of 30,000 troops ordered by**
107 **President Obama will be** complete soon./ **A new commander has arrived./ A full offensive**
108 **against the birthplace of the Taliban — Kandahar — has been delayed./**

109 /**Taliban attacks are rising/** as **are U.S. operations** against insurgent strongholds./ **Coalition**
110 **deaths are** at a high./ And Afghans such as Safiullah **say/ they are losing** faith in America's
111 ability to deliver on its promises./

112 /**Progress "is not moving** at the pace that/ **anyone would like,"/ says** Anthony Cordesman,
113 **an analyst at the Center for Strategic and International Studies, a public policy research**
114 **institute./**

115 /**Into this situation steps Gen. David Petraeus, the counterinsurgency expert/ who**
116 **spearheaded** the dramatic drop in militancy in Iraq and the stabilizing of its government./
117 **Tuesday, Petraeus took** a break from his tour of the Afghan theater to greet Secretary of State
118 Hillary Rodham Clinton,/ **who arrived** in Kabul for an international conference on
119 Afghanistan's future./

120 /**That future is** on the minds of the American public and U.S. senators,/ **who peppered**
121 Petraeus with questions at his confirmation hearing on/ whether **he can do** in Afghanistan
122 what was done in Iraq and pointed out several obstacles to success./ Among them:

123 •/**A resurgent Taliban** operating in a country much more vast than Iraq and getting
124 assistance from terrorist groups in Pakistan./

125 •/**Corruption and cronyism** in the U.S.-backed government of President Hamid Karzai,/ **who courts**
126 warlords and some Taliban leaders in peace talks./

127 •/**Afghans/ who might not be** ready to take over their own security before President Obama's
128 deadline for U.S. troop withdrawals in 2011./

129 •/**Indifference among some village elders** about supporting Karzai or the coalition./

130 •/**Rules of engagement/ that prevent** U.S. troops from using maximum force against enemy
131 fire in situations where civilians may be harmed./

132 •/**Petraeus has not said/** whether **he intends** to make changes in the war plan./ **He said/ he**
133 **expects** hard fighting ahead to accomplish the goals laid out by Obama to "disrupt, dismantle

134 and defeat al-Qaeda in Afghanistan and Pakistan and to prevent its capacity to threaten
135 America and our allies in the future."/

136 **/Fatalities and Taliban attacks have increased./ A record number of coalition troops were**
137 **killed** in June — 102, including 59 Americans./ In July, **57 coalition members have been**
138 **killed,** **42 of whom were** Americans./

139 /Before he was dismissed for making critical remarks about White House officials, **Gen.**
140 **Stanley McChrystal pursued** the same counterinsurgency strategy/ **he and Petraeus used**
141 successfully in Iraq./

142 /There, **President George W. Bush ordered** a surge in troops to stop violence/ so **the**
143 **government could take** control of Iraq/ and **Iraqi troops could be trained** to take over
144 security./ **A cornerstone of the strategy was** U.S. encouragement of "Awakening Councils,"
145 **Sunni leaders/ who joined** in the fight against al-Qaeda./

146 /In Afghanistan, **McChrystal encouraged** shuras (meetings of Pashtun tribal elders) to garner
147 support for the Karzai government and prompt abandonment of the Taliban./ **Coalition**
148 **officers in southern Afghanistan have attended** weekly shuras for years to sort out issues
149 and persuade elders to assist them in tracking down insurgents./

150 /"Fake," **is** how former Afghan army lieutenant general Abdul Hadi described the shuras./

151 **/Hadi/ who has held** several positions in the Karzai government,/ **says/ the elders have**
152 **never signed on** to combating the Taliban/ because **they are not sure/ who will make** their
153 **lives worse, the Islamists or Karzai./ Hadi says/ the bigger problem for the coalition is**
154 **corruption./**

155 /At his home in Kabul, **he rails** against the cronies of Karzai,/ **who/ he says/ have been**
156 **handed** NATO contracts for troop supplies and construction projects in regions/ where **the**
157 **residents are awarded** nothing./

158 /"U.S., NATO, **they are** indifferent to that,"/ **he says./**

159 **/Karzai has denied** such allegations,/ but Khalid Pashtoon, **member of the Afghan**
160 **legislature from Kandahar province, says/ it is happening./ He says/ many contractors/**
161 **who supply** things such as air conditioners or gravel to coalition forces **/do** poor work and **cut**
162 **out** local workers./

163 /"Some of the contracts **are going** to the wrong people,"/ **he says./** "Every Afghan **would**
164 **agree** with this."/

165 /A survey of Afghan citizens released July 8 by the Kabul-based Integrity Watch
166 **Afghanistan says/ corruption "has become** more entrenched in all areas of life" and not only
167 **threatens** the legitimacy of the Karzai government but **feeds** support for the insurgency./ Of
168 the 6,500 people surveyed, **28% said** their households paid a bribe to obtain at least one
169 public service in 2009./

170 /"People of Afghanistan **do not see** any change in their life,/ and **this makes** them
171 disappointed with the foreign aid,"/ **says Rahmat Khan Faqirzadah, governor of the**
172 **Kalakan district about 20 miles north of Kabul./**

173 /Frederick Kagan, a former professor at the U.S. Military Academy at West Point/ who
174 was a leading proponent of a troop surge in Iraq,/ recently *argued* in The Weekly Standard
175 magazine that/ a "sound" strategy in Afghanistan **would try** to remove "malign actors"
176 from power or persuade them to end their misbehavior./ **He said/ Petraeus did** that in Iraq,
177 working with U.S. diplomats,/ and "with his record of judgment and creativity," **he can repeat**
178 that success in Afghanistan./

179 /The surge of 30,000 troops that/ **Obama ordered** in December/ **should be** in place in
180 August, bringing the total number of coalition forces in Afghanistan to 142,000,/ **of which**
181 **94,000 are** American./

182 /Many of those troops **move** against the enemy in the regions around Kandahar, the
183 birthplace of the Taliban, hence the stepped-up fatalities, according to the Pentagon./

184 /At the same time, **Karzai has invited** representatives of forces fighting U.S. troops to Kabul
185 for peace talks./

186 /**Obama, Defense Secretary Robert Gates and others have expressed** concern that/ **the**
187 **talks could complicate** efforts by the coalition to bloody the Taliban enough/ **so its fighters**
188 **will lay down** their arms and their dreams for an Islamic state allied with al-Qaeda./

189 /"The problem **is**/ ... **it is** unclear how far Karzai is prepared to go"/ in the talks, **Cordesman**
190 **says./**

191 /**There are** Afghans prepared to help the coalition get rid of the Taliban,/ **Afghan officials**
192 **say./**

193 /"People **are ready to fight** them,"/ **Faqirzadah says./**

194 /**Enayat Shah Quraishi, 57, of Karanda says/** the U.S. military **needs** to be more
195 aggressive./ **He does not understand** why/ **the United States, which has** an advantage in
196 sophistication and technology, **cannot wipe out** the insurgents./

197 /"Today, **we see** Taliban speaking on television,/ and **we know** their location,"/ **Quraishi**
198 **said./** "Yet foreign troops **do** nothing./ When **we see** this getting longer and longer/ ... **it**
199 **makes** people very **disappointed.**"/

200 /**Servicemembers have complained** to their superiors that/ **the U.S. military's rules of**
201 **engagement prevent** them from going after insurgents aggressively./ **Adm. Michael Mullen,**
202 **chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, acknowledged** the complaints and said/ **Petraeus can**
203 **review** the rules,/ **which were issued** by McChrystal to keep civilian deaths down and avoid
204 alienating the very locals/ **he was trying to woo.**/ **Petraeus told** the Senate confirmation
205 hearing that/ **he would "review"** the rules./

206 /**There are** examples of success in the current approach,/ and **Petraeus may seek** to expand
207 on them./ **One is** the city of Marjah./

208 /**Col. Randall Newman, who commands a Marine regiment in Helmand province in the**
209 **south, says/** the coalition **pushed** the Taliban **out** of safe havens there and **is keeping**
210 **insurgents out./**

211 /**Taliban forces had ruled** the city of 40,000 with impunity until U.S. Marines and Afghan
212 troops forced them out in a two-week battle, the largest operation since the invasion in 2001./
213 **The Taliban lost control** of a stronghold where it raised significant funds through opium
214 production./

215 /Though **militants** still **mount attacks**,/ **the residents are starting to realize**/ the coalition is
216 a better ally than the Islamists,/ **Newman says**./ **That kind of turnaround takes time**,/ he
217 **says**./

218 /"I know/ **people want** quicker results,"/ **he says**./ "We **will go** as quickly as the people, their
219 willingness, their desires, will allow us to go."/

220 /**Time may not be** on the coalition's side./

221 /**Obama has set** a deadline for U.S. troop withdrawals to begin one year from this month in
222 2011./ **Sen. John McCain, R-Ariz., and many Afghans say**/ **the deadline will** only
223 **encourage** the Taliban to wait out the Americans and mount serious attacks after U.S. troops
224 depart./

225 /**Pashtoon says**/ **Taliban adherents warn** villagers that/ **they should not support** U.S. troops/
226 because once those troops leave, **they will have to deal** with a vengeful Taliban./

227 /**Obama appears to have softened** his stand on the deadline, making it a point recently to
228 state that/ **the pace of the withdrawal will be governed** by conditions in Afghanistan./ **Vice**
229 **President Biden said** Sunday that/ **the withdrawal may begin** with as few as "a couple of
230 thousand" troops./

231 /When pressed recently on the deadline, **Petraeus said**/ it "is not a date when we will be
232 rapidly withdrawing our forces and switching off the lights and closing the door behind us."/

233 /**Nearly all sides agree** that/ **success will be** unlikely if/ **Pakistan fails to step up** efforts
234 against militants./ **Karzai complains** that/ **Pakistan must stop** the flow of weapons and
235 terrorists from jihadist safe havens within its borders./

236 /"Pakistan is still trying to play a political game with the international community,"/
237 **Pashtoon says**./ "The key to Afghanistan peace is in Pakistan."/

238 /**Pakistan's intelligence services helped** the Taliban come to power in Afghanistan in the
239 1990s/ and **many of the terrorist groups operating in Afghanistan have** their leadership
240 located in the border areas of Pakistan, according to the International Security Assistance
241 Force, the U.S.-led coalition that oversees Afghan military operations./

242 /**Clinton said** this week in an interview with the BBC that/ **Pakistan must take** stronger
243 actions against terror networks./

244 /"If you double the troops in Afghanistan, **the problem will** still **not be solved** until you stop
245 Pakistan,"/ **said Sayed Mukim, 51, secretary of the Kalakan shura**./

246 /**Self-defense groups**, sometimes referred to as militias, **may be** part of that strategy./

247 /In Iraq, **tribal leaders alienated by al-Qaeda formed** and **armed security forces/ that allied**
248 with U.S. forces./ **Their recruits were approved** by U.S. and Iraqi officials,/ and they **kept** al-

249 Qaeda terrorists out of their communities while passing on intelligence to U.S. and Iraqi
250 combat commanders./ **The "Anbar Awakening" helped turn** the tide in the Iraq war./

251 /Last Wednesday, **Karzai approved** Petraeus' plan to establish as many as 10,000
252 "community police."/ **Such local participation in defense is** already **happening** in Marjah./
253 **Newman says/ residents came forward to form** a group to protect themselves./ **One goal is**
254 to get the groups to provide Afghan police with intelligence on Taliban movements,/ **he says./**

255 /"We are getting more and more information from the people,"/ **Newman says./** "That's a
256 good sign."/

257 /**Establishing an effective police force and army is** the ultimate exit strategy for U.S.
258 forces./ **Karzai said** Tuesday that/ **Afghan police and soldiers will not be able to take**
259 **charge** of security nationwide until 2014./

260 /**Marine Col. Gregory Breazile, a spokesman for the NATO Training Mission-**
261 **Afghanistan, said** that/ until recently, **the coalition lacked** the trainers and resources to build
262 effective fighting units./

263 /"We were failing miserably to train both the police and army,"/ Breazile said/. "They were
264 just shoving units through."/

265 /This year, **the Afghan government boosted** monthly pay for police and soldiers to \$165, up
266 from \$120,/ and **it** nearly **doubled** the number of coalition trainers during the past year to
267 more than 3,100./ As a result, **coalition forces believe/ they can meet** a goal of 243,000
268 police and soldiers by Oct. 31,/ **Breazile says./**

269 /**Petraeus has warned** that/ **the war in Afghanistan will be** a hard fight, tougher than Iraq in
270 some ways./ **Success is not guaranteed,**/ he said./

271 /**Those who know Petraeus say/ Obama made** the right choice./

272 /"Putting Petraeus in has the potential to be a game-changer for the whole war,"/ **says David**
273 **Barno, a retired three-star Army general/ who once commanded allied forces in**
274 **Afghanistan.**/

275 /"He's coming off the experience of turning around a particularly difficult, some judged it
276 impossible, situation in Iraq,"/ **Barno says./** "He has a lot of scar tissue from what it takes to
277 turn something around."/

APPENDIX 9A. Case study 3.2 *Killings of Civilians in Kandahar Province.*

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: RIA Novosti (March 26, 2012)

Среди жертв сержанта Бейлса в Афганистане была беременная женщина

Сюжет: Расстрел американским военнослужащим мирных жителей в Афганистане

МОСКВА, 26 мар - РИА Новости.

- 1 *Среди жертв сержанта американской армии Роберта Бейлса*, расстрелявшего *Among victims sergeant-of American-of army Robert Bales* shot
- 2 мирных афганцев в начале марта, был *неродившийся ребенок*,/ *который*, согласно peaceful Afghans at beginning March-of was *unborn child which* according
- 3 военному праву США, считается еще одной, 17-й жертвой, говорится в сообщении, military-to law USA considered-is another one 17-th victim said-is in message
- 4 опубликованном в понедельник на сайте издания New York Times./ published on Monday on website publication-of New York Times
- 5 *Это* объясняет разнотечения в количестве жертв бойни, произошедшей 11 марта ночью *It* explains discrepancies in number-of victims slaughter-of happened 11 March night-at
- 6 в уезде Панджваи в южной афганской провинции Кандагар./ *Бейлс*, по данным in district Panjwai in southern Afghan province Kandahar *Bales* by data
- 7 следствия, вышел со своей базы, направился в одну из близлежащих деревень и, investigation of came-out from his base headed to one of nearby villages and
- 8 врываясь в дома *местных жителей*,/ *которые* тогда спали,/ расстреливал их./ *Затем* breaking into houses *local-of residents which* then slept shot-ing them *Then*
- 9 американец вернулся в расположение части, а через некоторое время направился в American returned to location base-of and in some time headed to

10 другую деревню, где также совершил убийства./ Сержант был задержан военными another village where also committed murders Sergeant was detained soldiers-by

11 США, когда он во второй раз вернулся на базу./ USA-of when he in second time returned to base

12 Изначально как американские, так и афганские источники сообщали,/ что Initially as American so and Afghan sources reported-ing that

13 жертвами 38-летнего Бейлса стали 16 человек, в том числе девять детей и три victims 38-year-old Bales-of became 16 people in that number nine children and three

14 женщины./ Однако ранее на этой неделе военнослужащему было официально women But earlier on this week soldier was officially

15 предъявлено обвинение в преднамеренном убийстве 17-ти человек./ presented accusation in premeditated murder 17-of people

16 "Американцы" правы./ Одна из женщин была беременна,/ поэтому они говорят о 17-ти Americans right One of women was pregnant that-is-why they talk-ing about 17-of

17 (жертвах)",/- приводит New York Times слова начальника полиции провинции victims brings New York Times words head police-of province-of

18 Кандагар Абула Разака (Abdul Razak)./ О сроке беременности погибшей женщины Kandahar Abdul Razak (Abdul Razak) Of stage pregnancy-of deceased woman-of

19 полицейский не сообщил./ policeman not informed

20 Вместе с тем, другие афганские чиновники продолжают настаивать на том,/ что Together with that other Afghan authorities continue insist on that that

21 жертвами действий американского сержанта стали 16 человек./ victims actions-of American sergeant-of became 16 people

22 "Иностранные" допустили ошибку./ Нем 17-й жертвы./ Согласно нашим данным, их Foreigners made mistake No 17th victim According our-to data they

23 16",/- сказал в понедельник глава Медиа-центра провинции Кандагар Ахмед Джавед 16 said on Monday head Media-centre-of province-of Kandahar Ahmed

24 Фейсал (Ahmed Jawed Faisal)./ Он также представил список имен 16-ти жертв и Jawed Faisal (Ahmed Jawed Faisal) He also presented list names-of 16-of

25 сообщил,/ что никто из шестерых раненых к настоящему моменту не скончался./ victims and reported that none of six wounded till present moment not died

26 Как отмечается в сообщении,/ согласно военному праву США, неродившегося As noted in message/ according military-to law USA-of unborn

27 ребенка можно считать жертвой,/ невзирая на то, знал ли убийца,/ что его жертва child can consider victim not-looking at that knew whether murderer that his victim

28 беременна,/ или нет,/ и несмотря на то, хотел ли он преднамеренно убить плод, или pregnant or not and not-looking at that wanted whether he deliberately kill fetus or
29 нет./
not
30 Накануне сообщалось,/ что семьи жертв побоища, устроенного сержантом Бейлсом, On-the-eve reported-was that families victims-of slaughter-of arranged sergeant-by Bales
31 получили денежную компенсацию от американских военных вопреки официальной received financial compensation from American military despite official
32 политике Пентагона,/ который обычно не производит никаких выплат за жертвы и policy Pentagon-of which usually not produces no payments for victims and
33 ущерб, причиненный во время ведения боевых действий./ damage caused at time conducting combative-of actions
34 Семьи каждого из убитых афганцев получили примерно по 50 тысяч долларов,/ а Families each-of killed Afghans received around by 50 thousand dollars-of and
35 семьи раненых - по 11 тысяч./ Выплаты были произведены в национальной валюте families wounded-of by 11 thousand Payments were made in national currency
36 афгани и в общем сложности составили 866 тысяч долларов./ afghani and in total sum totaled 866 thousand dollars-of
37 О том, когда состоится суд над Бейлсом,/ который в настоящее время находится уже About that when held-will trial over Bales which at present time is already
38 на территории США,/ неизвестно. Однако, если суд признает сержанта виновным,/ ему on territory USA-of unknown But if court recognises sergeant guilty him
39 грозит высшая мера наказания - смертная казнь./ threatens highest measure punishment-of death-ly execution

Literally:

Among victims of sergeant Bales in Afghanistan was a pregnant woman

Story: Shooting by American military of civilians in Afghanistan

MOSCOW, 26 March – RIA Novosti.

Among victims of the U.S. army sergeant Robert Bales, who shot Afghan civilians at the beginning of March, there was an unborn child, which, according to the U.S. military law, is considered another, 17th victim, is said in the message, published on Monday on the New York Times website.

This explains the discrepancy in the number of the victims of slaughter, which happened at night on the 11th March in Panjwai district in the southern Afghan province Kandahar. Bales, according to the investigation data, left his base, headed to one of the nearby villages and, breaking into the houses of the local residents, who then were asleep, was shooting them. Then the American returned to the base, and after some time headed to another village, where

he also committed murder. The sergeant was detained by the U.S. military, when he returned to the base for the second time.

Initially both American and Afghan sources were reporting that the victims of the 38-year old Bales were 16 people, including nine children and three women. However, earlier this week an accusation was presented to the soldier of premeditated murder of 17 people.

‘The Americans are right. One of the women was pregnant, that’s why they are talking about 17 (victims)’, presents the New York Times the words of the Kandahar province police chief Abdul Razak. Of the stage of pregnancy of the deceased woman the policeman did not report.

At the same time, other Afghan authorities continue to insist that the victims of the actions of the American soldier were 16 people.

‘Foreigners have made a mistake. There is no 17th victim. According to our data, they are 16’, said on Monday the head of the Media centre of Kandahar province Ahmed Jawed Faisal. He also presented a list of the name of the 16 victims and informed, that none of the six wounded, as at the time, had died.

As noted in the message, according to the U.S. military law, the unborn child can be considered a victim, disregarding whether the murderer knew that his victim was pregnant or not, and disregarding whether he intentionally wanted to kill the fetus or not.

The previous day it was reported that families of the victims of the slaughter, conducted by sergeant Bales, have received a financial compensation from the U.S. military against the official policy of the Pentagon, which usually does not make any payments for victims and damage caused during military actions.

Families of each of the killed Afghans have received around \$50 thousand, and families of the wounded - \$11 thousand. Payments were made in national currency Afghani and totalled \$866 thousand.

When the trial over Bales, who at present is already on the U.S. territory, will take place is unknown. However, if the court finds the sergeant guilty, the highest measure of punishment threatens him – a death penalty.

Source text 1: International Herald Tribune/ The Global Edition of the New York Times (March 26, 2012/ Monday)

Paying a Price Amid the Fog of War

40 HONG KONG — Call it assistance,/ call it regrettable,/ call it \$50,000 for each dead body,/

41 but do not call it compensation.

42 The United States made payments last weekend to Afghan families/ whose relatives were

43 murdered by an American soldier./ My colleagues Matthew Rosenberg and Sangar Rahimi

44 report/ that the families received \$50,000 per victim./ The six people/ who were wounded/

45 got \$11,000 each./

46 President Obama and senior military leaders have expressed their regret over the killings,

47 just three weeks after having formally apologized for the burning of Korans at a U.S. air base

48 last month./

49 An Afghan provincial official described the money as “assistance,” as differentiated from a
50 payment that might be used in Pashtun society to make amends for a slight or a crime./ So, no
51 absolution here./

52 “We are grateful to the United States government for its help with the grieved families,”/ the
53 official, Hajji Agha Lalai, told Matt and Sangar./ “But this cannot be counted as
54 compensation for the deaths.”/

55 Also from their story:/ “In discussions before the payments were made, American officials
56 were also careful to draw a similar distinction, saying that/ any eventual payments would be
57 out of compassion for the victims,/ and that Staff Sgt. Robert Bales,/ the soldier accused of
58 killing the villagers,/ would still face trial.”

59 My colleague in Kabul, Rod Nordland, also reports that/ the military’s initial report of 16
60 deaths has been changed/ because, according to a senior Afghan police official, one of those
61 killed was a pregnant woman./ Her unborn baby, apparently, is being counted as Victim No.
62 17./ Sergeant Bales has been charged with killing 17 people./

63 Some might see the payments as reparations, compensation or justice;/ others might call it
64 payback, guilt or blood money./ In any event, of course, the issue of payments is a sensitive
65 one,/ and it’s made all the more thorny in wartime and in combat zones./

66 Payments by the U.S. government or the military are certainly not unprecedented,/ and tens
67 of millions of dollars have been paid since 2001 to Afghans and Iraqis for killings, injuries
68 and property damage not specifically related to combat./

69 A Times article in 2007, for example, reported on the case of two men fishing in the Tigris
70 River, in Saddam Hussein’s hometown of Tikrit:/

71 “They held up the fish in the air and shouted ‘Fish! Fish!’ to show they meant no harm,”/ said
72 a U.S. Army report on the February 2006 incident./ When an American shore patrol drove
73 up,/ “the deceased bent over to turn the motor off of the boat,/ but the C.F. shot him in the
74 head as he bent down,”/ the report said,/ using shorthand for coalition forces, in this case for
75 members of the 101st Airborne Division./

76 A month later, the army rejected a relative’s compensation claim for the fisherman’s death,
77 ruling that/ the shooting was “combat activity” exempt from restitution under the Foreign
78 Claims Act,/ the law that governs payments to foreign citizens for damage done by American
79 forces operating abroad./

80 The army agreed to pay \$3,500 for the dead man’s boat, net and cellphone, which drifted off.

81 A sampling of other war-related payments, some accepted, some rejected:/

82 * In December, cash payments were offered by the United States to families of 24 Pakistani
83 Army soldiers/ who were killed in their bunker by an errant American airstrike the previous
84 month./ Those payments were refused./

85 “Nobody is interested in compensation,”/ the Pakistani Army spokesman, Maj. Gen. Athar
86 Abbas, said in a story in the Dawn newspaper./ “It is not in our military culture to take money
87 for a fallen soldier./ It is abhorred./ We will take care of our own.”/

88 * *The families of dozens of Pakistani tribesmen* killed in a U.S. drone strike last March
89 rejected Pakistani government offers of about \$3,500 for each death./ (*An American official*
90 took issue with Islamabad's characterization of the strike,/ saying,/ “*These people* weren't
91 gathering for a bake sale./ *They* were terrorists.”)/

92 * *A U.S. inquiry* in 2001 found that/ *American troops* had killed civilian refugees at No Gun
93 Ri during the Korean War/ but *the U.S. government* took no legal responsibility for the
94 deaths and declined to apologize./ *The U.S.* offer to build a memorial and establish a
95 scholarship fund was rejected by the victims' families.

96 “*Of course the U.S. government* should pay compensation/ — *it's* the U.S. military's fault,”/
97 *a survivor, Cho Kook-won, 78,* told The Associated Press./ *Mr. Cho* said/ *four of his family*
98 *members* were among *hundreds of Koreans*/ *who* died while taking shelter in a cave in 1951,
99 suffocated and burned by a U.S. Air Force napalm attack./

100 * *The United States* authorized \$198 million for the Filipino Veterans Equity Compensation
101 Fund to make direct cash payments to *some 18,000 Filipino veterans*/ *who* fought on the
102 Allied side during World War II./ *Veterans with American citizenship* are entitled to
103 \$15,000;/ *noncitizens* can receive \$9,000./

104 * *Canada* has paid more than \$1 million to *Afghans*/ *who* suffered losses in the war,
105 according to Defense Department figures cited by The Canadian Press./ *The settlements*
106 ranged from less than \$100 to as much as \$21,420./

107 “*By definition, war* requires a certain level of destruction,/ and *combatants* are not required to
108 treat every invasion like a massive slip-and-fall case,”/*said* Jonathan Turley, the legal scholar,
109 in an online essay, “Wartime Compensation: The New Bomb and Buy Policy.”/

110 “*There* have been limited *circumstances*/ *in which* the U.S. government has agreed to pay
111 damages even though it wasn't required to./ *These* primarily have been *cases*/ *in which*
112 individuals were injured in peacetime by military negligence./

113 “*Thus, when a Japanese fishing boat* was exposed to radiation during the testing of an
114 atomic bomb/ or *an Iranian airliner* was mistakenly shot down by a U.S. warship,/ *the U.S.*
115 paid compensation./

116 “*The closest precedent* for any Afghan claimants is Grenada,/ in which *the U.S. government*
117 agreed to pay \$1.6 million to people harmed in the military invasion./

118 “*The compensation* was a mistake./ *It* is one thing to allow families to receive general
119 humanitarian aid./ *It* is quite another to ‘compensate’ for our actions.”/

Source text 2: the New York Times (March 26, 2012/ Monday)

3 NATO Soldiers Killed by Afghan Security Officers

120 KABUL, Afghanistan — *Three NATO soldiers* were shot to death on Monday in two
121 separate confrontations involving Afghan security forces,/ *officials* said, adding to a string of

122 **“green on blue” killings/ that** have complicated the relationship between Afghanistan and its
123 Western allies./

124 **In southern Helmand Province**, an Afghan National Army soldier turned his weapon on
125 British soldiers, killing two of them before being shot to death,/ **said** Ghulam Farooq Parwani,
126 deputy commander of the 215th Afghan National Army Corps./ **The shootings** took place at
127 the British-run headquarters of the Provincial Reconstruction Team in Lashkar Gah, the
128 capital of the province,/ **he** said.

129 **NATO** confirmed/ that **two of its soldiers** had been killed in an attack, but did not identify
130 their nationality./

131 **Also, the international military command in Afghanistan** reported that/ **one of its soldiers**
132 had been shot to death by an “alleged member of the Afghan local police” as members of the
133 International Security Assistance Force approached a police checkpoint./ **An ISAF press**
134 **release** gave no further details and did not identify the nationality of the victim./ **Afghan**
135 **officials** later said/ **the shooting** had taken place in Paktika Province./

136 **Afghan local police forces** are, in general, **armed militiamen/ who** are trained by American
137 Special Operations troops and deputized as police officers under a program designed for the
138 defense of their home communities./ **The program** has been controversial/ because **many of**
139 **the local policemen** were former Taliban or criminal elements seeking to exercise control
140 over their areas./

141 **Meanwhile**, Karilyn Bales, the wife of the American staff sergeant charged with killing 17
142 people in an Afghan village this month, appeared in her first television interview on Monday./
143 **She** defended her husband, Staff Sgt. Robert Bales, saying she did not believe that/ **he** could
144 have committed such a massacre of civilians, including women and children./ **“He** loves
145 children,/ and **he** would not do that,”/ **she** said on NBC’s “Today” show./ **“It’s**
146 **heartbreaking.”/**

147 **She** described Sergeant Bales as **“a very tough guy”/ who** did not appear to suffer symptoms
148 of post-traumatic stress disorder, like nightmares./ **But, she** said,/ **“he** shielded me from a lot
149 of what he went through.”/

150 **Afghan and American officials** have said/ **American officials** paid the families of 16 dead
151 and 6 wounded victims on Saturday; at \$50,000 for each death and \$11,000 for each injury,
152 that totals \$866,000./

153 **But confusion** over differences in the number of dead/— **Sergeant Bales’s charge sheet from**
154 **the United States military** lists 17, while Afghan officials list 16/ — **continued** on Monday.

155 **Early in the day**, an Afghan police official in Kandahar Province,/ where the killings took
156 place,/ said/ **the 17th victim** could be accounted for/ because **a pregnant woman** was among

157 the dead./ But he later retracted that assertion,/ and American military officials restated/ that
158 their investigation showed evidence for 17 murder charges./

159 “At this time, the evidence available to the prosecution team indicates 17 victims of
160 premeditated murder and 6 victims of assault and attempted premeditated murder,”/ Lt. Col.
161 Jimmie E. Cummings Jr. said by telephone./ “There were no wounded who died, and no
162 fetus.”/

163 He continued:/ “That breaks down to/ 4 males, 4 females and 9 children were murdered./
164 One male, one woman and 4 children were wounded.”/

APPENDIX 9B. Case study 3.2 *Killings of Civilians in Kandahar Province.*

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: RIA Novosti (March 26, 2012)

Среди жертв сержанта Бейлса в Афганистане была беременная женщина

Сюжет: Расстрел американским военнослужащим мирных жителей в Афганистане

МОСКВА, 26 мар - РИА Новости.

- 1 Среди жертв сержанта американской армии Роберта Бейлса, расстрелявшего мирных Among victims sergeant-of American-of army Robert Bales shot peaceful
- 2 афганцев в начале марта, **был неродившийся ребенок**,/ **который**, согласно военному Afghans at beginning March-of **was unborn child which** according military-to
- 3 праву США, **считается** еще одной, 17-й жертвой, говорится в сообщении, law USA **considered-is** another one 17-th victim said-is in message
- 4 опубликованном в понедельник на сайте издания New York Times./ published on Monday on website publication-of New York Times
- 5 **Это объясняет** разнотечения в количестве жертв бойни, произошедшей 11 марта ночью It **explains** discrepancies in number-of victims slaughter-of happened 11 March night-at
- 6 в уезде Панджваи в южной афганской провинции Кандагар./ **Бейлс**, по данным in district Panjwai in southern Afghan province Kandahar **Bales** by data
- 7 следствия, **вышел** со своей базы, **направился** в одну из близлежащих деревень и, investigation of came-out from his base **headed** to one of nearby villages and
- 8 **врываясь** в дома **местных жителей**,/ **которые** тогда **спали**,/ **расстреливал** их./ Затем **breaking** into houses **local-of residents which** then slept shot-ing them Then
- 9 **американец вернулся** в расположение части, а через некоторое время **направился** в **American returned** to location base-of and in some time **headed** to
- 10 другую деревню, где также **совершил** убийства./ **Сержант был задержан** военными

another village where also **committed** murders **Sergeant was detained** soldiers-by

11 США, когда он во второй раз вернулся на базу./
USA-of when he in second time returned to base

12 Изначально **как американские, так и афганские источники сообщали**, что
Initially as American so and Afghan sources **reported-ing** that

13 жертвами 38-летнего Бейлса **стали 16 человек**, в том числе девять детей и три
victims 38-year-old Bales-of **became 16 people** in that number nine children and three

14 женщины./ Однако ранее на этой неделе военнослужащему **было** официально
women But earlier on this week soldier **was** officially

15 **предъявлено обвинение** в преднамеренном убийстве 17-ти человек./
presented accusation in premeditated murder 17-of people

16 "Американцы **правы**./ **Одна из женщин была** беременна,/ поэтому **они говорят** о 17-
Americans **right** One of women **was** pregnant that-is-why **they talk-ing** about 17-of

17 ти (жертвах)",/ - **приводит** New York Times слова начальника полиции провинции
victims **brings** New York Times words head police-of province-of

18 Кандагар Абдула Разака (Abdul Razak)./ О сроке беременности погибшей женщины
Kandahar Abdul Razak (Abdul Razak) Of stage pregnancy-of deceased woman-of

19 **полицейский не сообщил**./
policeman not informed

20 Вместе с тем, **другие афганские чиновники продолжают настаивать** на том,/ что
Together with that **other Afghan authorities continue insist** on that that

21 жертвами действий американского сержанта **стали 16 человек**./
victims actions-of American sergeant-of **became 16 people**

22 "Иностранные допустили ошибку./ **Нем** 17-й жертвы./ Согласно нашим данным, **их**
Foreigners made mistake No 17th victim According our-to data they

23 16",/ - **сказал** в понедельник глава **Медиа-центра провинции Кандагар** Ахмед
16 **said** on Monday head Media-centre-of province-of Kandahar Ahmed

24 **Джавед Фейсал** (Ahmed Jawed Faisal)./ **Он** также **представил** список имен 16-ти
Jawed Faisal (Ahmed Jawed Faisal) He also **presented** list names-of 16-of

25 жертв и **сообщил**,/ что **никто из шестерых раненых** к настоящему моменту **не**
victims and **reported** that **none of six wounded** till present moment **not**

26 **скончался**./
died

27 Как отмечается в сообщении, согласно военному праву США, **неродившегося**
As noted in message according military-to law USA-of **unborn**

28 **ребенка можно считать** жертвой,/ невзирая на то, **знал ли убийца**,/ что **его жертва**

child *can consider* victim not-looking at that *knew whether* murderer that his victim

29 *беременна*,/ или нет,/ и несмотря на то, *хотел ли он* преднамеренно *убить* плод, или
pregnant or not and not-looking at that *wanted whether he* deliberately *kill* fetus or

30 нет./
not

31 Накануне сообщалось,/ что **семьи жертв побоища**, устроенного сержантом Бейлсом,
On-the-eve reported-was that **families victims-of slaughter-of** arranged sergeant-by Bales

32 **получили** денежную компенсацию от американских военных вопреки официальной
received financial compensation from American military despite official

33 политики **Пентагона**,/ **который** обычно *не производит* никаких выплат за жертвы и
policy **Pentagon-of which** usually *not produces* no payments for victims and

34 ущерб, причиненный во время ведения боевых действий./
damage caused at time conducting combative-of actions

35 **Семьи каждого из убитых афганцев получили** примерно по 50 тысяч долларов,/ а
Families each-of killed Afghans received around by 50 thousand dollars-of and

36 **семьи раненых** - по 11 тысяч./ **Выплаты были произведены** в национальной валюте
families wounded-of by 11 thousand **Payments were made** in national currency

37 афгани и в общем сложности *составили* 866 тысяч долларов./
afghani and in total sum **totaled** 866 thousand dollars-of

38 **О том, когда состоится суд над Бейлсом**,/ **который** в настоящее время *находится*
About that **when held-will trial over Bales which** at present time *is*

39 уже на территории США,/ *неизвестно*. Однако, если **суд признает** сержанта
already on territory USA-of **unknown** But if **court recognises** sergeant

40 **виновным**,/ ему *грозит* **высшая мера наказания - смертная казнь**./
guilty him **threatens** highest measure punishment-of death-ly execution

Literally:

Among victims of sergeant Bales in Afghanistan was pregnant woman

Story: Shooting by American military of civilians in Afghanistan

MOSCOW, 26 March – RIA Novosti.

Among victims of the U.S. army sergeant Robert Bales, who shot Afghan civilians at the beginning of March, there **was an unborn child, which**, according to the U.S. military law, **is considered** another, 17th victim, is said in the message, published on Monday on the New York Times website.

This explains the discrepancy in the number of the victims of slaughter, which happened at night on the 11th March in Panjwai district in the southern Afghan province Kandahar. **Bales**, according to the investigation data, **left** his base, **headed** to one of the nearby villages and, **breaking** into the houses of **the local residents**, who then **were asleep**, **was shooting** them. Then **the American returned** to the base, and after some time **headed** to another village,

where he also **committed** murder. **The sergeant was detained** by the U.S. military, when he returned to the base for the second time.

Initially **both American and Afghan sources were reporting** that the victims the 38-year old Bales **were 16 people**, including nine children and three women. However, earlier this week **an accusation was presented** to the soldier of premeditated murder of 17 people.

'The Americans are right. One of the women was pregnant, that's why **they are talking** about 17 (victims)', **presents the New York Times** the words of the Kandahar province police chief Abdul Razak. Of the stage of pregnancy of the deceased woman **the policeman did not report**.

At the same time, **other Afghan authorities continue to insist** that the victims of the actions of the American soldier **were 16 people**.

'Foreigners have made a mistake. There **is** no 17th victim. According to our data, **they are 16**', **said** on Monday **the head of the Media centre of Kandahar province Ahmed Jawed Faisal**. He also **presented** a list of the name of the 16 victims and **informed**, that **none of the six wounded**, as at the time, **had died**.

As noted in the message, according to the U.S. military law, **the unborn child can be considered** a victim, disregarding whether **the murderer knew** that **his victim was** pregnant or not, and disregarding whether **he intentionally wanted to kill** the fetus or not.

The previous day it was reported that **families of the victims of the slaughter**, conducted by sergeant Bales, **have received** a financial compensation from the U.S. military against the official policy of **the Pentagon**, which usually **does not make** any payments for victims and damage caused during military actions.

Families of each of the killed Afghans have received around \$50 thousand, and **families of the wounded** - \$11 thousand. **Payments were made** in national currency Afghani and **totalled** \$866 thousand.

When the trial over Bales, who at present **is** already on the U.S. territory, **will take place is unknown**. However, if **the court finds** the sergeant **guilty**, **the highest measure of punishment threatens** him – a death penalty.

Source text 1: International Herald Tribune/ The Global Edition of the New York Times (March 26, 2012/ Monday)

Paying a Price Amid the Fog of War

41 HONG KONG — **Call** it assistance,/ **call** it regrettable,/ **call** it \$50,000 for each dead body,/

42 but **do not call** it compensation.

43 **The United States made** payments last weekend to **Afghan families/ whose relatives were**

44 **murdered** by an American soldier./ **My colleagues Matthew Rosenberg and Sangar**

45 **Rahimi report/ that the families received** \$50,000 per victim./ **The six people/ who were**

46 **wounded/ got** \$11,000 each./

47 **President Obama and senior military leaders *have expressed*** their regret over the killings,
48 just three weeks after having formally apologized for the burning of Korans at a U.S. air base
49 last month./

50 **An Afghan provincial official *described*** the money as “assistance,” as differentiated from a
51 payment that might be used in Pashtun society to make amends for a slight or a crime./ So, **no**
52 **absolution** here./

53 “**We are grateful** to the United States government for its help with the grieved families,”/ **the**
54 **official, Hajji Agha Lalai, told** Matt and Sangar./ “But **this cannot be counted** as
55 compensation for the deaths.”/

56 Also from their story:/ “In discussions before the payments were made, **American officials**
57 **were also careful to draw** a similar distinction, **saying** that/ **any eventual payments would be**
58 **out of compassion for the victims,**/ and that **Staff Sgt. Robert Bales,**/ the soldier accused of
59 killing the villagers,/ **would still face trial.**”

60 **My colleague in Kabul, Rod Nordland,** also **reports** that/ **the military’s initial report of 16**
61 **deaths has been changed**/ because, according to a senior Afghan police official, one of those
62 killed **was a pregnant woman.**/ **Her unborn baby**, apparently, **is being counted** as Victim
63 No. 17./ **Sergeant Bales has been charged** with killing 17 people./

64 **Some might see** the payments as reparations, compensation or justice;/ **others might call** it
65 payback, guilt or blood money./ In any event, of course, **the issue of payments** is a sensitive
66 one,/ and **it’s made** all the more thorny in wartime and in combat zones./

67 **Payments by the U.S. government or the military are** certainly not unprecedented,/ and
68 **tens of millions of dollars have been paid** since 2001 to Afghans and Iraqis for killings,
69 injuries and property damage not specifically related to combat./

70 **A Times article** in 2007, for example, **reported** on the case of two men fishing in the Tigris
71 River, in Saddam Hussein’s hometown of Tikrit:/

72 “**They held up** the fish in the air and **shouted** ‘Fish! Fish!’ **to show** they meant no harm,”/
73 **said** a U.S. Army report on the February 2006 incident./ When **an American shore patrol**
74 **drove up,**/ “**the deceased bent over to turn** the motor **off** of the boat,/ but **the C.F. shot** him
75 in the head as he bent down,”/ **the report said,**/ using shorthand for coalition forces, in this
76 case for members of the 101st Airborne Division./

77 A month later, **the army rejected** a relative’s compensation claim for the fisherman’s death,
78 **ruling** that/ **the shooting was** “combat activity” exempt from restitution under **the Foreign**
79 **Claims Act,**/ **the law** that **governs** payments to foreign citizens for damage done by
80 American forces operating abroad./

81 **The army agreed** to pay \$3,500 for the dead man’s boat, net and cellphone, which drifted off.

82 **A sampling of other war-related payments**, some accepted, some rejected:/

83 * In December, **cash payments were offered** by the United States to families of **24 Pakistani**
84 **Army soldiers/ who were killed** in their bunker by an errant American airstrike the previous
85 month./ **Those payments were refused.**/

86 “**Nobody is interested** in compensation,”/ **the Pakistani Army spokesman, Maj. Gen.**
87 **Athar Abbas, said** in a story in the Dawn newspaper./ “**It is** not in our military culture to take
88 money for a fallen soldier./ **It is abhorred./ We will take care of** our own.”/

89 * **The families of dozens of Pakistani tribesmen** killed in a U.S. drone strike last March
90 **rejected** Pakistani government offers of about \$3,500 for each death./ (An American official
91 **took issue with** Islamabad’s characterization of the strike,/ **saying**,/ “**These people weren’t**
92 **gathering** for a bake sale./ **They were** terrorists.”)/

93 * **A U.S. inquiry** in 2001 **found** that/ **American troops had killed** civilian refugees at No
94 Gun Ri during the Korean War,/ but **the U.S. government took** no legal responsibility for the
95 deaths and **declined** to apologize./ **The U.S. offer** to build a memorial and establish a
96 scholarship fund **was rejected** by the victims’ families.

97 “Of course **the U.S. government should pay** compensation/ — it’s the U.S. military’s fault,”/
98 **a survivor, Cho Kook-won, 78, told** The Associated Press./ **Mr. Cho said/ four of his**
99 **family members were** among **hundreds of Koreans/ who died** while taking shelter in a cave
100 in 1951, suffocated and burned by a U.S. Air Force napalm attack./

101 * **The United States authorized** \$198 million for the Filipino Veterans Equity Compensation
102 Fund to make direct cash payments to **some 18,000 Filipino veterans/ who fought** on the
103 Allied side during World War II./ **Veterans with American citizenship are entitled** to
104 \$15,000;/ **noncitizens can receive** \$9,000./

105 * **Canada has paid** more than \$1 million to **Afghans/ who suffered losses** in the war,
106 according to Defense Department figures cited by The Canadian Press./ **The settlements**
107 **ranged** from less than \$100 to as much as \$21,420./

108 “By definition, **war requires** a certain level of destruction,/ and **combatants are not required**
109 to treat every invasion like a massive slip-and-fall case,”/ **said Jonathan Turley, the legal**
110 **scholar**, in an online essay, “Wartime Compensation: The New Bomb and Buy Policy.”/

111 “**There have been** limited circumstances/ in which **the U.S. government has agreed** to pay
112 damages even though it wasn’t required to./ These primarily **have been** cases/ in which
113 **individuals were injured** in peacetime by military negligence./

114 “Thus, when **a Japanese fishing boat was exposed** to radiation during the testing of an
115 atomic bomb/ or **an Iranian airliner was** mistakenly **shot down** by a U.S. warship,/ **the U.S.**
116 **paid** compensation./

117 “The closest precedent for any Afghan claimants **is Grenada**,/ in which **the U.S. government**
118 **agreed** to pay \$1.6 million to people harmed in the military invasion./

119 “**The compensation was** a mistake./ **It is** one thing to allow families to receive general
120 humanitarian aid./ **It is** quite another to ‘compensate’ for our actions.”/

Source text 2: the New York Times (March 26, 2012/ Monday)

3 NATO Soldiers Killed by Afghan Security Officers

121 KABUL, Afghanistan — **Three NATO soldiers were shot** to death on Monday in two
122 separate confrontations involving Afghan security forces,/ **officials said**, adding to **a string of**
123 **“green on blue” killings**/ that **have complicated** the relationship between Afghanistan and its
124 Western allies./

125 In southern Helmand Province, **an Afghan National Army soldier turned** his weapon on
126 British soldiers, killing two of them before being shot to death,/ **said Ghulam Farooq**
127 **Parwani, deputy commander of the 215th Afghan National Army Corps.**/ **The shootings**
128 **took place** at the British-run headquarters of the Provincial Reconstruction Team in Lashkar
129 Gah, the capital of the province,/ **he said**.

130 **NATO confirmed**/ that **two of its soldiers had been killed** in an attack, but **did not identify**
131 their nationality./

132 Also, **the international military command in Afghanistan reported** that/ **one of its soldiers**
133 **had been shot** to death by an “alleged member of the Afghan local police” as **members of**
134 **the International Security Assistance Force approached** a police checkpoint./ **An ISAF**
135 **press release gave** no further details and **did not identify** the nationality of the victim./
136 **Afghan officials later said/ the shooting had taken place** in Paktika Province./

137 **Afghan local police forces are**, in general, armed militiamen/ **who are trained** by American
138 Special Operations troops and deputized as police officers under a program designed for the
139 defense of their home communities./ **The program has been** controversial/ because **many of**
140 **the local policemen were** former Taliban or criminal elements seeking to exercise control
141 over their areas./

142 Meanwhile, **Karilyn Bales, the wife of the American staff sergeant charged with killing**
143 **17 people in an Afghan village this month, appeared** in her first television interview on
144 Monday./ **She defended** her husband, Staff Sgt. Robert Bales, saying she did not believe that/
145 **he could have committed** such a massacre of civilians, including women and children./ “He
146 **loves** children,/ and **he would not do** that,”/ **she said** on NBC’s “Today” show./ “It’s
147 heartbreaking.”/

148 **She described** Sergeant Bales as “a very tough guy”/ **who did not appear** to suffer
149 symptoms of post-traumatic stress disorder, like nightmares./ But, **she said**,/ “he shielded me
150 from a lot of what he went through.”/

151 **Afghan and American officials have said/ American officials paid** the families of 16 dead
152 and 6 wounded victims on Saturday; at \$50,000 for each death and \$11,000 for each injury,
153 that totals \$866,000./

154 But **confusion over differences in the number of dead**— **Sergeant Bales’s charge sheet**
155 **from the United States military lists** 17, while **Afghan officials list** 16/ — **continued** on
156 Monday.

157 Early in the day, **an Afghan police official** in Kandahar Province,/ where **the killings took**
158 **place,/ said/ the 17th victim could be accounted for/** because a pregnant woman **was**
159 among the dead./ But **he** later **retracted** that assertion,/ and **American military officials**
160 **restated/** that **their investigation showed** evidence for 17 murder charges./

161 “At this time, **the evidence** available to the prosecution team **indicates** 17 victims of
162 premeditated murder and 6 victims of assault and attempted premeditated murder,”/ **Lt. Col.**
163 **Jimmie E. Cummings Jr. said** by telephone./ “There **were no wounded** who died, and **no**
164 **fetus.”/**

165 **He continued:/** “That **breaks down to/ 4 males, 4 females and 9 children were murdered./**
166 **One male, one woman and 4 children were wounded.”/**

APPENDIX 10A. Case study 3.3 U.S. Investigations: the Case of Afghan Ex-governor Abu Bakr.

Themes Analysis.

Themes in all texts have been marked as follows:

topical themes

textual themes

interpersonal themes

Target text: Lenta.ru (30 March, 2012)

США потребуют наказать афганского экс-губернатора за убийство американцев

- 1 /**США** требуют от властей Афганистана привлечь к ответственности бывшего /**USA** demand from authorities Afghanistan-of bring to account former
- 2 губернатора провинции Каписа,/ **которого** подозревают в причастности к governor province-of Kapisa-of/ **which** suspect in involvement to
- 3 убийству американцев./ **Об этом** сообщает The Wall Street Journal./ **Как стало** murder Americans-of/ **About this** reports The Wall Street Journal/ **As became**
- 4 **известно изданию из материалов расследования**,/ **которое** проводят **known publication-to from materials investigation-of/ which** conduct
- 5 американцы,/ **экс-губернатор Гулам Кавис Абу Бакр (Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr)** Americans/ **ex-governor Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr (Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr)**
- 6 в мае 2009 года организовал нападение смертника/ **в результате которого** in May 2009 year-of organised attack suicide-of/ **in result which-of**
- 7 погибли двое американских военнослужащих, в том числе подполковник Марк died two American military, in that number lieutenant Mark
- 8 Страттон (Mark Stratton)./
Stratton (Mark Stratton)/
- 9 /**Кроме того, как говорится в публикации**, экс-губернатора подозревают в /**Besides that, as said in publication**, ex-governor suspect in
- 10 заговоре с целью убийства послов США, Франции и Великобритании./
conspiracy with purpose murder-of ambassadors USA, France-of and UK-of/
- 11 /**Ранее** США уже обвиняли Абу Бакра в различных преступлениях, в том числе в /**Earlier** USA already accused-ing Abu Bakr in various crimes, in that number in

12 коррупции и вымогательстве./
corruption and extortion/

13 */До сих пор* администрация президента Афганистана Хамида Карзая
/Until now administration president Afghanistan-of Hamid Karzai-of

14 отказывалась привлекать Абу Бакра к ответственности, ссылаясь на недостаток
refused-ing bring Abu Bakr to account, citing on lack

15 улик./ *Сам экс-губернатор* обвинения отрицает./
evidence-of/ *Himself ex-governor* accusations denies/

16 */Карзай* назначил Абу Бакра губернатором в 2007 году, а через три года сместил
/Karzai appointed Abu Bakr governor in 2007 year, and in three years dismissed

17 с этой должности./ *Как говорится в публикации The Wall Street Journal,*
from this post/ *As said in publication The Wall Street Journal,*

18 бывший губернатор еще сохраняет влияние в своем регионе./ *В прошлом* он был
former governor still retains influence in his region/ *In past* he was

19 командиром моджахедов, связанных с движением "Хезб-и-Ислами" (Hezb-i-
commander mujaheddins, connected with movement 'Hezb-e-Islami' (Hezb-i-
Islami)./ *Это движение* было основано известным полевым командиром
Islami)/ *This movement* was founded known field commander-by

21 Гульбuddином Хекматиаром (Gulbuddin Hekmatyar), считавшимся лидером
Gulbuddin Hekmatyar (Gulbuddin Hekmatyar), considered leader

22 антисоветского сопротивления./ *В настоящее время* оно противостоит как
anti-Soviet resistance/ *In present time* it resists as

23 талибам, так и войскам западной коалиции./
Talibs so and troops Western coalition-of/

24 */Новые обвинения в адрес бывшего афганского губернатора* прозвучали на
/New allegations in address former Afghan governor sounded on

25 фоне отношений Вашингтона и Кабула./ *В Афганистане* вызвало возмущение то,
background relations-of Washington and Kabul/ *In Afghanistan* evoked indignation that

26 что/ *американцы* на военной базе Баграм сжигали экземпляры Корана и другие
that/ *Americans* at military base in Bagram burned-ing copies Quran-of and other

27 священные для мусульман книги./ *Недовольство присутствием американских*
holy for Muslims books/ *Dissatisfaction presence-with American*

28 *войск* усилилось после того, как/ *в ночь на 11 марта* старший сержант
troops intensified after that as/ *in night on 11 March* Staff Sergeant

29 американской армии Роберт Бэйлс, как утверждает сторона обвинения, застрелил
American army-of Robert Bales as states side prosecution-of shot

30 и зарезал в двух афганских деревнях 17 мирных жителей./ *В США* ряд политиков,

and slaughtered in two Afghan villages 17 civilian residents/ ***In USA*** row politicians-of
31 в свою очередь, высказывают недовольство нынешним афганским
in own turn express dissatisfaction current Afghan
32 руководством,/ ***которое*** они подозревают в коррупции./
government-with/ ***which*** they suspect in corruption/

Literally:

The U.S. are demanding that Afghanistan authorities prosecute former governor of the the Kapisa province, who is suspected of involvement in the murder of Americans. The Wall Street Journal reports this. As it became known to the publication from materials of the investigation carried out by Americans, ex-governor Ghulam Kavis Abu Bakr (Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr) in May 2009 organised a suicide attack as a result of which two American soldiers died including Lt. Col. Mark Stratton (Mark Stratton).

Besides, according to the publication, the ex-governor is suspected of conspiracy to murder of U.S., French and UK ambassadors.

Earlier the U.S. have already accused Abu Bakr of various crimes including corruption and extortion.

Until now administration of president of Afghanistan Hamid Karzai refused to prosecute Abu Bakr citing lack of evidence. The ex-governor denies the allegations.

Karzai appointed Abu Bakr as a governor in 2007 and three years later dismissed him from the post. According to the publication The Wall Street Journal, the ex-governor still retains influence in his region. In the past he was a mujaheddins' commander involved in the 'Hezb-e-Islami' (Hezb-i-Islami) movement. This movement was founded by a well-known warlord Gulbuddin Hekmatyar (Gulbuddin Hekmatyar) considered a leader of the anti-Soviet resistance. At present, it fights the Talib as well as troops of the Western coalition.

New allegations against Afghan ex-governor came amid complications of relations between Washington and Kabul. In Afghanistan it caused indignation that Americans at a military base Bagram were burning copies of the Quran and other holy for Muslims books. Dissatisfaction with the presence of American troops grew after the night of the 11th of March when the U.S. army Staff Sergeant Robert Bales, as the prosecutors state, shot and slaughtered 17 civilians in two Afghan villages. In the U.S. a number of politicians are expressing dissatisfaction with the current Afghan authorities, which they suspect of corruption.

Source text: The Wall Street Journal (1 April, 2012)

U.S. Blames Senior Afghan in Deaths

Americans Say They Have Proof Provincial Power Broker Ordered Attack That Killed Troops; Karzai Says Case Closed

33 KABUL— American officials are pressing the Afghan government to prosecute a former
34 governor for what U.S. investigators say is involvement in the killings of an American
35 lieutenant colonel and a U.S. servicewoman, as well as other alleged crimes./

36 President Hamid Karzai's administration has rejected requests to prosecute Ghulam Qawis
37 Abu Bakr for the killings and for alleged corruption, saying/ evidence is lacking./ Mr. Abu
38 Bakr,/ who remains a power broker in his province of Kapisa just north of Kabul,/ has denied
39 the U.S. allegations./

40 Mr. Karzai,/ who appointed Mr. Abu Bakr as governor in 2007 and removed him three years
41 later,/ has declared the Abu Bakr case to be closed./

42 The U.S. still considers pursuing the former governor a priority for Afghan law
43 enforcement,/ U.S. officials say./ "As far as we are concerned, the case is still open,"/ a
44 senior U.S. official says./

45 Relations between Mr. Karzai's administration and its U.S. backers have been increasingly
46 acrimonious after a spate of shooting attacks by Afghan troops on their U.S. allies and the
47 March massacre of civilians allegedly perpetrated by a U.S. soldier in Kandahar province./

48 Details of U.S. findings about Mr. Abu Bakr haven't been previously disclosed./ U.S.
49 investigators allege/ Mr. Abu Bakr ordered the May 2009 suicide bombing/ that killed Air
50 Force Lt. Col. Mark Stratton, 39 years old, and Senior Airman Ashton Goodman, a 21-year-
51 old servicewoman working with him, according to a summary of the investigation, shown to
52 The Wall Street Journal by the investigators./

53 The suicide attack also killed U.S. Army First Sergeant Blue Rowe of Whittier, Calif., and
54 Abdul Samad, an Afghan legal adviser./

55 The report also alleges that/ Mr. Abu Bakr plotted to kill U.S., French and British
56 ambassadors that November, and that/ he was involved in acts of extortion and corruption./

57 Mr. Abu Bakr denies the allegations and doesn't wish to speak to the media,/ said his son-in-
58 law, Mohammed Iqbal Safi, a member of Afghanistan's parliament./ Mr. Safi said/ rival
59 government officials were trying to frame his father-in-law, and have "poisoned the
60 Americans' minds."/

61 Appointed as governor by Mr. Karzai in 2007, Mr. Abu Bakr is a former mujahedeen
62 commander affiliated with the Hezb-i-Islami movement founded by warlord Gulbuddin
63 Hekmatyar./ Mr. Abu Bakr has met regularly with senior Hezb-i-Islami insurgent
64 commanders in Kapisa, providing them with weapons, police vehicles and lists of people
65 cooperating with coalition troops, according to investigators./

66 Many prominent members of Hezb-i-Islami have chosen to join Mr. Karzai's administration,
67 saying/ they have split from the insurgent wing of the group./ And on Thursday, Hezb-i-
68 Islami suspended talks with the U.S. and Afghan governments,/ as the Taliban did this month,
69 in another set back to the U.S.-led coalition's exit strategy./

70 /"Abu Bakr is being protected/ because he is connected with the political parties/ that
71 represent power—in this case, Hezb-i-Islami,"/ says Jean d'Amécourt, the former ambassador
72 of France,/ which oversees security in Kapisa./

73 /Mr. Karzai's chief spokesman, Aimal Faizi, said/ Mr. Abu Bakr "is not protected by anyone
74 in the Afghan government," adding that/ "we find such allegations and accusations baseless."/

75 /U.S. investigators allege that/ witness statements, other documents and wiretaps show/ Mr.
76 Abu Bakr has been routinely extorting from contractors a share of the funds/ they received
77 from the U.S. military./

78 /In early 2009, as corruption allegations against Mr. Abu Bakr mounted, the Provincial
79 Reconstruction Team, a U.S. military unit overseeing the development projects, broke off
80 almost all contact with him, a decision/ that would direct aid money to rivals./

81 /Mr. Abu Bakr subsequently invited the American PRT commander for Kapisa to an
82 unscheduled security meeting on May 26,/ U.S. officials say./

83 /By coincidence, the convoy of Col. Stratton, commander of the PRT in neighboring Panjshir
84 province, was traveling that morning on the same road./

85 /Col. Stratton and Airman Goodman were weeks away from the end of their deployments./
86 Their families say/ they were both passionate about development work/—which included
87 helping to build a road through the Panjshir valley./

88 **Emails from Afghanistan**

89 /**Read** some email exchanges between Lt. Col. Mark Stratton and his mother, Jan York./

Mom.

Thank you so much for the package(s) - the
at once. Sometimes it takes a week to get th
sometimes it takes 3 weeks but I have receiv
goodies and gifts are awesome and the Panjs
paper/pens.

It is too bad about Wolf bay Lodge -- I reme
also remember Mike getting his finger stuck
also remember Little PopPop asking for bou
Perhaps they will rebuild it better than befor

90 /"This road is probably the single greatest thing I have accomplished in my career,"/ Col.
91 Stratton wrote home in an email 11 days before his death./

92 /As the convoy was traveling through an intersection, a suicide bomber slammed his
93 explosives-laden Toyota Corolla into the Humvee/ that carried Col. Stratton and Airman
94 Goodman./

95 /Col. Stratton, a native of Alabama, left behind his wife and three small children./ Airman
96 Goodman, from Indianapolis, was unmarried./

97 /Shortly after the blast, according to the report, Hezb-i-Islami issued a statement taking
98 responsibility for killing the PRT commander for Kapisa,/ who wasn't in the vicinity of the
99 attack./

100 /The statement gave "every impression/ it was a targeted murder"/ that claimed the wrong
101 victim,/ U.S. findings say.

102 /Sources told the investigators that/ **the bombing** was planned by senior police commanders
103 in Kapisa and carried out by Hezb-i-Islami insurgents on Mr. Abu Bakr's orders, according to
104 the findings./ **Police supervisors** told a Kapisa police officer probing the attack to drop his
105 inquiry,/ **the findings** said./

106 /**A few months after the strike on the PRT convoy**, another attack was in the works./ **The**
107 **U.S., French and U.K. ambassadors to Kabul** were supposed to visit Kapisa, accompanied
108 by government ministers, in November 2009./ **According to U.S. investigation findings**, Mr.
109 Abu Bakr's associates armed local insurgents with rocket-propelled grenades and informed
110 them about the time and location of the meeting./ **This time**, the coalition got wind of the plot
111 in time./

112 /**At about 11 p.m. the night before the planned visit**, Mr. d'Amecourt, the former French
113 ambassador, says/ **he** received calls from U.S. and British intelligence representatives warning
114 him that/ **an ambush** was being prepared./ **He** said/ **he** had seen no evidence Mr. Abu Bakr
115 was personally responsible./

116 /**U.S. officials** say/ **they** have wiretaps and statements by over a dozen well-placed sources in
117 the Afghan government and law enforcement agencies/ **that** prove their allegations against Mr.
118 Abu Bakr./

119 /**In February 2010**, the Major Crimes Task Force,/ **which** includes carefully vetted Afghan
120 investigators and coalition advisers,/ began a formal investigation into allegations against Mr.
121 Abu Bakr./ **The then commander of coalition forces, U.S. Army Gen. David Petraeus**,
122 handed the file outlining these allegations to Mr. Karzai during a meeting in Kabul that
123 summer,/ **U.S. officials** said./

124 /**In August 2010**, following that meeting, Mr. Karzai suspended Mr. Abu Bakr from his
125 governor's job./

126 /**But the Afghan government** has repeatedly rejected American calls to prosecute the former
127 governor./ **Last year**, Afghan prosecutors were removed from the case and sent to outlying
128 provinces,/ **U.S. officials** said./

129 /**Witnesses**, meanwhile, were pressured by Mr. Abu Bakr's associates to change their
130 statements,/ **U.S. investigators** say, according to the summary of findings./

131 /**Afghan Deputy Attorney General Rahmatullah Nazari** said/ **the case** was shut down last
132 year due to lack of evidence./ **He** said/ **there** was no government effort to cover up evidence.

133 /**Mr. Karzai**, asked about Mr. Abu Bakr in a recent interview with The Wall Street Journal,
134 said/ **the matter** was closed./

135 /"**The issue** has been going on for almost two years now,"/ **he** explained./ "**When the U.S.**
136 **military came to me repeatedly** I called a meeting of the judicial law enforcement body, the
137 entire body, the anticorruption department, the judiciary, the justice department, the Attorney
138 General/...**they** all told me unanimously that/ **the U.S.** has not provided any evidence other
139 than tape recordings."/

140 /**Asked whether he shouldn't have fired Mr. Abu Bakr after all**, Mr. Karzai said:/ "Well,
141 **that's** a different issue."/

142 /Wiretaps aren't usually admissible as evidence under Afghan law./ U.S. officials say/ they
143 have plenty of additional evidence/ that would be admissible in court, and that/ they won't
144 give up on efforts to bring Mr. Abu Bakr to justice./

145 /"We have very long memories,"/ a U.S. official says./

Corrections & Amplifications

An earlier version of this article failed to mention that U.S. Army First Sergeant Blue Rowe of Whittier, Calif., and Abdul Samad, an Afghan legal adviser, also died in the suicide attack that killed Lt. Col. Mark Stratton and Senior Airman Ashton Goodman.

—Yaroslav Trofimov and Habib Khan Totakhil contributed to this article.

Accused

Ex-governor shadowed by allegations

- 2007 President Hamid Karzai names Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr, left, an affiliate of insurgent group Hezb-i-Islami, governor of Kapisa province
- Early 2009 Citing corruption, U.S. development team in Kapisa breaks off work with Abu Bakr
- May 26 Abu Bakr calls meeting with PRT commander. After suicide bomber attacks a U.S. convoy, killing 3 Americans, Hezb-i-Islami says it killed Kapisa PRT commander—but he was far from the blast, and uninjured
- November Coalition gets wind of plot to attack ambassadors on visit to Kapisa. U.S. later blames plot on Abu Bakr and associates
- February 2010 Major Crimes Task Force opens investigation
- Summer 2010 Gen. David Petraeus gives Karzai a file of allegations against Abu Bakr. In August, Karzai removes Abu Bakr from governorship
- 2011 Afghan attorney general says Abu Bakr case is closed

WSJ research; U.S. investigators

APPENDIX 10B. Case study 3.3 U.S. Investigations: the Case of Afghan Ex-governor Abu Bakr.

Participants and Processes Analysis.

Participants and processes in all texts have been marked as follows:

participants

processes

Target text: Lenta.ru (30 March, 2012)

США потребуют наказать афганского экс-губернатора за убийство американцев

- 1 /**США требуют** от властей Афганистана привлечь к ответственности бывшего /**USA demand** from authorities Afghanistan-of bring to account former
- 2 губернатора провинции Каписа,/ **которого подозревают** в причастности к governor province-of Kapisa-of/ **which suspect** in involvement to
- 3 убийству американцев./ Об этом **сообщает** The Wall Street Journal./ Как стало murder Americans-of/ About this **reports** The Wall Street Journal/ As became
- 4 известно изданию из материалов расследования,/ которое **проводят** known publication-to from materials investigation-of/ which **conduct**
- 5 **американцы,/ экс-губернатор Гулам Кавис Абу Бакр (Ghulam Qawis Abu Americans/ ex-governor Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr (Ghulam Qawis Abu**
- 6 **Bakr)** в мае 2009 года **организовал** нападение смертника/ в результате которого Bakr) in May 2009 year-of **organised** attack suicide-of/ in result which-of
- 7 **погибли двое американских военнослужащих**, в том числе подполковник Марк **died two American military**, in that number lieutenant Mark
- 8 Страттон (Mark Stratton)./
Stratton (Mark Stratton)/
- 9 /Кроме того, как говорится в публикации, экс-губернатора **подозревают** в /Besides that, as said in publication, **ex-governor suspect** in
- 10 заговоре с целью убийства послов США, Франции и Великобритании./ conspiracy with purpose murder-of ambassadors USA, France-of and UK-of/

11 /Ранее **США** уже *обвиняли* Абу Бакра в различных преступлениях, в том числе в /Earlier USA already **accused-ing** Abu Bakr in various crimes, in that number in

12 коррупции и вымогательстве./
corruption and extortion/

13 /До сих пор **администрация президента Афганистана Хамида Карзая**
/Until now **administration president Afghanistan-of Hamid Karzai-of**

14 **отказывалась привлекать** Абу Бакра к ответственности, ссылаясь на недостаток
refused-ing bring Abu Bakr to account, citing on lack

15 **улик.**/ **Сам экс-губернатор обвинения отрицает.**/
evidence-of/ **Himself ex-governor accusations *denies***/

16 /**Карзай назначил** Абу Бакра губернатором в 2007 году, а через три года
/Karzai **appointed** Abu Bakr governor in 2007 year, and in three years

17 **сместил** с этой должности./ Как говорится в публикации The Wall Street Journal,
dismissed from this post/ As said in publication The Wall Street Journal,

18 **бывший губернатор** еще *сохраняет* влияние в своем регионе./ В прошлом **он**
former governor still retains influence in his region/ In past **he**

19 **был** командиром моджахедов, связанных с движением "Хезб-и-Ислами" (Hezb-i-
was commander mujaheddins, connected with movement 'Hezb-e-Islami' (Hezb-i-
Islami)./ **Это движение было основано** известным полевым командиром
Islami)/ **This movement was founded** known field commander-by

20 Гульбуддином Хекматиаром (Gulbuddin Hekmatyar), считавшимся лидером
Gulbuddin Hekmatyar (Gulbuddin Hekmatyar), considered leader

21 антисоветского сопротивления./ В настоящее время **оно противостоит** как
anti-Soviet resistance/ In present time **it resists** as

22 талибам, так и войскам западной коалиции./
Talibas so and troops Western coalition-of/

24 /**Новые обвинения в адрес бывшего афганского губернатора прозвучали** на
/New allegations in address former Afghan governor **sounded** on

25 фоне отношений Вашингтона и Кабула./ В Афганистане *вызывало возмущение*
background relations-of Washington and Kabul/ In Afghanistan **evoked indignation**

26 то, что/ **американцы** на военной базе Баграм *сжигали* экземпляры Корана и
that that/ **Americans** at military base in Bagram burned-ing copies Quran-of and

27 другие священные для мусульман книги./ **Недовольство присутствием**
other holy for Muslims books/ **Dissatisfaction presence-with**

28 **американских войск усилилось** после того, как/ в ночь на 11 марта **старший**
American troops intensified after that as/ in night on 11 March **Staff**

29 **сержант американской армии Роберт Бэйлс**, как утверждает сторона

Sergeant American army-of Robert Bales as states side

30 обвинения, *застрелил и зарезал* в двух афганских деревнях 17 мирных жителей./ prosecution-of *shot* and *slaughtered* in two Afghan villages 17 civilian residents/

31 В США **ряд политиков**, в свою очередь, *высказывают недовольство*
In USA **row politicians-of** in own turn *express dissatisfaction*

32 нынешним афганским руководством,/ которое **они подозревают** в коррупции./ current Afghan government-with/ which **they suspect** in corruption/

Literally:

The U.S. are demanding that Afghanistan authorities prosecute former governor of the the Kapisa province, who is suspected of involvement in the murder of Americans. The Wall Street Journal reports this. As it became known to the publication from materials of the investigation carried out by Americans, ex-governor Ghulam Kavis Abu Bakr (Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr) in May 2009 organised a suicide attack as a result of which two American soldiers died including Lt. Col. Mark Stratton (Mark Stratton).

Besides, according to the publication, the ex-governor is suspected of conspiracy to murder of U.S., French and UK ambassadors.

Earlier the U.S. have already accused Abu Bakr of various crimes including corruption and extortion.

Until now administration of president of Afghanistan Hamid Karzai refused to prosecute Abu Bakr citing lack of evidence. The ex-governor denies the allegations.

Karzai appointed Abu Bakr as a governor in 2007 and three years later dismissed him from the post. According to the publication The Wall Street Journal, the ex-governor still retains influence in his region. In the past he was a mujaheddins' commander involved in the 'Hezb-e-Islami' (Hezb-i-Islami) movement. This movement was founded by a well-known warlord Gulbuddin Hekmatyar (Gulbuddin Hekmatyar) considered a leader of the anti-Soviet resistance. At present, it fights the Talibas as well as troops of the Western coalition.

New allegations against Afghan ex-governor came amid complications of relations between Washington and Kabul. In Afghanistan it caused indignation that Americans at a military base Bagram were burning copies of the Quran and other holy for Muslims books. Dissatisfaction with the presence of American troops grew after the night of the 11th of March when the U.S. army Staff Sergeant Robert Bales, as the prosecutors state, shot and slaughtered 17 civilians in two Afghan villages. In the U.S. a number of politicians are expressing dissatisfaction with the current Afghan authorities, which they suspect of corruption.

Source text: The Wall Street Journal (1 April, 2012)

U.S. Blames Senior Afghan in Deaths

Americans Say They Have Proof Provincial Power Broker Ordered Attack That Killed Troops; Karzai Says Case Closed

33 KABUL— /American officials *are pressing* the Afghan government to prosecute a former
34 governor for what U.S. investigators say is involvement in the killings of an American
35 lieutenant colonel and a U.S. servicewoman, as well as other alleged crimes./

36 /President Hamid Karzai's administration *has rejected* requests to prosecute Ghulam
37 Qawis Abu Bakr for the killings and for alleged corruption, saying/ **evidence is lacking.**/ Mr.
38 **Abu Bakr,** /who *remains* a power broker in his province of Kapisa just north of Kabul,/ **has**
39 **denied** the U.S. allegations./

40 /Mr. Karzai,/ **who appointed** Mr. Abu Bakr as governor in 2007 and **removed** him three
41 years later,/ **has declared** the Abu Bakr case to be closed./

42 /The U.S. still *considers* pursuing the former governor a priority for Afghan law
43 enforcement,/ **U.S. officials say.**/ "As far as we are concerned, **the case is still open,**"/ a
44 senior U.S. official says./

45 /Relations between Mr. Karzai's administration and its U.S. backers *have been*
46 increasingly acrimonious after a spate of shooting attacks by Afghan troops on their U.S.
47 allies and the March massacre of civilians allegedly perpetrated by a U.S. soldier in Kandahar
48 province./

49 /Details of U.S. findings about Mr. Abu Bakr *haven't been* previously *disclosed.*/ U.S.
50 **investigators allege**/ Mr. Abu Bakr *ordered* the May 2009 suicide bombing/ **that killed** Air
51 Force Lt. Col. Mark Stratton, 39 years old, and Senior Airman Ashton Goodman, a 21-year-
52 old servicewoman working with him, according to a summary of the investigation, shown to
53 The Wall Street Journal by the investigators./

54 /The suicide attack also *killed* U.S. Army First Sergeant Blue Rowe of Whittier, Calif., and
55 Abdul Samad, an Afghan legal adviser./

56 /The report also *alleges* that/ Mr. Abu Bakr *plotted* to kill U.S., French and British
57 ambassadors that November, and that/ **he was involved** in acts of extortion and corruption./

58 /Mr. Abu Bakr *denies* the allegations and doesn't wish to speak to the media,/ **said his son-**
59 **in-law, Mohammed Iqbal Safi, a member of Afghanistan's parliament.**/ Mr. Safi *said*/
60 **rival government officials were trying** to frame his father-in-law, and have "poisoned the
61 Americans' minds."/

62 /Appointed as governor by Mr. Karzai in 2007, Mr. Abu Bakr is a former mujahedeen
63 commander affiliated with the Hezb-i-Islami movement founded by warlord Gulbuddin
64 Hekmatyar./ Mr. Abu Bakr *has met* regularly with senior Hezb-i-Islami insurgent
65 commanders in Kapisa, providing them with weapons, police vehicles and lists of people
66 cooperating with coalition troops, according to investigators./

67 /Many prominent members of Hezb-i-Islami *have chosen* to join Mr. Karzai's
68 administration, saying/ **they have split** from the insurgent wing of the group./ And on
69 Thursday, **Hezb-i-Islami suspended** talks with the U.S. and Afghan governments,/ as **the**
70 **Taliban did** this month, in another set back to the U.S.-led coalition's exit strategy./

71 /"Abu Bakr **is being protected**/ because he **is connected** with the political parties/ that
72 **represent** power—in this case, Hezb-i-Islami,"/ says Jean d'Amécourt, the former
73 ambassador of France,/ which **oversees** security in Kapisa./

74 /Mr. Karzai's chief spokesman, Aimal Faizi, **said**/ Mr. Abu Bakr "**is not protected** by
75 anyone in the Afghan government," adding that/ "**we find** such allegations and accusations
76 baseless."/

77 /U.S. investigators **allege** that/ **witness statements, other documents and wiretaps show/**
78 **Mr. Abu Bakr has been** routinely **extorting** from contractors a share of the funds/ **they**
79 **received** from the U.S. military./

80 /In early 2009, as corruption allegations against Mr. Abu Bakr mounted, **the Provincial**
81 **Reconstruction Team, a U.S. military unit overseeing the development projects, broke**
82 **off** almost all contact with him, a decision/ **that would direct** aid money to rivals./

83 /Mr. Abu Bakr subsequently **invited** the American PRT commander for Kapisa to an
84 unscheduled security meeting on May 26,/ **U.S. officials say**./

85 /By coincidence, **the convoy of Col. Stratton, commander of the PRT in neighboring**
86 **Panjshir province, was traveling** that morning on the same road./

87 /Col. Stratton and Airman Goodman **were** weeks away from the end of their deployments./
88 **Their families say/ they were** both passionate about development work—**which included**
89 helping to build a road through the Panjshir valley./

90 Emails from Afghanistan

91 /Read some email exchanges between Lt. Col. Mark Stratton and his mother, Jan York./

Mom,

Thank you so much for the package(s) - the
at once. Sometimes it takes a week to get th
sometimes it takes 3 weeks but I have receiv
goodies and gifts are awesome and the Panjs
paper/pens.

It is too bad about Wolf bay Lodge -- I reme
also remember Mike getting his finger stuck
also remember Little PopPop asking for bou
Perhaps they will rebuild it better than befor

92 /"This road **is** probably the single greatest thing **I have accomplished** in my career,"/ **Col.**
93 **Stratton wrote** home in an email 11 days before his death./

94 /As the convoy was traveling through an intersection, **a suicide bomber slammed** his
95 explosives-laden Toyota Corolla into the Humvee/ **that carried** Col. Stratton and Airman
96 Goodman./

97 /**Col. Stratton, a native of Alabama, left** behind his wife and three small children./ **Airman**
98 **Goodman, from Indianapolis, was unmarried**./

99 /Shortly after the blast, according to the report, **Hezb-i-Islami issued** a statement taking
100 responsibility for killing the PRT commander for Kapisa,/ **who wasn't** in the vicinity of the
101 attack./

102 /**The statement gave** "every impression/ **it was** a targeted murder"/ **that claimed** the wrong
103 victim,/ **U.S. findings say.**

104 /**Sources told** the investigators that/ **the bombing was planned** by senior police commanders
105 in Kapisa and carried out by Hezb-i-Islami insurgents on Mr. Abu Bakr's orders, according to
106 the findings./ **Police supervisors told** a Kapisa police officer probing the attack to drop his
107 inquiry,/ **the findings said./**

108 /A few months after the strike on the PRT convoy, **another attack was** in the works./ **The**
109 **U.S., French and U.K. ambassadors to Kabul were supposed** to visit Kapisa, accompanied
110 by government ministers, in November 2009./ According to U.S. investigation findings, **Mr.**
111 **Abu Bakr's associates armed** local insurgents with rocket-propelled grenades and informed
112 them about the time and location of the meeting./ This time, **the coalition got wind** of the plot
113 in time./

114 /At about 11 p.m. the night before the planned visit, **Mr. d'Amecourt, the former French**
115 **ambassador, says/ he received** calls from U.S. and British intelligence representatives
116 warning him that/ **an ambush was being prepared./ He said/ he had seen** no evidence Mr.
117 Abu Bakr was personally responsible./

118 /**U.S. officials say/ they have** wiretaps and statements by over a dozen well-placed sources in
119 the Afghan government and law enforcement agencies/ **that prove** their allegations against
120 Mr. Abu Bakr./

121 /In February 2010, **the Major Crimes Task Force,**/ **which includes** carefully vetted Afghan
122 investigators and coalition advisers,/ **began** a formal investigation into allegations against Mr.
123 Abu Bakr./ **The then commander of coalition forces, U.S. Army Gen. David Petraeus,**
124 **handed** the file outlining these allegations to Mr. Karzai during a meeting in Kabul that
125 summer,/ **U.S. officials said./**

126 /In August 2010, following that meeting, **Mr. Karzai suspended** Mr. Abu Bakr from his
127 governor's job./

128 /**But the Afghan government has** repeatedly **rejected** American calls to prosecute the former
129 governor./ Last year, **Afghan prosecutors were removed** from the case and sent to outlying
130 provinces,/ **U.S. officials said./**

131 /**Witnesses**, meanwhile, **were pressured** by Mr. Abu Bakr's associates to change their
132 statements,/ **U.S. investigators say**, according to the summary of findings./

133 /**Afghan Deputy Attorney General Rahmatullah Nazari said/ the case was shut down** last
134 year due to lack of evidence./ **He said/ there was** no government effort to cover up evidence.

135 /**Mr. Karzai**, asked about Mr. Abu Bakr in a recent interview with The Wall Street Journal,
136 **said/ the matter was closed./**

137 /"The issue **has been going on** for almost two years now,"/ **he explained./** "When the U.S.
138 military came to me repeatedly **I called** a meeting of the judicial law enforcement body, the

139 entire body, the anticorruption department, the judiciary, the justice department, the Attorney
140 General/...**they all told** me unanimously that/ **the U.S. has not provided** any evidence other
141 than tape recordings."/

142 /Asked whether he shouldn't have fired Mr. Abu Bakr after all, **Mr. Karzai said:**/ "Well,
143 **that's** a different issue."/

144 **/Wiretaps aren't** usually admissible as evidence under Afghan law./ **U.S. officials say/ they**
145 **have** plenty of additional evidence/ **that would be** admissible in court, and that/ **they won't**
146 **give up** on efforts to bring Mr. Abu Bakr to justice./

147 /"**We have** very long memories,"/ **a U.S. official says.**/

Corrections & Amplifications

An earlier version of this article failed to mention that U.S. Army First Sergeant Blue Rowe of Whittier, Calif., and Abdul Samad, an Afghan legal adviser, also died in the suicide attack that killed Lt. Col. Mark Stratton and Senior Airman Ashton Goodman.

—Yaroslav Trofimov and Habib Khan Totakhil contributed to this article.

Accused

Ex-governor shadowed by allegations

- 2007 President Hamid Karzai names Ghulam Qawis Abu Bakr, left, an affiliate of insurgent group Hezb-i-Islami, governor of Kapisa province
- Early 2009 Citing corruption, U.S. development team in Kapisa breaks off work with Abu Bakr
- May 26 Abu Bakr calls meeting with PRT commander. After suicide bomber attacks a U.S. convoy, killing 3 Americans, Hezb-i-Islami says it killed Kapisa PRT commander—but he was far from the blast, and uninjured
- November Coalition gets wind of plot to attack ambassadors on visit to Kapisa. U.S. later blames plot on Abu Bakr and associates
- February 2010 Major Crimes Task Force opens investigation
- Summer 2010 Gen. David Petraeus gives Karzai a file of allegations against Abu Bakr. In August, Karzai removes Abu Bakr from governorship
- 2011 Afghan attorney general says Abu Bakr case is closed

WSJ research; U.S. investigators

References

Allison, R. (2009) 'The Russian Case for Military Intervention in Georgia: International Law, Norms and Political Calculation', *European Security*, 18(2), pp. 173-200.

Al-Hejin, B. (2012) 'Linking Critical Discourse Analysis With Translation Studies: An Example from BBC News', *Journal of Language and Politics*, 11(3), pp. 311-335.

Allen, T. and J. Seaton (eds.) (1999) *The Media of Conflict: War Reporting and Representations of Ethnic Violence*. London and New York: Zed Books.

Bache, C. (2010) 'Hjelmslev's Glossematics: A Source of Inspiration to Systemic Functional Linguistics?', *Journal of Pragmatics*, 42, pp. 2562-2578.

Bacon, F. (1605/1998) 'The Advancement of Learning'. *Renaissance Editions, An Online Repository of Works Printed in English Between the Years 1477 and 1799*. Available at: www.luminarium.org/renaissance-editions/adv1.htm. (Accessed: 12 February 2013)

Bani, S. (2006) 'An Analysis of Press Translation Process', K. Conway and S. Bassnett (eds.) *Translation in Global News: Proceedings of the conference held at the University of Warwick*. Coventry: University of Warwick, Centre for Translation and Comparative Cultural Studies, pp.35-45.

Bastin, G. (2011) 'Adaptation', M. Baker and G. Saldanha (eds.) *Routledge Encyclopedia of Translation Studies*. Adigdon: Routledge, pp. 3-6.

Bednarek, M. and Caple, H. (2012) *News Discourse*. London and New York: Continuum.

Bellos, D. (2011) *Is That a Fish in Your Ear? Translation and the Meaning of Everything*. New York: Faber and Faber.

Baker, M. (2006) *Translation and Conflict: A Narrative Account*. London and New York: Routledge.

Baker, M. (2010) 'Reframing Conflict in Translation', M. Baker (ed.) *Critical Readings in Translation Studies*. London and New York: Routledge, pp.113-129.

Baker, M. (2011) *In Other Words: A Coursebook on Translation*, 2nd revd edn, Abingdon: Routledge.

Bassnett, S. (2005) 'Bringing the News Back Home: Strategies of Acculturation and

Foreignization', *Language and Intercultural Communication. Special Issue: Global News Translation*, 5(2), pp. 120-30.

Berger P. L. and T. Luckman (1967) *The Social Construction of Reality: A Treatise in the Sociology of Knowledge*. London: Allen Lane.

Bertrand, I. and P. Hughes (2005) *Media Research Methods: Audiences, Institutions, Texts*. Basingstoke and New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Bielsa, E. (2009) 'Globalization, Political Violence and Translation: An Introduction',

E. Bielsa and C.W. Hughes (eds.) *Globalization, Political Violence and Translation*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, pp. 1-24.

E. Bielsa and C.W. Hughes (2009) *Globalization, Political Violence and Translation*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Bielsa, E. and S. Bassnett (2009) *Translation in Global News*. London and New York: Routledge.

Bird, T. and A. Marshall (2011) *Afghanistan: How the West Lost Its Way*. New Haven and London: Yale University Press.

Bisley, N. (2007) *Rethinking Globalization*. Basingstoke and New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Bloomaert, J. (1999) 'The Debate Is Open', J. Bloomaert (ed.) *Language Ideological Debates*. Berlin and New York: Mouton de Gruyter, pp. 1-38.

Blum-Kulka, S. (1986) 'Shifts of Cohesion and Coherence in Translation', L. Venuti (ed.) (2004) *The Translation Studies Reader*. London and New York: Routledge, p. 290-305.

Bowe, H. and K. Martin (2007) *Communication Across Cultures: Mutual Understanding in a Global World*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Boyd-Barrett, O. (2010) 'Media Imperialism Reformulated', D. K. Thussu (ed.) *International Communication: A Reader*. London and New York: Routledge, pp. 139-53.

Brezhneva, A. and D. Ukhova (2013) 'Russia as a Humanitarian Aid Donor', *Oxfam Discussion Papers*. Available at www.oxfam.org/sites/www.oxfam.org/files/dp-russia-humanitarian-donor-150713-en.pdf. (Accessed: 18 January 2014).

Brown, R. (2005) 'Getting to War: Communications and Mobilization in the 2002-03 Iraq Crisis', P. Seib (ed.) *Media and Conflict in the Twenty-First Century*. New York and Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, pp. 57-81.

Butler C. (2003) *Structure and Function: A Guide to Three Major Structural-Functional Theories. Pt.2: From Clause to Discourse and Beyond*. Amsterdam: J. Benjamins.

Candlin C. and J. Crichton (2011) *Discourse of Deficit*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Carruthers, S. L. (2011) *The Media at War*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Castells, M. (2010) 'The New Public Sphere: Global Civil Society, Communication Networks, and Global Governance', D. K. Thussu (ed.) *International Communication: A Reader*. London and New York: Routledge, pp. 36-47.

Chesterman, A. (1998) *Contrastive Functional Analysis*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: J. Benjamins.

Chilton, P. (2004) *Analysing Political Discourse: Theory and Practice*. London and New York: Routledge.

Chilton, P.A. and C. Schäffner (eds) (2002) *Politics as Text and Talk: Analytic Approaches to Political Discourse*. Amsterdam: J. Benjamins.

Chilton, P.A. and C. Schäffner (2011) 'Discourse and Politics', T. A. Van Dijk (ed.) *Discourse Studies: A Multidisciplinary Introduction*. London: Sage, pp. 303-30.

Conboy, M. (2007) *The Language of the News*. Abingdon: Routledge.

Conway, K. (2010) 'News Translation and Cultural Resistance', *Journal of International and Intercultural Communication*. Vol.3 (3), August (2010), pp. 187-205.

Cordesman, A. H. and A. A. Burke (2012) *Transition in the Afghanistan-Pakistan War: How Does this War End?* Washington D.C.: Center for Strategic and International Studies.

Cronin, M. (2003) *Translation and Globalization*. London and New York: Routledge.

Davis, A. (2007) *The Mediation of Power: A Critical Introduction*. London and New York: Routledge.

Der Derian, J. and M. J. Shapiro (eds.) (1989) *International/ Intertextual Relations*. New York: Macmillan.

Dinstein, Y. (2010) *The Conduct of Hostilities Under the Law of International Armed Conflict*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Erjavec, K. and Z. Volčič (2007) 'The Kosovo Battle: Media's Recontextualization of the Serbian Nationalistic Discourses', *The Harvard International Journal of Press/Politics*, 12 (3), pp. 67-86.

Eschbach, A. (1983) 'Prolegomena of a Possible Historiography of Semiotics. The Development of a Semiotical Fact', A. Eschbach and J. Trabant (eds.) *History of Semiotics*. Amsterdam, Philadelphia: J. Benjamins, pp. 25-38.

Fairclough, N. (1995) *Critical Discourse Analysis: The Critical Study of Language*. London: Longman.

Fairclough, N. (1998) 'Political Discourse in the Media: An Analytical Framework,' A. Bell and P. Garrett (eds.) *Approaches to Media Discourse*. Oxford, Malden, Carlton: Blackwell Publishing, pp. 142-62.

Fairclough, N. (2001) *Language and Power*. Harlow: Longman.

Firth, J. R. (1956/1968) 'Linguistics and Translation' in F. R. Palmer (ed.) *Selected Papers of J. R. Firth 1952-59*. London: Longman, pp. 84-95.

Fowler, R. (1991) *Language in the News: Discourse and Ideology in the Press*. London and New York: Routledge.

Fowler, R., Hodge B., Kress G. and T. Trew (1979) *Language and Control*. London, Boston and Henley: Routledge and Kegan Paul.

Gahrton, P. (2010) *Georgia: Pawn in the New Great Game*. London and New York: Pluto Press.

Gilboa, E. (2005) 'The CNN Effect: The Search for a Communication Theory of International Relations', *Political Communication*, 22(1) pp. 27-44.

Gregory, M. (2002) 'Phasal Analysis Within Communication Linguistics: two contrastive discourses', P. Fries, M. Cummings, D. Lockwood and W. Sprueill (eds) *Relations and Functions within and around Language*, London: Continuum, pp. 316–345.

Gutiérrez, M. (2006) 'Journalism and the Language Divide', K. Conway and S. Bassnett (eds.) *Translation in Global News: Proceedings of the conference held at the University of Warwick*. Coventry: University of Warwick, Centre for Translation and Comparative Cultural Studies, pp. 29-33.

Hachten, W. A. & J. F. Scotton (2007) *The World News Prism: Global Information in a Satellite Age*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.

Hallin, D. and P. Mancini (2004) *Comparing Media Systems: Three Models of Media and Politics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Halliday, M.A.K. (1970) 'Language structure and language function', J. Lyons (ed.) (1970) *New Horizons in Linguistics*. Harmondsworth: Penguin, pp. 140-65.

Halliday, M.A.K. (1973) *Explorations in the Functions of Language*. London: Edward Arnold.

Halliday, M.A.K. (1977) 'Text as Semantic Choice in Social Contexts', J. Webster (ed.) (2002) *Linguistic Studies of Text and Discourse*. London and New York: Continuum, pp. 23-81.

Halliday, M.A.K. (1978) *Language as Social Semiotic: The Social Interpretation of Language and Meaning*. London: Edward Arnold.

Halliday, M.A.K. and R. Hasan (1989) *Language, Context and Text: Aspects of Language in a Social-Semiotic Perspective*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Halliday, M.A.K. (1985) *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. London: Edward Arnold.

Halliday, M.A.K. (2001) 'Towards a Theory of Good Translation', E. Steiner and C. Yallop *Exploring Translation and Multilingual Text Production: Beyond Content*. Berlin and New York: Mouton de Gruyter, pp. 13-18.

Halliday, M.A.K. (2004) *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. Revised by C. M.I.M. Matthiessen. London and New York: Arnold and Oxford University Press.

Halliday, M.A.K. and J.J. Webster (eds.) (2009) *Continuum Companion to Systemic Functional Linguistics*. London and New York: Continuum International.

Halliday, M.A.K. and R. Hasan (1976) *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman.

Hanusch, F. (2010) *Representing Death in the News: Journalism, Media and Mortality*. Basingstoke and New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Harding, S.-A. (2012) 'Translating Eyewitness Accounts: Personal Narratives from Beslan, September 2004', *Journal of Language and Politics*, 11(2), pp. 229-49.

Hasan, R. (2009) 'The Place of Context in a Systemic Functional Model', M.A.K. Halliday and J.J. Webster (eds.) *Continuum Companion to Systemic Functional Linguistics*. London and New York: Continuum International, pp. 166-89.

Hatim, B. (2009) 'Translating Text in Context' in J. Munday (ed.) *The Routledge Companion to Translation Studies*. London and New York: Routledge, pp. 36-53.

Hatim, B. (2013) *Teaching and Researching Translation*. Harlow: Pearson.

Hatim, B. and I. Mason (1990) *Discourse and the Translator*. London and New York: Longman.

Hatim, B. and I. Mason (1997) *The Translator as Communicator*. London and New York: Routledge.

Hjelmslev, L. (1943/1953/1961) *Prolegomena to a Theory of Language. English Translation by F. J. Whitfield*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Hodge, B. (1979) 'Newspapers and Communities', R. Fowler, B. Hodge, G. Kress and T. Trew (eds.) *Language and Control*. London, Boston and Henley: Routledge and Kegan Paul, pp. 157-74.

Holland, R. (2006) 'Language(s) in the Global News: Translation, Audience Design and Discourse (mis)Representation', *International Journal on Translation Studies*, 18 (2), pp. 229-259.

Holland, R. (2013) 'News Translation', C. Millan and F. Bartrina (eds.) *The Routledge Handbook of Translation Studies*. Abingdon and New York: Routledge, pp. 332-46.

House, J. (2006) 'Text and Context in Translation', *Journal of Pragmatics*, (38), pp. 338-58.

Jahedi, M. and F. S. Abdullah (2012) 'The Ideological Construction of Iran in The NYT', *Australian Journal of Linguistics*, 32 (3), pp. 361-81.

Johnson, S. and A. Ensslin (eds.) (2007) *Language in the Media: Representations, Identities Ideologies*. London: Continuum.

Kang, J.-H. (2007) 'Recontextualization of News Discourse: A Case Study of Translation of News Discourse on North Korea', *The Translator*, 13 (2), pp. 219-42.

Keeble, R. (2006) *The Newspapers Handbook*. London and New York: Routledge.

Keller (2007) *Translation and Journalism*. The New York Times Reading Room.
Available at: www.readingroom.blogs.nytimes.com/author/bill-keller/. (Accessed: 12 October 2013).

Kress, G. (1976) *Halliday: System and Function in Language*. London: Oxford University Press.

Kress, G. (2010) *Multimodality: A social semiotic approach to contemporary communication*. London and New York: Routledge.

Krizsán, A. (2011) *The EU Is Not Them But Us!': The First Person Plural and the Articulation of Collective Identities in European Political Discourse*. Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars Publishing.

Lian, Z. and T. Jiang (2014) 'A Study of Modality System in Chinese-English Legal Translation from the Perspective of SFG', *Theory and Practice in Language Studies*, 4(3), pp. 497-503.

Lorés Sanz, R. (2003) 'The Translation of Tourist Literature: The Case of Connectors,' *Multilingua*, 22 (3), pp. 291-308.

Lötscher, A. (1992) 'The Relativity of Subject/Topic Prominence in German, English and Russian', *Folia Linguistica*, 26 (1-2), pp. 95-110.

Malinowski, B. (1935) *Coral Gardens and Their Magic*, Vol. II. London: G. Allen & Unwin.

Marsh, D and N. Marshall (2004) *The Guardian stylebook*. London: Guardian Books.

Mason, I. (2010) 'Discourse, Ideology and Translation' in M. Baker (ed.), *Critical Readings in Translation Studies*. London and New York: Routledge, pp. 83-95.

Matthiessen, C.I.M.I.M. (2009) 'Ideas and New Directions', M.A.K. Halliday and J.J. Webster (eds.) *Continuum Companion to Systemic Functional Linguistics*. London and New York: Continuum International, pp. 12-58.

McDonald, E. (2012) 'Aristotle, Saussure, Kress on Speech and Writing: Language as Paradigm for the Semiotic?', *Language and Communication*, 32, pp. 205-15.

Menz, F. (1989) 'Manipulation Strategies in Newspapers: A Program for Critical Linguistics', R. Wodak (ed.) *Language, Power and Ideology: Studies in Political Discourse*. Amsterdam, Philadelphia: J. Benjamins.

Misdaq, N. (2006) *Afghanistan: Political Frailty and External Interference*. London and New York: Routledge.

Munday, J. (2002) 'Systems in Translation. A Systemic Model for Descriptive Translation Studies', T. Hermans (ed.) *Crosscultural Transgressions. Research Models in Translation Studies II. Historical and Ideological Issues*. Manchester: St. Jerome, pp. 76-92.

Munday, J. (2004) 'A Comparative Analysis of Evaluation in Spanish and English World Cup Reports', *Revista Canaria de Estudios Ingleses* (49), pp. 117-33.

Negrine, R. (2008) *The Transformation of Political Communication: Continuities and Changes in Media and Politics*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Nester, W.R. (2010) *Globalization, Wealth, and Power in the Twenty-First Century*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Nida, E. A. (1964) *Toward a Science of Translating: With Special Reference to Principles and Procedures Involved in Bible Translating*. Leiden: E.J. Brill.

Obijiofor, L. and F. Hanusch (2011) *Journalism Across Cultures: An Introduction*. Basingstoke and New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Orengo, A. (2005) 'Localising News: Translation and the 'Global-National' Dichotomy', *Language and Intercultural Communication*, 5 (2), pp. 168-87.

Peirce, C. S. (1894/1998) *What is a Sign?* Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Pérez, M. C. (2007) *Transitivity in Translating: The Interdependence of Texture and Context*. Bern: Peter Lang AG.

Pérez-González, L. (2012) 'Translation, Interpreting and the Genealogy of Conflict', *Journal of Language and Politics*, 11(2), pp. 169-84.

Pym, A. (2010) *Exploring Translation Theories*. London and New York: Routledge.

Rabadán, R. (2006) 'Modality and Modal Verbs in Contrast: Mapping out a translation(ally) relevant approach English-Spanish', *Languages in Contrast* 6(2), pp. 261-306.

Richardson, J. E. (2007) *Analysing Newspapers: An Approach From Critical Discourse Analysis*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Ritzer, G. (2011) *Globalization: The Essentials*. Chichester: John Wiley and Sons Ltd.

Rodrik, D. (2011) *The Globalization Paradox: Why Global Markets, States and Democracy Can't Coexist*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Saussure, F. D. (1916/1959) (tr.) *Course in General Linguistics*. New York: Philosophical Library.

Schäffner, C. (2004) 'Political Discourse Analysis From the Point of View of Translation Studies', *Journal of Language and Politics*, 3(1), pp. 117-50.

Schäffner, C. (2005) 'Bringing a German Voice to English-Speaking Readers: Spiegel International', *Language and Intercultural Communication*, 5(2), pp. 154-167.

Schäffner, C. (2012) 'Unknown Agents in Translated Political Discourse', *Target*, 24(1), pp. 103-25.

Shaw, I. S. (2007) 'Historical Frames and the Politics of Humanitarian Intervention: From Ethiopia, Somalia to Rwanda', *Globalisation, Societies and Education*, (5) pp. 351-71.

Shaw, I. S. (2012) *Human Rights Journalism: Advances in Reporting Distant Humanitarian Interventions*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Steiner, E. (2005) 'Halliday and Translation Theory – Enhancing the Options, Broadening the Range and Keeping the Ground', R. Hasan, C. Matthiessen and J. Webster (eds.) *Continuing Discourse on Language: A Functional Perspective*. London: Equinox, pp. 481-500.

Talbot, M. (2007) *Media Discourse: Representation and Interaction*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

Thomas, G. (2011) *How to Do Your Case Study: A Guide for Students and Researchers*. London: Sage.

Thompson, G. (2004) *Introducing Functional Grammar*. London and New York: Arnold and Oxford University Press.

Toury, G. (1995) *Descriptive Translation Studies and Beyond*. Amsterdam: J. Benjamins.

Trew, T. (1979) 'Theory and Ideology at Work', R. Fowler, B. Hodge, G. Kress and T. Trew (eds.) *Language and Control*. London, Boston and Henley: Routledge and Kegan Paul, pp. 94-116.

Tymoczko, M. (2007) *Enlarging Translation, Empowering Translators*. Manchester and Kinderhook: St. Jerome.

Tymoczko, M. (2009) 'Translation, Ethics and Ideology in a Violent Globalizing World', E. Bielsa and C. W. Hughes (eds.) *Globalization, Political Violence and Translation*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, pp. 171-194.

Valdeón, R. (2008) 'Anomalous News Translation: Selective Appropriation of Themes and Texts in the Internet', *Babel* 54(4), pp. 299-326.

Van Dijk, T.A. (1988a) *News as Discourse*. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Van Dijk, T. A. (1988b) *News Analysis: Case Studies of International and National News in the Press*. London and New York: Routledge.

Van Dijk, T. A. (1998) *Ideology: A Multidisciplinary Approach*. Sage: London.

Van Doorslaer, L. (2010) 'Journalism and Translation', Y. Gambier and L. Van Doorslaer (eds.) *Handbook of Translation Studies*. Vol. 1. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins, pp. 180-4.

Venuti, L. (2008) *The Translator's Invisibility: A History of Translation*, 2nd revd edn, London and New York: Routledge.

Vermeer, H. J. (1989) 'Skopos and Commission in Translation Action', L. Venuti (ed.) (2004) *The Translation Studies Reader*. New York and London: Routledge, pp. 227-238.

Wetherell, M., Taylor S. and S. Yates (2001) *Discourse as Data: A Guide for Analysis*. London: Sage.

Williams, I. A. (2009) 'Discourse Style and Theme-Rheme Progression in Biomedical Research Article Discussions: A Corpus-Based Contrastive Study of Translational and Non-Translational Spanish', *Language in Contrast* 9(2), pp. 225-66.

Wise, R. (2011) Al Shabaab. Case study Number 2. July 2011. Aqam Future Project Case Study Series. Center for Strategic and International Studies.

Young, L. and B. Fitzgerald (2006) *The Power of Language: How Discourse Influences Society*. London and Oakville: Equinox.

FAO.org (2014). *Famine in Somalia*. Available at:

www.fao.org/news/story/en/item/82387/icode/. (Accessed: 13 April, 2014)

FAO.org (2011). *Emergency in the Horn of Africa: Follow-up and Response Actions. Chair's Summary and Recommendations*. Available at:
www.fao.org/documents/en/. (Accessed: 17 April, 2014)

Human Rights Watch (2001) *Afghanistan: Crisis of Impunity. The Role of Pakistan, Russia, and Iran in Fueling the Civil War*. Available at:

www.hrw.org/reports/2001/07/01/crisis-impunity-role-pakistan-russia-and-iran-fueling-civil-war-afghanistan. (Accessed: 18 April 2014).

NATO (2008). *Bucharest Summit Declaration*. Available at:

www.nato.int/cps/en/natolive/official_texts_8443.htm. (Accessed 11 February, 2014).

NATO (2014). *ISAF's Mission in Afghanistan*. Available at:

http://www.nato.int/cps/en/natolive/topics_6936.htm. (Accessed: 18 April 2014).

Reuters (2008). U.S. Troops Start Training Exercise in Georgia. Available at:

www.uk.reuters.com/article/2008/07/15/us-georgia-usa-exercises-idUKL1556589920080715. (Accessed 23 March, 2014).

Reuters (2008). *Reuters Handbook*. Available at: www.hanbook.reuters.com. (Accessed: 11 August 2012).

The Guardian (2011). *Somali Rebels Deny Lifting Ban On Foreign Aid Groups*. Available at: www.theguardian.com/world/2011/jul/22/somali-rebels-deny-lifting-ban. (Accessed: 23 January, 2013).

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability*. Available at: www.ipcc.ch/report/ar5/wg2/. (Accessed: 27 February, 2014).

The New York Times (2004). *Ethical Journalism: A Handbook of Values and Practices for the News and Editorial Departments*. Available at: http://www.nytco.com/wp-content/uploads/NYT_Ethical_Journalism/. (Accessed: 17 April 2013).

The New York Times (2012). *U.S. Pays Families of Afghan Victims in Massacre by Soldier*. Available at: www.nytimes.com/2012/03/26/world/asia/us-compensates-afghan-villagers-for-soldiers-attack.html?_r=0. (Accessed 17 January, 2013).

Turkish Airlines (2014). *Turkish Airlines Launches Its Services to Mogadishu (Somalia)*. Available at: www.turkishairlines.com/en-int/corporate/press-room/press-releases/press-release-detail/turkish-airlines-launches-its-services-to-mogadishu-somalia. (Accessed: 20 March 2014).

United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (2012). *Corruption in Afghanistan: Recent Patterns and Trends*. Available at: www.unodc.org/documents/. (Accessed 17 March 2014).